

[image]

[image]

[image]

A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate learners of English

Fourth Edition

with answers

Raymond Murphy

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, Sao Paulo, Delhi, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/englishgrammarinuse

Fourth Edition © Cambridge University Press 2012

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

English Grammar in Use first published 1985 Fourth edition 2012
Reprinted 2012

Printed in China by Golden Cup Printing Co. Ltd

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0-521-18906-4 Edition with answers

ISBN 978-0-521 -18908-8 Edition without answers

ISBN 978-0-521 -18939-2 Edition with answers and CD-ROM

ISBN 978-0-51 I -96173-1 Online access code pack

ISBN 978-1 -107-64138-9 Online access code pack and book with answers

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

Thanks vii

To the student viii

To the teacher x

Present and past

1 Present continuous (I am doing)

2 Present simple (I do)

3 Present continuous and present simple 1 (I am doing and I do)

4 Present continuous and present simple 2 (I am doing and I do)

5 Past simple (I did)

6 Past continuous (I was doing)

Present perfect and past

7 Present perfect 1 (I have done)

8 Present perfect 2 (I have done)

9 Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)

10 Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)

11 How long have you (been)... ?

12 For and since When ... ? and How long ... ?

13 Present perfect and past 1 (I have done and I did)

14 Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)

15 Past perfect (I had done)

16 Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)

17 Have and have got

18 Used to (do)

Future

19 Present tenses (I am doing / I do) for the future

20 (I'm) going to (do)

21 Will/shall 1

22 Will/shall 2

23 I will and I'm going to

24 Will be doing and will have done

25 When I do / When I've done When and if

Modals

26 Can, could and (be) able to

27 Could (do) and could have (done)

28 Must and can't

29 May and might 1

30 May and might 2

31 Have to and must

32 Must mustn't needn't

33 Should 1

34 Should 2

35 Had better It's time...

36 Would

37 Can/Could/Would you ... ? etc. (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

^IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY,
USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 326^

If and wish

38 If I do ...and If I did ...

39 If I knew ... I wish I knew ...

40 If I had known ... I wish I had known ...

41 Wish

Passive

42 Passive 1 (is done / was done)

43 Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)

44 Passive 3

45 It is said that... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...

46 Have something done

Reported speech

47 Reported speech 1 (He said that ...)

48 Reported speech 2

Questions and auxiliary verbs

49 Questions 1

50 Questions 2 (Do you know where ... ? / He asked me where ...)

51 Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) I think so / I hope so etc.

52 Question tags (do you? isn't it? etc.)

-ing and to...

53 Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)

54 Verb + to ... (decide to ... / forget to ... etc.)

55 Verb (+ object) + to ... (I want you to ... etc.)

56 Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember/regret etc.)

57 Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)

58 Verb + -ing or to ... 3 (like / would like etc.)

59 Prefer and would rather

60 Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing

61 Be/get used to something (I'm used to ...)

62 Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / accuse somebody of -ing etc.)

63 Expressions + -ing

64 To ..., for... and so that...

65 Adjective + to ...

66 To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)

67 See somebody do and see somebody doing

68 -ing clauses (Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

Articles and nouns

69 Countable and uncountable 1

70 Countable and uncountable 2

71 Countable nouns with a/an and some

72 A/an and the

73 The 1

74 The 2 (school / the school etc.)

75 The 3 (children / the children)

76 The 4 (the giraffe / the telephone / the piano etc., the + adjective)

77 Names with and without the 1

78 Names with and without the 2

IV

^IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY,
USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PACE 326. J

79 Singular and plural

80 Noun + noun (a tennis ball / a headache)

81 -'s (your sister's name) and of... (the name of the book)

Pronouns and determiners

82 Myself/yourself/themselves etc.

83 A friend of mine My own house On my own / by myself

84 There ... and it...

85 Some and any

86 No/none/any Nothing/nobody etc.

87 Much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty

88 All / all of most / most of no / none of etc.

89 Both / both of neither / neither of either / either of

90 All, every and whole

91 Each and every

Relative clauses

92 Relative clauses 1: clauses with who/that/which

93 Relative clauses 2: clauses with and without who/that/which

94 Relative clauses 3: whose/whom/where

95 Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

96 Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)

97 -ing and -ed clauses (the woman talking to Tom, the boy injured in the accident)

Adjectives and adverbs

98 Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)

99 Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired

100 Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)

101 Adjectives and adverbs 2 (well/fast/late, hard/hardly)

102 So and such

103 Enough and too

104 Quite, pretty, rather and fairly

105 Comparison 1 (cheaper, more expensive etc.)

106 Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)

107 Comparison 3 (as ... as / than)

108 Superlatives (the longest, the most enjoyable etc.)

109 Word order 1: verb + object; place and time

110 Word order 2: adverbs with the verb

111 Still, yet and already Any more / any longer / no longer

112 Even

Conjunctions and prepositions

113 Although / though / even though In spite of / despite

114 Incase

115 Unless As long as Provided/providing

116 As (As I walked along the street... / As I was hungry ...)

117 Like and as

118 Like / as if / as though

119 For, during and while

120 By and until By the time...

(jF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY,
USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 326.

Prepositions

121 At/on/in (time)

122 On time and in time At the end and in the end

123 In/at/on (position) 1

124 In/at/on (position) 2

125 In/at/on (position) 3

126 To/at/in/into

127 In/on/at (other uses)

128 By

129 Noun + preposition (reason for, cause of etc.)

130 Adjective + preposition 1

131 Adjective + preposition 2

132 Verb + preposition 1 to and at

133 Verb + preposition 2 about/for/of/after

134 Verb + preposition 3 about and of

135 Verb + preposition 4 of/for/from/on

136 Verb + preposition 5 in/into/with/to/on

Phrasal verbs

137 Phrasal verbs 1 General points

138 Phrasal verbs 2 in/out

139 Phrasal verbs 3 out

140 Phrasal verbs 4 on/off (1)

141 Phrasal verbs 5 on/off (2)

142 Phrasal verbs 6 up/down

143 Phrasal verbs 7 up (1)

144 Phrasal verbs 8 up (2)

145 Phrasal verbs 9 away/back

Appendix 1 Regular and irregular verbs 292

Appendix 2 Present and past tenses 294

Appendix 3 The future 295

Appendix 4 Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) 296

Appendix 5 Short forms (I'm / you've / didn't etc.) 297

Appendix 6 Spelling 298

Appendix 7 American English 300

Additional exercises 302

Study guide 326

Key to Exercises 336

Key to Additional exercises 368

Key to Study guide 372

Index 373

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS YOU NEED TO STUDY, USE

THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 326.

Thanks

This is the fourth edition of English Grammar in Use. I wrote the original edition when I was a teacher at the Swan School of English, Oxford. I would like to repeat my thanks to my colleagues and students at the school for their help, encouragement and interest at that time.

Regarding the production of this fourth edition, I am grateful to Noirin Burke, Annabel Marriott, Matthew Duffy, Liz Driscoll, Jane Walsh, Jeanette Alfoldi and Kamae Design. I would like to thank Cambridge University Press for permission to access the Cambridge International Corpus.

Thank you also to the following illustrators: Humberto Blanco, Paul Fellows, Sophie Joyce, Katie Mac,

Ian Mitchell, Gillian Martin, Sandy Nicholls, Roger Penwill, Lisa Smith, Dave Whamond and Simon Williams.

To the student

This book is for students who want help with English grammar. It is written for you to use without a teacher.

The book will be useful for you if you are not sure of the answers to questions like these:

□ What is the difference between / did and / have done? O When do we use will for the future?

What is the structure after / wish? O When do we say used to do and when do we say used to doing?

When do we use the?

What is the difference between like and as?

These and many other points of English grammar are explained in the book and there are exercises on each point.

Level

The book is intended mainly for intermediate students (students who have already studied the basic grammar of English). It concentrates on those structures which intermediate students want to use, but which often cause difficulty. Some advanced students who have problems with grammar will also find the book useful.

The book is not suitable for elementary learners. How the book is organised

There are 145 units in the book. Each unit concentrates on a particular point of grammar. Some problems (for example, the present perfect or the use of the) are covered in more than one unit. For a list of units, see the Contents at the beginning of the book.

Each unit consists of two facing pages. On the left there are explanations and examples; on the right there are exercises. At the back of the book there is a Key for you to check your answers to the exercises (page 336).

There are also seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 292-301). These include irregular verbs, summaries of verb forms, spelling and American English.

Finally, there is a detailed Index at the back of the book (page 373). How to use the book

The units are not in order of difficulty, so it is not intended that you work through the book from beginning to end. Every learner has different problems and you should use this book to help you with the grammar that you find difficult.

It is suggested that you work in this way:

Use the Contents and/or Index to find which unit deals with the point you are interested in. D If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study guide on page 326.

Study the explanations and examples on the left-hand page of the unit you have chosen.

Do the exercises on the right-hand page. O Check your answers with the Key.

If your answers are not correct, study the left-hand page again to see what went wrong.

You can of course use the book simply as a reference book without doing the exercises.



Additional exercises

At the back of the book there are Additional exercises (pages 302-325). These exercises bring together some of the grammar points from a number of different units. For example, Exercise 16 brings together grammar points from Units 26-36. You can use these exercises for extra practice after you have studied and practised the grammar in the units concerned.

English Grammar in Use was written as a self-study grammar book, but teachers may also find it useful as additional course material in cases where further work on grammar is necessary.

The book will probably be most useful at middle- and upper-intermediate levels (where all or nearly all of the material will be relevant), and can serve both as a basis for revision and as a means for practising new structures. It will also be useful for some more advanced students who have problems with grammar and need a book for reference and practice. The book is not intended to be used by elementary learners.

The units are organised in grammatical categories (Present and past, Articles and nouns, Prepositions etc.). They are not ordered according to level of difficulty, so the book should not be worked through from beginning to end. It should be used selectively and flexibly in accordance with the grammar syllabus being used and the difficulties students are having.

The book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help. The left-hand pages (explanations and examples) are written for the student to use individually, but they may of course be used by the teacher as a source of ideas and information on which to base a lesson. The student then has the left-hand page as a record of what has been taught and can refer to it in the future. The exercises can

be done individually, in class or as homework. Alternatively (and additionally), individual students can be directed to study certain units of the book by themselves if they have particular difficulties not shared by other students in their class. Don't forget the Additional exercises at the back of the book (see To the student).

This fourth edition of English Grammar in Use has been revised and updated. There are no new units, but some of the exercises have been rewritten or replaced.

An edition of English Grammar in Use without the Key is available. Some teachers may prefer this for use with their students.

An online version of English Grammar in Use is also available.

[image]

Present continuous (I am doing)

Study this example situation:

Sarah is in her car. She is on her way to work. She is driving to work.

This means: she is driving now, at the time of speaking. The action is not finished.

Am/is/are + -ing is the present continuous:

filial

IfedHip"

\

[image]

J

I am doing something = I'm in the middle of doing it; I've started doing it and I haven't finished: O Please don't make so much noise. I'm trying to work, (not I try) C 'Where's Mark?' 'He's having a shower.' (not He has a shower) O Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more, (not It doesn't rain)

(at a party) Hi, Jane. Are you enjoying the party? (not Do you enjoy)
What's all that noise? What's going on? (= What's happening?)

Sometimes the action is not happening at the time of speaking. For example: Steve is talking to a friend on the phone. He says:

[image]

I'm reading a really good book at the moment It's about a man who ...

Steve is not reading the book at the time of speaking.

He means that he has started it, but has not finished it yet.

He is in the middle of reading it.

Some more examples:

Kate wants to work in Italy, so she's learning Italian, (but perhaps she isn't learning Italian at the time of speaking)

Some friends of mine are building their own house. They hope to finish it next summer.

You can use the present continuous with today / this week / this year etc. (periods around now):
O a: You're working hard today, (not You work hard today)

b: Yes, I have a lot to do. C The company I work for isn't doing so well this year.

We use the present continuous when we talk about changes happening around now, especially with these verbs:

get change become increase rise fall grow improve begin start

Is your English getting better? (not Does your English get better) O The population of the world is increasing very fast, (not increases)

At first I didn't like my job, but I'm beginning to enjoy it now. (not I begin)

Present continuous and present simple -> Units 3-4 Present tenses for the future -* Unit 19

Exercises

Unit 1

[image]

The sentences on the right follow those on the left. Which sentence goes with which?

1 2 3 4 5

Please don't make so much noise. I need to eat something soon. I don't have anywhere to live right now. We need to leave soon. They don't need their car any more.

6 Things are not so good at work.

7 It isn't true what they said.

8 We're going to get wet.

a It's getting late,

b They're lying,

c It's starting to rain,

d They're trying to sell it.

e I'm getting hungry,

f I'm trying to w

ui i\.

g I'm looking for an apartment, h The company is losing money.

l

2 3 4 5 6 7 8

£

[image]

a: b:

it? (he / enjoy)

[image]

[image]

Complete the conversations.

1 a: I saw Brian a few days ago. b: Oh, did you? What's he doing, these days? (what / he / do)

He's at university.

? (what / he / study)

a: Psychology. b:

a: Yes, he says it's a very good course.

2 a: Hi, Nicola. How ? (your new job / go) b: Not bad. It wasn't so good at first, but better now.

(it / get)

a: What about Daniel? Is he OK?

b: Yes, but his work right now. (he / not / enjoy)

He's been in the same job for a long time and to get bored

with it. (he / begin)

Put the verb into the correct form, positive (I'm doing etc.) or negative (I'm not doing etc.).

1 Please don't make so much noise. Lfi tujwg (I / try) to work.

2 Let's go out now. Jk UMk. raiding (jt / rain) any more.

3 You can turn off the radio. (I / listen) to it.

4 Kate phoned me last night. She's on holiday in France. (she / have) a great time and doesn't want to come back.

5 I want to lose weight, so this week (I / eat) lunch.

6 Andrew has just started evening classes. (he / learn) Japanese.

7 Paul and Sally have had an argument. (they / speak) to each other.

8 (I / get) tired. I need a rest.

9 Tim (work) today. He's taken the day off.

10 (I / look) for Sophie. Do you know where she is?

Complete the sentences using the following verbs: get increase change
start

rise

1 The population of the world is war easing very fast.

2 The world Things never stay the same.

3 The situation is already bad and it worse.

4 The cost of living . Every year things are more expensive.

5 The weather to improve. The rain has stopped, and the wind isn't as strong.

Present simple (I do)

Alex is a bus driver, but now he is in bed asleep. He is not driving a bus.
(He is asleep.)

but He drives a bus. (He is a bus driver.)

Drive(s)/work(s)/do(es) etc. is the present simple:

I/we/you/they drive/work/do etc.

he/she/it drives/works/does etc.

We use the present simple to talk about things in general. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general:

O Nurses look after patients in hospitals.

O I usually go away at weekends.

O The earth goes round the sun.

□ The cafe opens at 7.30 in the morning.

Remember:

I work... but He works... They teach... but My sister teaches ... For spelling (-s or -es), see Appendix 6.

We use do/does to make questions and negative sentences:

In the following examples, do is also the main verb (do you do / doesn't do etc.): O 'What do you do?' I work in a shop.' C He's always so lazy. He doesn't do anything to help.

We use the present simple to say how often we do things: O I get up at 8 o'clock every morning. O How often do you go to the dentist? C Julie doesn't drink tea very often. O Robert usually goes away two or three times a year.

I promise / I apologise etc.

Sometimes we do things by saying something. For example, when you promise to do something, you can say 'I promise ...'; when you suggest something, you can say 'I suggest...': I promise I won't be late, (not I'm promising) O 'What do you suggest I do?' 'I suggest that you ...'

In the same way we say: I apologise ... / I advise ... / I insist... / I agree ... / I refuse ... etc.

Study this example situation:

[image]

Present simple and present continuous «4 Units 3-4 Present tenses for the future ^ Unit 19

Exercises

Unit

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using the following verbs: cause(s) connect(s) drink(s) live(s) open(s) speak(s) take(s)

1 Tanya Spe&ks German very well.

2 I don't often coffee.

3 The swimming pool at 7.30 every morning.

4 Bad driving many accidents.

5 My parents in a very small flat.

6 The Olympic Games place every four years.

7 The Panama Canal the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

Put the verb into the correct form.

1 Julie ctoesn't drunk (not / drink) tea very often.

2 What time (the banks / close) here?

3 I've got a car, but I (not / use) it much.

4 'Where (Ricardo / come) from?' 'From Cuba.'

5 'What (you / do)?' 'I'm an electrician.'

6 It (take) me an hour to get to work. How long
(it / take) you?

7 Look at this sentence. What (this word / mean)?

8 David isn't very fit. He (not / do) any sport.

Use the following verbs to complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the negative:

believe eat flow -go- grow make rise tell translate

1 The earth %Q\$£ round the sun. 7 An interpreter from one

2 Rice doesn't grow j n Britain. language into another.

3 The sun in the east. 8 Liars are people who the

4 Bees honey. truth.

5 Vegetarians meat. 9 The River Amazon into

6 An atheist in God. the Atlantic Ocean.

You ask Lisa questions about herself and her family. Write the questions.

1 You know that Lisa plays tennis. You want to know how often. Ask her.
How often cU> ypw pL&y tennts ?

2 Perhaps Lisa's sister plays tennis too. You want to know. Ask Lisa.
your sister ?

3 You know that Lisa reads a newspaper every day. You want to know
which one. Ask her.

?

4 You know that Lisa's brother works. You want to know what he does.
Ask Lisa.

5 You know that Lisa goes to the cinema a lot. You want to know how often. Ask her.

6 You don't know where Lisa's grandparents live. You want to know. Ask Lisa.

?

[image]

Complete using the following: I apologise I insist I promise I recommend I suggest

1 Mr Evans is not in the office today.[..suggest you try calling him tomorrow.

2 I won't tell anybody what you said

3 (in a restaurant) You must let me pay for the meal.

4 forwhatldid. It won't happen again.

5 The new restaurant in Hill Street is very good it.

Present continuous and present simple 1 (I am doing and I do)

Compare:

Present continuous (I am doing)

We use the continuous for things happening at or around the time of speaking. The action is not complete.

Present simple (I do)

We use the simple for things in general or things that happen repeatedly.

I always do and I'm always doing

I always do (something) = I do it every time:

I always go to work by car. (not I'm always going)

'I'm always doing something' has a different meaning. For example:

Q'we I ost my phone again. I'm always losing things.^

[image]

I'm always losing things = I lose things very often, perhaps too often, or more often than normal.

More examples:

O You're always playing computer games. You should do something more active. (= You play computer games too often)

Tim is never satisfied. He's always complaining. (= He complains too much)

Present continuous and simple 2 Unit 4 Present tenses for the future -i Unit 19

j

Exercises

Unit

[image]

Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius. OK

2 The water boils . Can you turn it off? !£ boiUng

3 Look! That man tries to open the door of your car.

4 Can you hear those people? What do they talk about?

5 The moon goes round the earth in about 27 days.

6 I must go now. It gets late.

7 I usually go to work by car.

8 'Hurry up! It's time to leave.' 'OK, I come . '

9 I hear you've got a new job. How do you g et on?

10 Paul is never late. He's always getting to work on time.

11 They don't get on well. They're always arguing .

[image]

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

1 Let's go out. It tsn't rammq, (it / not / rain) now.

2 Julia is very good at languages. She speaks (she / speak) four languages very well.

3 Hurry up! (everybody / wait) for you.

4 1 (you / listen) to the radio?' 'No, you can turn it off.'

5 ' (you / listen) to the radio every day?' 'No, just occasionally.'

6 The River Nile (flow) into the Mediterranean.

7 The river (flow) very fast today - much faster than usual.

8 (we / usually / grow) vegetables in our garden, but this year

(we / not / grow) any.

9 a: How's your English?

b: Not bad. I think (it / improve) slowly.

10 Rachel is in New York right now. (she / stay) at the Park Hotel.

(she / always / stay) there when she's in New York.

11 Can we stop walking soon? (I / start) to feel tired.

12 a: Can you drive?

b: (I / learn). My father (teach) me.

13 Normally (I / finish) work at five, but this week

(I / work) until six to earn a little more money.

14 My parents (live) in Manchester. They were born there and have never lived anywhere else. Where (your parents / live)?

15 Sonia (look) for a place to live. (she/stay) with her sister until she finds somewhere.

16 a: What (your brother / do)?

b: He's an architect, but (he / not / work) at the moment.

17 (at a party) (I / usually enjoy) parties, but

(I /not / enjoy) this one very much.

Finish B's sentences. Use always -ing.

1 a: I've lost my phone again.

b: Not again! You've always Losing your phone

2 a: The car has broken down again.

b: That car is useless. It

3 a: Look! You've made the same mistake again.

b: Oh no, not again! I .

4 a: Oh, I've forgotten my glasses again. b: Typical!

[image]

[image]

[image]

Present continuous and present simple 2 (I am doing and I do)

We use continuous forms for actions and happenings that have started but not finished (they are eating / it is raining etc.). Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in this way. We don't say 'I am knowing' or 'they are liking'; we say 'I know', 'they like'.

The following verbs are not normally used in the present continuous:

O I'm hungry. I want something to eat. (nor I'm wanting) C Do you understand what I mean?

Anna doesn't seem very happy at the moment.

Think

When think means 'believe' or 'have an opinion', we do not use the continuous: C I think Mary is Canadian, but I'm not sure, (nor I'm thinking) C What do you think of my plan? (= What is your opinion?)

When think means 'consider', the continuous is possible:

O I'm thinking about what happened. I often think about it. O Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. (= she is considering it)

See hear smell taste

We normally use the present simple (not continuous) with these verbs: O Do you see that man over there? (not Are you seeing) O This room smells. Let's open a window.

We often use can + see/hear/smell/taste:

O I can hear a strange noise. Can you hear it?

Look feel

You can use the present simple or continuous to say how somebody looks or feels now: O You look well today, or You're looking well today. O How do you feel now? or How are you feeling now?

but

O I usually feel tired in the morning, (nor I'm usually feeling)

He is selfish and He is being selfish

He's being = He's behaving / He's acting. Compare:

: i I can't understand why he's being so selfish. He isn't usually like that.

(being selfish = behaving selfishly at the moment) O He never thinks about other people. He is very selfish, (not He is being)

(= He is selfish generally, not only at the moment)

We use am/is/are being to say how somebody is behaving. It is not usually possible in other sentences:

□ It's hot today, (not It is being hot)

O Sarah is very tired, (nor is being tired)

^Present continuous and simple 1 -> Unit 3

Have -> Unit 17

Present tenses for the future -* Unit 19

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, present continuous or present simple.

1 Are you hungry? Do you want (you / want) something to eat?

2 Don't put the dictionary away. (I / use) it.

3 Don't put the dictionary away. (I / need) it.

4 Who is that man? What (he / want)?

5 Who is that man? Why (he / look) at us?

6 Alan says he's 80 years old, but nobody (believe) him.

7 She told me her name, but (I / not / remember) it now.

8 (I / think) of selling my car. Would you be interested in buying it?

9 (I / think) you should sell your car. (you / not / use) it very often.

10 Air (consist) mainly of nitrogen and oxygen.

Use the words in brackets to make sentences. (You should also study Unit 3 before you do this exercise.)

[image]

[image]

Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 Nicky is thinking of giving up her job. OK

2 Are you believing in God?

3 I'm feeling hungry. Is there anything to eat?

4 This sauce is great. It 's tasting really good.

5 I'm thinking this is your key. Am I right?

[image]

Complete the sentences using the most suitable form of be. Use am/is/are being (continuous) where possible; otherwise use am/is/are (simple).

1 I can't understand why he's being so selfish. He isn't usually like that.

2 Sarah very nice to me at the moment. I wonder why.

3 You'll like Sophie when you meet her. She very nice.

4 You're usually very patient, so why so unreasonable about waiting ten more minutes?

5 Why isn't Steve at work today? ill?

Unit

5 .

Past simple (I did)

Study this example:

Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart was an Austrian musician and composer. He lived from 1756 to 1791. He started composing at the age of five and wrote more than 600 pieces of music. He was only 35 years old when he died.

Lived/started/wrote/was/died are all past simple.

W.A. MOZART

[image]

[1756-1791

o\ (c

Very often the past simple ends in -ed (regular verbs):

I work in a travel agency now. Before that I worked in a department store.
G We invited them to our party, but they decided not to come. O The police
stopped me on my way home last night. C Laura passed her exam because
she studied very hard.

For spelling (stopped, studied etc.), see Appendix 6.

But many verbs are irregular. The past simple does not end in -ed. For
example: write —> wrote O Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music,

see —> saw O We saw Tanya in town a few days ago.

go —> went I went to the cinema three times last week,

shut —> shut O It was cold, so I shut the window.

n questions and negatives we use did/didn't + infinitive (enjoy/see/go etc.):

O a: Did you go out last night?

b: Yes, I went to the cinema, but I didn't enjoy the film much. O 'When did MrThomas die?' 'About ten years ago.' O They didn't invite us to the party, so we didn't go. O 'Did you have time to do the shopping?' 'No, I didn't.'

In the following examples, do is the main verb in the sentence (did ... do / didn't do): What did you do at the weekend? (not What did you at the weekend?) O I didn't do anything, (not I didn't anything)

The past of be (am/is/are) is was/were:

Note that we do not use did in negatives and questions with was/were: O I was angry because they were late. O Was the weather good when you were on holiday? O They weren't able to come because they were so busy. □ Did you go out last night or were you too tired?

Past simple and past continuous -> Unit 6 Past simple and present perfect -
* Units 12-14

)

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Read what Laura says about a typical working day:

[image]

I usually get up at 7 o'clock and have a big breakfast. I walk to work, which takes me about half an hour. I start work at 8.45. I never have lunch. I finish work at 5 o'clock. I'm always tired when I get home. I usually cook a meal in the evening. I don't usually go out. I go to bed at about 11 o'clock, and I always sleep well.

Laura

Yesterday was a typical working day for Laura. Write what she did or didn't do yesterday.

1 She got up at 7 o'clock.

2 She had a big breakfast.

3 She

4 It took her to get to work.

5 She left at 8.45.

6 She had lunch.

7 She left at 5 o'clock.

8 She was tired when home.

9 She had a meal yesterday evening.

10 She went out yesterday evening.

11 She left at 11 o'clock.

12 well last night.

[image]

wrote

his leg. a dress which

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form: buy
catch cost fall hurt sell spend teach throw

1 Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.

2 'How did you learn to drive?' 'My father taught me.'

3 We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we sold it.

4 Dave down the stairs this morning and

5 Joe the ball to Sue, who it.

6 Ann a lot of money yesterday. She

£100.

You ask James about his holiday. Write your questions.

Hi. How are things?

Fine, thanks. I've just had a great holiday.

1 Where did. 9° ?

To the U.S. We went on a trip from San Francisco to Denver.

2 How ? By car?

Yes, we hired a car in San Francisco.

3 It's a long way to drive. How long to get to Denver?

Two weeks.

4 Where ? In hotels?

Yes, small hotels or motels.

5 good?

Yes, but it was very hot - sometimes too hot.

6 the Grand Canyon?

Of course. It was wonderful.

Complete the sentences. Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

1 It was warm, so I took off my coat, (take)

2 The film wasn't very good. I didn't enjoy it much, (enjoy)

3 I knew Sarah was busy, so I her. (disturb)

4 We were very tired, so we the party early, (leave)

5 The bed was very uncomfortable. I well, (sleep)

6 The window was open and a bird into the room, (fly)

7 The hotel wasn't very expensive. It much to stay there, (cost)

8 I was in a hurry, so I time to phone you. (have)

9 It was hard carrying the bags. They very heavy, (be)

Past continuous (I was doing)

Study this example situation:

[image]

Yesterday Karen and Jim played tennis. They started at

10 o'clock and finished at 11.30.

So, at 10.30 they were playing tennis.

They were playing = they were in the middle of playing. They had not finished playing. Was/were -ing is the past continuous:

I/he/she/it was we/you/they were

playing doing

working etc.

a. i . i „m h i ' ,w.,,vww>, ii wwui imiw

-w

I was doing something = I was in the middle of doing something at a certain time. The action or situation had already started before this time,

but had not finished:

I started doing

I

I was doing

I finished doing

past past O This time last year I was living in Brazil. C What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night? I waved to Helen, but she wasn't looking.

Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

now

Past continuous (in the middle of an action) I was walking home when I met Dan. (in the middle of walking home) Kate was watching TV when we arrived.

Past simple (complete action)

I walked home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely) O Kate watched television a lot when she was ill last year.

We often use the past simple and the past continuous together to say that something happened in the middle of something else:

O Matt phoned while we were having dinner.

O It was raining when I got up.

O I saw you in the park yesterday. You were sitting on the grass and reading a book. C I hurt my back while I was working in the garden.

But we use the past simple to say that one thing happened after another:

O I was walking along the road when I saw Dan. So I stopped, and we had a chat.

Compare:

Some verbs (for example, know and want) are not normally used in the continuous (see Unit 4A): O We were good friends. We knew each other well, (not We were knowing) O I was enjoying the party, but Chris wanted to go home, (not was wanting)

Exercises

[image]

What were you doing at these times? Write sentences as in the examples. The past continuous is not always necessary (see the second example).

1 (at 8 o'clock yesterday evening) J was having dinner.

2 (at 5 o'clock last Monday) I was on a bus on my way home.

3 (at 10.15 yesterday morning)

4 (at 4.30 this morning)

5 (at 7.45 yesterday evening)

6 (half an hour ago)

[image]

Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use the past continuous.

1 Matt phoned while we were having dinner

2 The doorbell rang while I

3 The car began to make a strange noise when we

4 Jessica fell asleep while she

5 The television was on, but nobody

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

[image]

I saw (see) Sue in town yesterday, but she

(not / see) me.

She

(look) the other way.

I (meet) Tom and Jane at the airport a few weeks ago. They

(go) to Paris and

I (go)

to Rome. We (have)

a chat while we

(wait) for our flights.

I (cycle) home

yesterday when a man

(step) out

into the road in front of me. I (go) quite fast,

but luckily I

(manage) to stop in time and (not / hit) him.

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1 Jenny was waiting (wait) for me when I arrived (arrive).

2 'What (you / do) at this time yesterday?' 'I was asleep.'

3 'I (you / go) out last night?' 'No, I was too tired.'

4 How fast (you / drive) when the accident

(happen)?

5 Sam (take) a picture of me while I (not / look).

6 We were in a very difficult position. We (not / know) what to do.

7 I haven't seen Alan for ages. When I last (see) him, he
(try) to find a job.

8 I (walk) along the street when suddenly I
(hear) footsteps behind me. Somebody (follow) me. I was
scared and I (start) to run.

9 When I was young, I (want) to be a pilot.

10 Last night I (drop) a plate when I (do) the
washing-up. Fortunately it (not / break).

Additional exercise 1 (page 302)

Present perfect 1 (I have done)

Study this example situation:

^I've lost my key

[image]

Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. He has lost his key.

He has lost his key = He lost it recently, and he stil doesn't have it.

Have/has lost is the present perfect simple:

J

The present perfect simple is have/has + past participle. The past participle often ends in -ed (finished/decided etc.), but many important verbs are irregular (lost/done/written etc.).

For a list of irregular verbs, see Appendix 1.

When we say that 'something has happened', this is usually new information: O Ow! I've cut my finger.

O The road is closed. There's been (there has been) an accident.

C (from the news) Police have arrested two men in connection with the robbery.

When we use the present perfect, there is a connection with now. The action in the past has a result now: O 'Where's your key?' 'I don't know. I've lost it.' (= I don't have it now) O He told me his name, but I've forgotten it. (= I can't remember it now) O 'Is Sally here?' 'No, she's gone out.' (= she is out now) O I can't find my bag. Have you seen it? (= Do you know where it is now?)

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to):

James is on holiday. He has gone to Italy. (= he is there now or on his way there) O Jane is back home now. She has been to Italy. (= she has now come back)

You can use the present perfect with just, already and yet.

Just = a short time ago:

O 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I've just had lunch.' Hello. Have you just arrived?

We use already to say that something happened sooner than expected: O 'Don't forget to pay your electricity bill.' 'I've already paid it.' O 'What time is Mark leaving?' 'He's already left.'

Yet = until now. Yet shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen. Use yet only in questions and negative sentences: O Has it stopped raining yet?

I've written the email, but I haven't sent it yet.

J

You can also use the past simple (did, went, had etc.) in the examples on

this page. So you can say: O 'Is Sally here?' 'No, she went out.' or 'No, she's gone out.' O 'Are you hungry?' 'No, I just had lunch.' or 'No, I've just had lunch.'

Present perfect -4 Units 8,11 Been to -> Units 8A, 126A Present perfect continuous Units 9-10 Present perfect and past -> Units 12-14 Yet and already -* Unit 111 American English -# Appendix 7

Exercises

Unit

[image]

Read the situations and write sentences. Use the following verbs in the present perfect: arrive break fall go up grow improve lose

1 Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it.

2 Lisa can't walk and her leg is in plaster.

3 Last week the bus fare was £1.80. Now it is £2.

4 Maria's English wasn't very good. Now it is better.

5 Dan didn't have a beard before. Now he has a beard.

6 This morning I was expecting a letter. Now I have it.

7 The temperature was 20 degrees. Now it is only 12.

Tom has lost his key. Lisa

The bus fare Her English Dan

The letter The

[image]

Put in been or gone.

1 James is on holiday. He's gone to Italy.

2 Hello! I've just to the shops. I've bought lots of things.

3 Alice isn't here at the moment. She's to the shop to get a newspaper.

4 Tom has out. He'll be back in about an hour.

5 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, I've already to the bank.'

[image]

Complete B's sentences. Make sentences from the words in brackets.

A V s

1

2 3 4 5 6 7

Would you like something to eat? Do you know where Julia is? What time is David leaving? What's in the newspaper today? Is Sue coming to the cinema with us?

Are your friends here yet? What does Tim think about your plan?

No, thanks. I've, just haxi lunch. (I / just / have / lunch)

Yes,

(I / just / see / her)

/I

B

(he / already / leave)

I don't know

(I / not / read / it yet)

No,

(she / already / see / the film)

Yes,

(they / just / arrive)

(we / not / tell / him yet)

[image]

Read the situations and write sentences with just, already or yet.

1 After lunch you go to see a friend at her house. She says, 'Would you like something to eat?' You say: No thank you. I've just had lunch. (have lunch)

2 Joe goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says, 'Can I speak to Joe?'

You say: I'm afraid (go out)

3 You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your

plate away. You say: Wait a minute! (not/finish)

4 You plan to eat at a restaurant tonight. You phoned to reserve a table. Later your friend says, 'Shall I phone to reserve a table?' You say: No, (do it)

5 You know that a friend of yours is looking for a place to live. Perhaps she has been successful. Ask her. You say: ? (find)

6 You are still thinking about where to go for your holiday. A friend asks, 'Where are you going

for your holiday?' You say: ... (not/decide)

7 Linda went shopping, but a few minutes ago she returned. Somebody asks, 'Is Linda still out shopping?' You say: No, (come back)

Unit

8 1 Present perfect 2 (I have done)

Study this example conversation:

dave: Have you travelled a lot, Jane?

jane: Yes, I've been to lots of places.

dave: Really? Have you ever been to China?

jane: Yes, I've been to China twice.

dave: What about India?

jane: No, I haven't been to India.

When we talk about a period of time that continues from the past until now, we use the present perfect (have been / have travelled etc.). Here, Dave and Jane are talking about the places Jane has visited in her life, which is a period that continues until now.

J

Some more examples:

Have you ever eaten caviar? j We've never had a car.

'Have you read Hamlet?' 'No, I haven't read any of Shakespeare's plays.' D Susan really loves that film. She's seen it eight times! O What a boring film! It's the most boring film I've ever seen.

Been (to) = visited:

O I've never been to China. Have you been there?

Jane's life (a period until now)

past now

recently

In the following examples too, the speakers are talking about a period that continues until now (recently / in the last few days / so far / since breakfast etc.):

Have you heard anything from Brian recently?

I've met a lot of people in the last few days. O Everything is going well.
We haven't had any problems

so far.

I'm hungry. I haven't eaten anything since breakfast.

(= from breakfast until now)

in the last few days since breakfast

past

now

It's good to see you again. We haven't seen each other for a long time.

In the same way we use the present perfect with today / this evening / this year etc. when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking (see also Unit 14B):

I've drunk four cups of coffee today.

Have you had a holiday this year?

I haven't seen Tom this morning. Have you?

Rob hasn't worked very hard this term.

today

past

now

We say: It's the (first) time something has happened. For example: C Don is having a driving lesson. It's his first one. It's the first time he has driven a car. (not drives) or He has never driven a car before.

Sarah has lost her passport again. This is the second time this has happened, (not happens) Bill is phoning his girlfriend again. That's the

third time he's phoned her this evening.

This is the first time I've driven a ca

:ime |

[image]

Present perfect 1 Unit 7 Present perfect + for/since Units 11-12 Present perfect and past --> Units 12-14

Exercises

[image]

You ask people about things they have done. Write questions with ever.

1 (ride / horse?) Have you ever ridden a horse? .

2 (be / California?) Have

3 (run / marathon?)

4 (speak / famous person?)

5 (most beautiful place / visit?) What's

Complete B's answers. Some sentences are positive and some negative. Use these verbs:

be be eat happen have

have

meet play read see try

A.

B

1

2

3

4

5

6 7 8

9 10

11

What's Mark's sister like? Is everything going well? Are you hungry? Can you play chess? Are you enjoying your holiday?

What's that book like?

Is Brussels an interesting place?

I hear your car broke down again yesterday.

Do you like caviar?

Mike was late for work again today.

Who's that woman by the door?

I've no idea. I've never met her.

Yes, we Haven't had any problems so far.

Yes. I much today.

Yes, but ... for ages.

Yes, it's the best holiday for a
long time.

I don't know. it.

I've no idea. there.

Yes, it's the second time this month.

I don't know. it.

Again? He

late every day this week. I don't know her before.

[image]

Write four sentences about yourself. Use I haven't and choose from the boxes.

used a computer been to the cinema

travelled by bus read a book

eaten any fruit lost anything

1 I haven't used a computer today

4 5

Read the situations and write sentences as shown in the example.

1 Jack is driving a car, but he's very nervous and not sure what to do. You ask: Have you ever driven a car before?

He says: No, this is the first time I've driven a car.

2 Ben is playing tennis. He's not good at it and he doesn't know the rules. You ask: Have you ever played tennis?

He says: No, this is the first time I've played tennis.

3 Sue is riding a horse. She doesn't look very confident or comfortable. You ask: Have you ever ridden a horse?

She says: No, I haven't ridden a horse before.

4 Maria is in Japan. She has just arrived and it's very new for her. You ask: Have you ever been to Japan?

You ask:

She says:

today this week recently for ages since... this year

Unit

9

Present perfect continuous (I have been doing)

It has been raining

Study this example situation:

[image]

Is it raining?

No, but the ground is wet. It has been raining.

Have/has been -ing is the present perfect continuous:

I/we/they/you have (= I've etc.) he/she/it has (= he's etc.)

doing been waiting

playing etc.

We use the present perfect continuous for an activity that has recently stopped or just stopped. There is a connection with now:

O You're out of breath. Have you been running? (= you're out of breath now)

O Paul is very tired. He's been working very hard. (= he's tired now)

O Why are your clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?

O I've been talking to Amanda about the problem and she agrees with me.

O Where have you been? I've been looking for you everywhere.

It has been raining for two hours.

Study this example situation:

[image]

It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

How long has it been raining? It has been raining for two hours.

We use the present perfect continuous in this way especially with how long, for ... and since The activity is still happening (as in this example) or has just stopped.

O How long have you been learning English? (= you're still learning English)
D Tim is still watching TV. He's been watching TV all day.

Where have you been? I've been looking for you for the last half hour.
O Chris hasn't been feeling well recently.

You can use the present perfect continuous for actions repeated over a period of time:
O Silvia is a very good tennis player. She's been playing since she was eight.
Every morning they meet in the same cafe. They've been going there for years.

Compare I am doing (see Unit 1) and I have been doing:

Present perfect continuous and simple -* Units 10-11
Present perfect + for/since -fr Units 11-12

j

Exercises

[image]

What have these people been doing or what has been happening?

s

earlier

now

[image]

[image]

earlier

now

[image]

They Ve been shopping . She

[image]

earlier

now

[image]

[image]

a

earlier

now

They

[image]

[image]

He

J

[image]

Write a question for each situation.

1 You meet Paul as he is leaving the swimming pool.

You ask: (you / swim?) Have you been swimming ?

2 You have just arrived to meet a friend who is waiting for you. You ask:
(you / wait / long?)

3 You meet a friend in the street. His face and hands are very dirty. You ask: (what / you / do?)

4 A friend of yours is now working in a shop. You want to know how long.

You ask: (how long / you / work / there?)

5 A friend tells you about his job - he sells mobile phones. You want to know how long. You ask: (how long / you / sell / mobile phones?)

[image]

for 20 minutes.

[image]

Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 It's raining. The rain started two hours ago. It ..!&. been rommg for two hours.

2 We are waiting for the bus. We started waiting 20 minutes ago.

We

3 I'm learning Spanish. I started classes in December.

I since December.

4 Jessica is working in a supermarket. She started working there on 18 January.

since 18 January.

5 Our friends always spend their holidays in Italy. They started going there years ago.

for years.

Put the verb into the present continuous (I am -ing) or present perfect

continuous (I have been -ing).

1 Maria, Has been Learning (Maria / learn) English for two years.

2 Hello, Tom. (I / look) for you. Where have you been?

3 Why (you / look) at me like that? Stop it!

4 Linda is a teacher (she / teach) for ten years.

5 (I / think) about what you said and I've decided to take your advice.

6 'Is Paul on holiday this week?' 'No, (he/work).'

7 Sarah is very tired. (she / work) very hard recently.

Present perfect continuous and simple (I have been doing and I have done)

Study this example situation:

I've been painting my bedroom?)

[image]

There is paint on Kate's clothes. She has been painting her bedroom.

Has been painting is the present perfect continuous.

We are thinking of the activity. It does not matter whether it has been finished or not. In this example, the activity (painting the bedroom) has not been finished.

[image]

I've painted my bedroom/)

Her bedroom was green. Now it is yellow. She has painted her bedroom.

Has painted is the present perfect simple.

Here, the important thing is that something has been finished. Has painted is a completed action. We are interested in the result of the activity (the painted bedroom), not the activity itself.

Compare these examples:

We use the continuous to say how long (for something that is still happening):

How long have you been reading that book?

Lisa is writing emails. She's been writing emails all morning. They've been playing tennis since 2 o'clock.

I'm learning Arabic, but I haven't been learning it very long.

We use the simple to say how much, how many or how many times:

How much of that book have you read?

Lisa is writing emails. She's sent lots of emails this morning. They've played tennis three times this week.

I'm learning Arabic, but I haven't learnt very much yet.

—

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous: I've known about the problem for a long time, (not I've been knowing) D How long have you had that camera? (not have you been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For have, see Unit 17. But note that you can use want and mean in the present perfect continuous: O I've been meaning to phone Jane, but I keep forgetting.

Present perfect simple -> Units 7-8 Present perfect continuous -> Unit 9
Present perfect + for/since <■* Units 11-12

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Read the situation and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets.

1 Tom started reading a book two hours ago. He is still reading it and now he is on page 53.

He has been reading for two hours, (read) He has read 53 pages so far.
(read)

2 Rachel is from Australia. She is travelling round Europe at the moment. She began her trip three months ago.

She for three months, (travel)

six countries so far. (visit)

3 Patrick is a tennis player. He began playing tennis when he was ten years old. This year he won the national championship again - for the fourth time.

the national championship four times, (win) since he was ten. (play)

4 When they left college, Lisa and Sue started making films together. They still make films.

They films since they left college, (make)

five films since they left college, (make)

For each situation, ask a question using the words in brackets.

1 You have a friend who is learning Arabic. You ask:

(how long/ learn /Arabic?) How Long Have you been learning...Arabic?

2 You have just arrived to meet a friend. She is waiting for you. You ask:

(wait / long?) Have

3 You see somebody fishing by the river. You ask:

(catch / any fish?)

4 Some friends of yours are having a party next week. You ask: (how many people / invite?)

5 A friend of yours is a teacher. You ask: (how long / teach?)

6 You meet somebody who is a writer. You ask:

(how many books/write?)

(how long / write / books?) ...

7 A friend of yours is saving money to go on a world trip. You ask:

(how long / save?)

(how much money / save?)

Put the verb into the more suitable form, present perfect simple (I have done) or continuous (I have been doing).

1 Where have you been? Have you been playing (you / play) tennis?

2 Look! (somebody / break) that window.

3 You look tired. (you / work) hard?

4 ' (you / ever / work) in a factory?' 'No, never.'

5 'Liz is away on holiday.' 'Is she? Where (she/go)?'

6 My brother is an actor. (he / appear) in several films.

7 'Sorry I'm late.' 'That's all right. (I / not / wait) long.'

8 'Is it still raining?' 'No, (it/stop).'

9 (I / lose) my phone (you / see)

it anywhere?

10 (I / read) the book you lent me, but (I / not / finish) it yet. It's very interesting.

11 (I / read) the book you lent me, so you can have it back now.

12 This is a very old book (I / have) it since I was a child.

Unit 11

How long have you (been)... ?

Study this example situation:

[image]

Dan and Jenny are married. They got married exactly 20 years ago, so today is their 20th wedding anniversary.

They have been married for 20 years.

We say: They are married, (present)

but How long have they been married? (presentperfect) (not How long are they married?) They have been married for 20 years.

(not They are married for 20 years)

We use the present perfect to talk about something that began in the past and still continues now. Compare the present and the present perfect: Paul is in hospital.

He's been in hospital since Monday. (= He has been (not Paul is in hospital since Monday)

but

but

but

but

O

O

O

Do you know each other well?

Have you known each other for a long time?

(not Do you know)

She's waiting for somebody. She's been waiting all morning.

Do they have a car?

How long have they had their car?

past

now

I have known/had/lived etc. is the present perfect simple.

I have been learning / been waiting / been doing etc. is the present perfect continuous.

When we ask or say 'how long', the continuous is more usual (see Unit 10):
O I've been learning English for six months. O It's been raining since lunchtime. O Richard has been doing the same job for 20 years. O 'How long have you been driving?' Since I was 17/

Some verbs (for example, know/like/believe) are not normally used in the continuous: C How long have you known Jane? (not have you been knowing) C I've had a pain in my stomach all day. (not I've been having)

See also Units 4A and 10C. For have, see Unit 17.

You can use either the present perfect continuous or simple with live and work: C Julia has been living / has lived here for a long time. O How long have you been working / have you worked here?

But use the simple (I've lived / I've done etc.) with always:

O I've always lived in the country, (not always been living)

We say 'I haven't done something since/for (present perfect simple):

I haven't seen Tom since Monday. (= Monday was the last time I saw him)

Sarah hasn't phoned for ages. (= the last time she phoned was ages ago)

I haven't... since/for -> Unit 8B Present perfect continuous «4 Units 9-10

For and since Unit 12A

Exercises

Are the underlined verbs right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 Ben is a friend of mine. I know him very well. OK

2 Ben is a friend of mine. I know him for a long time. I've known him

3 Sarah and Adam are married since July.

4 The weather is awful. It's raining again.

5 The weather is awful. It's raining all day.

6 I like your house. How long are you living there?

7 Gary is working in a shop for the last few months.

8 I don't know Tom well. We've only met a few times.

9 I gave up drinking coffee. I don't drink it for a year.

10 That's a very old bike. How long do you have it?

Read the situations and write questions from the words in brackets.

1 A friend tells you that Paul is in hospital. You ask him: (how long / be / in hospital?) How Long has Paul been in hospital?

2 You meet a woman who tells you that she teaches English. You ask her: (how long / teach / English?)

3 You know that Jane is a good friend of Katherine's. You ask Jane: (how

long / know / Katherine?)

4 Your friend's brother went to Australia some time ago and he's still there. You ask your friend: (how long / be / in Australia?)

5 Tom always wears the same jacket. It's a very old jacket. You ask him: (how long / have / that jacket?)

6 You are talking to a friend about Joe. Joe now works at the airport. You ask your friend: (how long / work / at the airport?)

7 A friend of yours is having guitar lessons. You ask him: (how long / have / guitar lessons?)

8 You meet somebody on a plane. She says that she lives in Chicago. You ask her: (always / live / in Chicago?)

Complete B's answers to A's questions.

[image]

[image]

[image]

Unit

12

For and since When ... ? and How long ... ?

We use for and since to say how long something has been happening.

We use for + a period of time (two hours, six weeks etc.):

I've been waiting for two hours.

for two hours

two hours ago

-*-now

Sally has been working here for six months, (not since six months) I haven't seen Tom for three days.

We use since + the start of a period (8 o'clock, Monday, 1999 etc.):

I've been waiting since 8 o'clock.

since 8 o'clock

8 o'clock

→ now

8 o'clock April

lunchtime

since

Monday 2001

we arrived

12 May Christmas I got up

J Sally has been working here since April. (= from April until now) I haven't seen Tom since Monday.

It is possible to leave out for (but not usually in negative sentences): D They've been married (for) ten years, (with or without for) O They haven't had a holiday for ten years, (you must use for)

We do not use for + all... (all day / all my life etc.): I've lived here all my life, (not for all my life)

You can use in instead of for in negative sentences (I haven't... etc.): They haven't had a holiday in ten years. (= for ten years)

Compare when ... ? (+ past simple) and how long ... ? (+ present perfect):

a: When did it start raining?

b: It started raining an hour ago / at 1 o'clock.

a: How long has it been raining?

b: It's been raining for an hour / since 1 o'clock.

a: When did Joe and Carol first meet?

a long time ago.

[image]

[image]

b: They first met

when they were at school.

a: How long have they known each other?

They've known each other for a long time.

b: They've known each other for

so long

since they were at school.

We say:

It's been

It's (= It is)

or It's been (= It has been)

a long time

six months (etc.)

since something happened

It's two years since I last saw Joe. or It's been two years since ...

(= I haven't seen Joe for two years)

It's ages since we went to the cinema, or It's been ages since ...

(= We haven't been to the cinema for ages)

How long is it since Mrs Hill died? or How long has it been since .

(=When did Mrs Hill die?)

How long have you (been) ... ? -fr Unit 11

j

Exercises

Unit

12

[image]

[image]

[image]

Write for or since.

1 It's been raining since lunchtime.

2 Sarah has lived in Paris 1995.

3 Paul has lived in Brazil ten years.

4 I'm tired of waiting. We've been sitting here an hour.

5 Kevin has been looking for a job he left school.

6 I haven't been to a party ages.

7 I wonder where Joe is. I haven't seen him last week.

8 Jane is away. She's been away Friday.

9 The weather is dry. It hasn't rained a few weeks.

Write questions with how long and when.

1 It's raining, (how long?) How Long H&s ub been raiYwaq?

(when?) WHen dJud^.'ib siarl roirring?

2 Kate is learning Japanese.

(how long / learn?)

(when / start?)

3 I know Simon.

(how long / you / know?)

(when / you / first / meet?)

4 Rebecca and David are married.

(how long?)

(when?)

Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 It's raining. It's been raining since lunchtime. It started raxnwg at lunchtime.

2 Ann and Jess are friends. They first met years ago. They've known each other -for years.

3 Mark is ill. He became ill on Sunday. He has Sunday.

4 Mark is ill. He became ill a few days ago. He has a few days.

5 Sarah is married. She's been married for a year. She got

6 You have a headache. It started when you woke up.

I've I woke up.

7 Sue has been in Italy for the last three weeks. She went

8 You're working in a hotel. You started six months ago.

I've

^ ^ Write B's sentences using the words in brackets.

1 a: Do you often go on holiday?

b: No, I haven't had a holiday for five years.

2 a: Do you often see Laura?

b: No, I about a month.

3 a: Do you often go to the cinema?

b: No, a long time.

4 a: Do you often eat in restaurants?

b: No, ages.

Now write B's answers again. This time use It's ... since

5 (1) No, It's five years since I had, a holiday.

6 (2) No, it's

7 (3) No,

8 (4)

Unit

Present perfect and past 1 (I have done and I did)

Study this example situation:

[image]

Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it.

He has lost his key. (present perfect)

This means that he doesn't have his key now.

Ten minutes later:

[image]

Now Tom has found his key. He has it now.

Has he lost his key? No, he has found it.

Did he lose his key? Yes, he did.

He lost his key (past simple)

but now he has found it. (present perfect)

■'■•.•HVSrv

The present perfect (something has happened) is a present tense. It always tells us about the situation now. 'Tom has lost his key' = he doesn't have his key now (see Unit 7).

The past simple (something happened) tells us only about the past. If somebody says 'Tom lost his key', this doesn't tell us whether he has the key now or not. It tells us only that he lost his key at some time in the past.

Do not use the present perfect if the situation now is different. Compare:

They've gone away. They'll be back on Friday, (they are away now) They went away, but I think they're back at home now. (not They've gone) O It has stopped raining now, so we don't need the umbrella, (it isn't raining now) It stopped raining for a while, but now it's raining again, (not It has stopped)

You can use the present perfect for new or recent happenings:

'I've repaired the washing machine. It's working OK now.' 'Oh, that's good.'
O 'Sally has had a baby! It's a boy.' 'That's great news.'

Usually, you can also use the past simple:

C I repaired the washing machine. It's working OK now.

Use the past simple (not the present perfect) for things that are not recent or new: C Mozart was a composer. He wrote more than 600 pieces of music.

(not has been ... has written) O My mother grew up in Italy, (not has grown)

Compare:

D Did you know that somebody has invented a new type of washing machine? O Who invented the telephone? (not has invented)

We use the present perfect to give new information (see Unit 7). But if we continue to talk about it, we normally use the past simple: C a: Ow! I've burnt myself.

b: How did you do that? (not have you done) a: I picked up a hot dish, (not have picked)

Q a: Look! Somebody has spilt something on the sofa.

b: Well, it wasn't me. I didn't do it. (not hasn't been ... haven't done)

c

Past simple Unit 5 Present perfect -> Units 7-8 American English -> Appendix 7

Present perfect and past 2 ■* Unit 14

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. Use the present perfect where possible. Otherwise use the past simple.

[image]

[image]

OK grew

Yes,

(have) a headache, but I'm fine now.

Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 Did you hear about Sue? She's given up her job.

2 My mother has grown up in Italy.

3 How many poems has William Shakespeare written ?

4 Ow! I've cut my finger. It's bleeding.

5 Drugs have become a big problem everywhere.

6 Who has invented paper?

7 Where have you been born ?

8 Ellie isn't at home. She's gone shopping.

9 Albert Einstein has been the scientist who has developed the theory of relativity.

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1 It stopped, raining for a while, but now it's raining again, (it /stop)

2 The town where I live is very different now. \jk has changed, a lot. (it / change)

3 I studied German at school, but most of it now. (I/forget)

4 The police three people, but later they let them go. (arrest)

5 What do you think of my English? Do you think ? (it / improve)

6 a: Are you still reading the paper?

b: No, with it. You can have it. (I / finish)

7 for a job as a tourist guide, but I wasn't successful. (I / apply)

8 Where's my bike? outside the house, but it's not there now. (it / be)

9 Quick! We need to call an ambulance. .., an accident, (there / be) 10 a:
Have you heard about Ben? his arm. (he /break)

b: Really? How ? (that / happen)

a: off a ladder, (he/fall)

Unit

14 Present perfect and past 2 (I have done and I did)

Do not use the present perfect (I have done) when you talk about a finished time (for example, yesterday / ten minutes ago / in 2005 / when I was a child). Use a past tense. O It was very cold yesterday, (not has been) O Paul and Lucy arrived ten minutes ago. (not have arrived) O Did you eat a lot of sweets when you were a child? (not have you eaten) C I got home late last night. I was very tired and went straight to bed.

Use the past to ask When ... ? or What time ... ?:

Compare:

Present perfect (have done)

O I've done a lot of work today.

We use the present perfect for a period of time that continues until now.
For example: today / this week / since 2007.

r unfinished -i

today

past

now

It hasn't rained this week.

Have you seen Anna this morning?

(it is still morning)

Have you seen Tim recently?

□ I don't know where Lisa is. I haven't seen her. (= I haven't seen her recently)

We've been waiting for an hour, (we are still waiting now)

□ Jack lives in Los Angeles. He has lived there for seven years.

I have never played golf, (in my life)

It's the last day of your holiday. You say: It's been a really good holiday. I've really enjoyed it.

Past simple (did)

I did a lot of work yesterday.

We use the past simple for a finished time in the past. For example:

yesterday / last week / from 2007 to 2010.

r unfinished -i

yesterday

.,.iimu»i j. n il.-...in.v-!

past

now

It didn't rain last week.

Did you see Anna this morning?

(it is now afternoon or evening)

D Did you see Tim on Sunday?

a: Was Lisa at the party on Sunday? b: I don't think so. I didn't see her.

We waited (or were waiting) for an

hour, (we are no longer waiting)

Jack lived in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles.

I didn't play golf last summer.

After you come back from holiday you say: It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed it.

Past simple ■# Unit 5 Present perfect H> Units 7-8 Present perfect and past 1 -> Unit 13

j

Exercises

Unit

14

Are the underlined parts of these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 I've lost my key. I can't find it anywhere. OK

2 Have you eaten a lot of sweets when you were a child? Did you. eai

3 I've boug ht a new car. You must come and see it.

4 I've boug ht a new car last week.

5 Where have you been yesterday evening?

6 Lucy has left school in 1999.

7 I'm looking for Mike. Have you seen him?

8 'Have you been to Paris?' 'Yes, many times.'

9 I'm very hungry. I haven't eaten much today. 10 When has this book been published?

[image]

Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use the present perfect or past simple.

1 (it / not / rain / this week) It hasn't rained this week.

2 (the weather / be / cold / recently) The weather

3 (it / cold / last week) It

4 (I / not / read / a newspaper yesterday) I

5 (I / not / read / a newspaper today)

6 (Emily / earn / a lot of money / this year)

7 (she / not / earn / so much / last year)

8 (you / have / a holiday recently?)

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, present perfect or past simple.

1 'What's Madrid like?' 'I don't know I haven't been ... (I / not / be) there.'

2 When (I / get) home last night, (I / be) very tired and (I / go) straight to bed.

3 a: (you / see) Lisa recently?

b: Yes, (I / saw) her a few days ago.

4 I'm tired. (I / not / sleep) well last night.

5 The bus drivers were on strike last week. (there / be) no buses.

6 Mr Lee (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then (he / give) it up. Now he works as a gardener.

7 Mary lives in Dublin (she / live) there all her life.

8 a: (you / go) to the cinema last night?

b: Yes, but (it / be) a mistake. The film (be) awful.

9 My grandfather (die) before I was born.

(I / never / meet) him.

10 I don't know Karen's husband. (I / never / meet) him.

11 It's nearly lunchtime, and (I / not / see) Martin all morning. I wonder where he is.

12 'Where do you live?' 'In Boston.'

'How long (you / live) there?' 'Five years.'

'Where (you / live) before that?' 'In Chicago.'

'And how long (you / live) in Chicago?' 'Two years.'

Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1 (something you haven't done today) I Haven't eaten any fruit today

2 (something you haven't done today)

3 (something you didn't do yesterday)

4 (something you did yesterday evening)

5 (something you haven't done recently)

6 (something you've done a lot recently)

-* Additional exercises 2-4 (pages 303-04), 14-15 (pages 310-11)

Unit

15 . Past perfect (I had done)

Study this example situation:

at 10.30 at 11.00

Bye'

[image]

Sarah went to a party last week. Paul went to the party too, but they didn't see each other. Paul left the party at 10.30 and Sarah arrived at 11 o'clock. So:

When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul wasn't there.

He had gone home.

Had gone is the past perfect (simple):

PAUL

SARAH

J

The past perfect simple is had + past participle (gone/seen/finished etc).

Sometimes we talk about something that happened in the past:

O Sarah arrived at the party. This is the starting point of the story. Then, if we want to talk about things that happened before this time, we use the past perfect (had ...):

O When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.

Some more examples:

O When we got home last night, we found that somebody had broken into the flat. O Karen didn't want to go to the cinema with us because she'd already seen the movie. C At first I thought I'd done the right thing, but I soon realised that I'd made a big mistake. O The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He hadn't flown before. or ... He had never

flown before.

Compare the present perfect (have seen etc.) and the past perfect (had seen etc.):

Present perfect

have seen

past

now

3 Who is that woman? I've seen her before, but I can't remember where.
We aren't hungry. We've just had lunch.

The house is dirty. They haven't cleaned it for weeks.

Past perfect had seen

past

now

D I wasn't sure who she was. I'd seen her before, but I couldn't remember where. We weren't hungry. We'd just had lunch.

The house was dirty. They hadn't cleaned it for weeks.

Compare the past simple (left, was etc.) and the past perfect (had left, had been etc.):

^Past perfect continuous -> Unit 16 Irregular verbs (gone/seen etc.) ->
Appendix I

Exercises

[image]

Read the situations and write sentences from the words in brackets.

1 You went to Sue's house, but she wasn't there, (she/go/out) She had, gone out.

2 You went back to your home town after many years. It wasn't the same as before, (it / change / a lot)

3 I invited Rachel to the party, but she couldn't come.

(she / arrange / to do something else)

4 You went to the cinema last night. You got to the cinema late, (the film / already / start)

5 It was nice to see Daniel again after such a long time. (I / not / see / him for five years)

6 I offered Sue something to eat, but she wasn't hungry, (she / just / have / breakfast)

[image]

For each situation, write a sentence ending with never ... before. Use the verb in brackets.

1 The man sitting next to you on the plane was very nervous. It was his first flight, (fly) He'd never -flown before.

2 Somebody sang a song. I didn't know it.

(hear) I before.

3 Sam played tennis yesterday. He wasn't very good at it because it was his first game. (play) He

4 Last year we went to Mexico. It was our first time there.

(be there) We

Use the sentences on the left to complete the paragraphs on the right. These sentences are in the order in which they happened - so (a) happened before (b), (b) before (c) etc. But your paragraph begins with the underlined sentence, so sometimes you need the past perfect.

1 (a) Somebody broke into the office during
the night.

(b) We arrived at work in the morning.

(c) We called the police.

2 (a) Laura went out this morning.

(b) I rang her doorbell.

(c) There was no answer.

3 (a) Jim came back from holiday a few days ago.

(b) I met him the same day.

(c) He looked very well.

4 (a) Kevin sent Sally lots of emails.

(b) She never replied to them.

(c) Yesterday he got a phone call from her.

(d) He was very surprised.

We arrived at work in the morning and found that somebody had broken into the office during the night. So the police.

I went to Laura's house this morning and

rang her doorbell, but no

answer. out.

I met Jim a few days ago.

just holiday.

very well.

Yesterday Kevin from

Sally. very surprised. lots of emails,

but

J Put the verb into the correct form, past perfect (I had done) or past simple (I did).

1 'Was Paul at the party when you arrived?' 'No, he had gone (go) home.'

2 I felt very tired when I got home, so I (go) straight to bed.

3 The house was very quiet when I got home. Everybody (go) to bed.

4 Sorry I'm late. The car (break) down on my way here.

5 We were driving along the road when we (see) a car which
(break) down, so we (stop) to help.

H> Additional exercises 5-8 (pages 304-07)

16 Past perfect continuous (I had been doing)

Study this example situation: yesterday morning

[image]

Yesterday morning I got up and looked out of the window. The sun was shining, but the ground was very wet.

It had been raining.

It was not raining when I looked out of the window; the sun was shining. But it had been raining before.

Had been -ing is the past perfect continuous:

Some more examples:

When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty, their hair was untidy and one of

them had a black eye. They'd been fighting. 0 I was very tired when I got

home. I'd been working hard all day. O When I went to Madrid a few years ago, I stayed with a friend of mine. She hadn't been

living there very long, but she knew the city very well.

You can say that something had been happening for a period of time before something else happened: C We'd been playing tennis for about half an hour when it started to rain heavily. O Paul went to the doctor last Friday. He hadn't been feeling well for some time.

Compare have been -ing (present perfect continuous) and had been -ing (past perfect continuous):

Present perfect continuous

I have been -ing

Past perfect continuous I had been -ing

Compare was -ing (past continuous) and had been -ing:

It wasn't raining when we went out. The sun was shining. But it had been raining,

so the ground was wet.

Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because she'd been working

very hard.

Some verbs (for example, know and like) are not normally used in the continuous:

We were good friends. We had known each other for years, (not had been knowing) O I was surprised when Lisa cut her hair. She'd had long hair since I first met her. (not she'd been having)

For a list of these verbs, see Unit 4A. For have, see Unit 17.

Present perfect continuous -> Unit 9-10 Past perfect simple -> Unit 15

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Read the situations and make sentences from the words in brackets.

1 I was very tired when I arrived home.

(I / work / hard all day) I'd been working baxd oil day.

2 The two boys came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired, (they / play / football)

3 I was disappointed when I had to cancel my holiday. (I / look / forward to it)

4 Ann woke up in the middle of the night. She was frightened and didn't know where she was. (she / dream)

5 When I got home, Mark was sitting in front of the TV. He had just turned it off.

(he / watch / a film) ..

Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 We played tennis yesterday. Half an hour after we began playing, it started to rain. We had been piling -for hai-f an hour when ^ started, to ram

2 I had arranged to meet Tom in a restaurant. I arrived and waited for him. After 20 minutes I realised that I was in the wrong restaurant.

I for 20 minutes when I

the wrong restaurant.

3 Sarah got a job in factory. Five years later the factory closed down.

At the time the factory , Sarah there for five years.

4 I went to a concert last week. The orchestra began playing. After about

ten minutes a man in the audience suddenly started shouting.

The orchestra when

This time make your own sentence:

5 I began walking along the road. I

when

Put the verb into the most suitable form, past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

1 It was very noisy next door. Our neighbours were- having (have) a party.

2 We were good friends. We d known (we / know) each other for years.

3 John and I went for a walk. I had difficulty keeping up with him because (he / walk) so fast.

4 Sue was sitting on the ground. She was out of breath (she / run).

5 When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table with their mouths full. (they/eat).

6 When I arrived, everybody was sitting round the table and talking. Their mouths were empty, but their stomachs were full. (they/eat).

7 James was on his hands and knees on the floor. (he / look) for his contact lens.

8 When I arrived, Kate (wait) for me. She was annoyed because I was late and (she / wait) for a long time.

9 I was sad when I sold my car. (I / have) it for a very long time.

10 We were extremely tired at the end of the journey. (we / travel) for more than 24 hours.

[image]

-> Additional exercises 5-8 (pages 304-07)

17 Have and have got

Have and have got (= for possession, relationships, illnesses etc.)

You can use have or have got. There is no difference in meaning: O They have a new car. or They've got a new car. O Lisa has two brothers, or Lisa's got two brothers. O I have a headache, or I've got a headache.

C Our house has a small garden, or Our house has got a small garden. O He has a few problems, or He's got a few problems.

With these meanings (possession etc.), you cannot use continuous forms (am having etc.):

We're enjoying our holiday. We have / We've got a nice room in the hotel, (not We're having a nice room)

For the past we use had (without got):

Lisa had long hair when she was a child, (not Lisa had got)

In questions and negative sentences there are three possible forms:

In past questions and negative sentences we use did/didn't: Did you have a car when you were living in Paris? I didn't have my phone, so I couldn't call you. Lisa had long hair, didn't she?

Have breakfast / have a shower / have a good time etc.

We also use have (but not have got) for many actions and experiences. For example:

breakfast / dinner / a cup of coffee / something to eat etc. a bath / a shower / a swim / a break / a rest / a party / a holiday an accident / an experience / a dream have a look (at something)

a chat / a conversation / a discussion (with somebody) trouble / difficulty / fun / a good time etc. a baby (= give birth to a baby)

Have got is not possible in the expressions in the box. Compare:

Sometimes I have (= eat) a sandwich for my lunch, (not I've got) but I've got / I have some sandwiches. Would you like one?

You can use continuous forms (am having etc.) with the expressions in the box: We're enjoying our holiday. We're having a great time, (not We have) O Mark is having a shower at the moment. He has a shower every day.

In questions and negative sentences we use do/does/did:

Q I don't usually have a big breakfast, (not I usually haven't) O What time does Chris have lunch? (not has Chris lunch) G Did you have trouble finding a place to live?

Have (got) to ... -¥ Unit 31 American English -> Appendix 7

Write negative sentences with have. Some are present and some are past.

1 I can't get into the house, (a key) I...haven't got a key...

2 I couldn't read the letter, (my glasses) I didn't Have molasses.

3 I can't get onto the roof, (a ladder) I

4 We couldn't visit the museum, (enough time) We

5 He couldn't find his way to our house, (a map)

6 She can't pay her bills, (any money)

7 I can't go swimming today, (enough energy)

8 They couldn't take any pictures, (a camera)

Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes two alternatives are possible, sometimes only one.

1 Excuse me, a pen I could borrow?

(A)have you got B are you having ©do you have (both A and C are correct)

2 time to go to the bank yesterday? A Had you got B Did you have C Had you

3 I need a stamp for this letter one?

A Do you have B Are you having C Have you got

4 What does Jack do? a job?

A Does he have B Is he having C Has he got

5 a lot of friends when you were a child?

A Did you have B Were you having C Had you

6 When you worked in your last job, your own office? A had you B have you got C did you have

Are the underlined verbs OK? Change them where necessary.

1 Is there anything you want to ask? Do you have any questions? OK

2 Lisa had got long hair when she was a child. Lisa, had long hair.

3 Tom couldn't contact us because he hadn't our number.

4 'Are you feeling OK?' 'No, I'm having a toothache.'

5 Are you enjoying yourself? Are you having a good time?

6 It started to rain. I got wet because I hadn't an umbrella.

7 Will can't drive. He doesn't have a driving licence.

8 Did your trip go OK? Had you any problems?

9 My friend called me when I was having breakfast.

Complete the sentences. Use an expression from the list with have in the correct form.

have a baby have a break have a chat have trouble have a good flight

have a look have lunch have a party have a nice time have a shower

1 I don't eat much during the day. I never Have lunch

2 David starts work at 8 o'clock and at 10.30.

3 We... last week. It was great - we invited lots of people.

4 Excuse me, can I at your newspaper, please?

5 Jim is away on holiday at the moment. I hope he

6 I met Ann in the supermarket yesterday. We stopped and

7 a: finding the book you wanted?

b: No, I found it OK.

8 Suzanne a few weeks ago. It's her second child.

9 a: Why didn't you answer the phone?

b: I

10 You meet your friend Sally at the airport. She has just arrived. You say:

Hi, Sally. How are you? ?

Study this example situation:

a few years ago

[image]

Nicola doesn't travel much these days. She prefers to stay at home.

But she used to travel a lot.

She used to go away two or three times a year.

She used to travel a lot = she travelled a lot often in the past, but she doesn't do this any more.

she used to travel

she doesn't travel

these days

past

now

Something used to happen = it happened often in the past, but no longer happens: O I used to play tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now.

David used to spend a lot of money on clothes. These days he can't afford it. 'Do you go to the cinema much?' 'Not now, but I used to.' (= I used to go)

We also use used to ... for things that were true, but are not true any more: O This building is now a furniture shop. It used to be a cinema.

I used to think Mark was unfriendly, but now I realise he's a very nice person. O I've started drinking tea recently. I never used to like it before. O Lisa used to have very long hair when she was a child.

'I used to do something' is past. There is no present. You cannot say 'I use to do'. To talk about the present, use the present simple (I do).

Compare:

C We used to live in a small village, but now we live in London.

O There used to be four cinemas in the town. Now there is only one.

The normal question form is did (you) use to ... ?:

O Did you use to eat a lot of sweets when you were a child?

The negative form is didn't use to ... (used not to ... is also possible): I didn't use to like him. (or I used not to like him.)

Compare I used to do and I was doing:

D I used to watch TV a lot. (= I watched TV often in the past, but I no longer do this) I was watching TV when Rob called. (= I was in the middle of watching TV)

Do not confuse I used to do and I am used to doing (see Unit 61). The

structures and meanings are different:

O I used to live alone. (= I lived alone in the past, but I no longer live alone)

I am used to living alone. (= I live alone, and I don't find it strange or difficult because I've been living alone for some time)

Past continuous (I was doing) Unit 6 Would (= used to) *4 Unit 36 Be/get used to (doing) something -* Unit 61

Exercises

[image]

Complete the sentences with use(d) to + a suitable verb.

1 Nicola doesn't travel much now. She use<i>d to travel a lot, but she prefers to stay at home these days.

2 Sophie a motorbike, but last year she sold it and bought a car.

3 We moved to Spain a few years ago. We in Paris.

4 I rarely eat ice-cream now, but I it when I was a child.

5 Jackie my best friend, but we aren't good friends any more.

6 It only takes me about 40 minutes to get to work now that the new road is open. It

more than an hour.

7 There a hotel near the airport, but it closed a long time ago.

8 When you lived in New York, to the theatre very often?

Compare what Karen said five years ago and what she says today:

FIVE YEARS AGO

I travel a lot.

I've got lots of friends

I'm very lazy.

I don't like cheese.

[image]

I'm a hotel receptionist.

I play the piano.

I never read newspapers.

don't drink tea. I've got a dog.

TODAY

I eat lots of cheese now

I work very hard these days.

I don't know many people these days

I work in a bookshop now

[image]

My dog died two years ago.

read a newspaper every day now.

I haven't been to a party for ages.

haven't played the piano for years.

I don't go owoy

iiiiuv-ii Liiv_j>_ uu_y j.

I go to a lot of parties.

Tea's great! I like it now.

Now write sentences about how Karen has changed. Use used to / didn't use to / never used to in the first part of your sentence.

1 She used to travel & Lot, but she doesn't go away much these days.

2 She used but

3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

but but but but but but but but

Write sentences about yourself like the examples. Begin I used to ... (I used to be/work/like/ play/read etc.).

1 I used to Live In a small village, but now I Live In London. ..

2 I used to pLay tennis a Lot, but I don't pLay any more.

3 I used , but

4 I ,,,,,,,,,,,,,, .

5

Now begin with I didn't use to

6 I didn't use to read a Lot, but I do now .

7 I didn't

8

Additional exercise 9 (page 307)

19 Present tenses (I am doing /I do) for the future

Present continuous (I am doing) with a future meaning

[image]

This is Ben's diary for next week.

He is playing tennis on Monday afternoon. He is going to the dentist on

Tuesday morning. He is having dinner with Kate on Friday.

In all these examples, Ben has already decided and arranged to do these things.

[image]

I'm doing something (tomorrow) = I have already decided and arranged to do it: O a: What are you doing on Saturday evening? (not What do you do)

b: I'm going to the theatre, (not I go) C a: What time is Katherine arriving tomorrow?

b: Half past ten. I'm meeting her at the station.

I'm not working tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere. O Steve isn't playing football next Saturday. He's hurt his leg.

'I'm going to (do)' is also possible in these sentences: O What are you going to do on Saturday evening?

But the present continuous is more natural when we talk about arrangements. See Unit 20B.

Do not use will to talk about what you have arranged to do: What are you doing this evening? (not What will you do) C Alex is getting married next month, (not will get)

You can also use the present continuous for an action just before you begin to do it. This happens especially with verbs of movement (go/come/leave etc.):

C I'm tired. I'm going to bed now. Goodnight, (not I go to bed now)

C 'Jess, are you ready yet?' 'Yes, I'm coming.' (not I come)

Present simple (I do) with a future meaning

We use the present simple when we talk about timetables, programmes etc. (for public transport, cinemas etc.):

C My train leaves at 11.30, so I need to be at the station by 11.15.

Q What time does the film start this evening?

O It's Wednesday tomorrow. / Tomorrow is Wednesday.

You can use the present simple to talk about people if their plans are fixed like a timetable: C I start my new job on Monday. O What time do you finish work tomorrow?

But the continuous is more usual for personal arrangements:

C What time are you meeting Ann tomorrow? (not do you meet)

Compare:

Present continuous

What time are you arriving?

I'm going to the cinema this evening.

Present simple

What time does the train arrive? The film starts at 8.15 (this evening).

J

I'm going to -> Units 20, 23 Will -> Units 21-22 Present simple after when/ if etc. ■+ Unit 25

Exercises

[image]

A friend of yours is planning to go on holiday soon. You ask her about her plans. Use the words in brackets to make your questions.

W /Z_

1

2 3 4 5 6

(where / go?) Where are you going ?

(how long / go for?)

(when / leave?) (go / alone?) (travel / by car?)

(where / stay?)

V

Scotland. Ten days. Next Friday. No, with a friend. No, by train. In a hotel.

[image]

[image]

[image]

Tom wants you to visit him, but you are very busy. Look at your diary for the next few days and explain to him why you can't come.

tom: Can you come on Monday evening?

you: Sorry, but I'm playing volleyball

tom: What about Tuesday evening then?

you: No, not Tuesday. I (2)

tom: And Wednesday evening?

you: (3)

tom: Well, are you free on Thursday?

you: I'm afraid not. (4)

Have you arranged to do anything at these times? Write sentences about yourself.

1 (this evening) I'm going out this evening. or I'm not doing anything this evening.

2 (tomorrow morning) I

3 (tomorrow evening)

4 (next Sunday)

5 (choose another day or time)

^ jp Put the verb into the more suitable form, present continuous or present simple.

1 I'm going (I / go) to the cinema this evening.

2 Does the film start (the film / start) at 3.30 or 4.30?

3 (we / have) a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?

4 The art exhibition (finish) on 3 May.

5 (I / not / go) out this evening. (I / stay) at home.

6 ' (you / do) anything tomorrow morning?' 'No, I'm free. Why?'

7 (we / go) to a concert tonight

(it / start) at 7.30.

8 (I / leave) now. I've come to say goodbye.

9 a: Have you seen Liz recently?

b: No, but (we / meet) for lunch next week.

10 You are on the train to London and you ask another passenger:

Excuse me. What time (this train / get) to London?

11 You are talking to Helen:

Helen, (I / go) to the supermarket (you / come)

with me?

12 You and a friend are watching television. You say:

I'm bored with this programme. What time (it/end)?

13 (I / not / use) the car this evening, so you can have it.

14 Sue (come) to see us tomorrow

(she / travel) by train and her train (arrive) at 10.15.

Additional exercises 10-13 (pages 308-10)

[image]

I am going to do something = I have already decided to do it, I intend to do it:

'Are you going to eat anything?' 'No, I'm not hungry.' O a: I hear Sarah has won some money. What is she going to do with it? b: She's going to buy a new car.

I'm just going to make a quick phone call. Can you wait for me? O This cheese smells horrible. I'm not going to eat it.

I am doing and I am going to do

We use I am doing (present continuous) when we say what we have arranged to do - for example, arranged to meet somebody, arranged to go somewhere:

C What time are you meeting Ann this evening?

O I'm leaving tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.

I am going to do something = I've decided to do it (but perhaps not arranged to do it):

'Your shoes are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them.' (= I've decided to clean them, but I haven't arranged to clean them)

I've decided not to stay here any longer. Tomorrow I'm going to look for somewhere else to stay.

Often the difference is very small and either form is possible.

You can also say that 'something is going to happen' in the future. For example:

Some more examples:

Look at those black clouds! It's going to rain, (the clouds are there now) O I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick. (I feel terrible now) O The economic situation is bad now and things are going to get worse.

I was going to do something = I intended to do it, but didn't do it:

D We were going to travel by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.

O Peter was going to do the exam, but he changed his mind.

O I was just going to cross the road when somebody shouted 'Stop!'

You can say that 'something was going to happen' (but didn't happen): I thought it was going to rain, but it didn't.

The man isn't looking where he is going.

[image]

future happening

I am doing for the future -> Unit 19A I will and I'm going to -* Unit 23

Exercises

[image]

Write a question with going to for each situation.

1 Your friend has won some money. You ask:

(what / do with it?) What are, you going to do, with &?..

2 Your friend is going to a party tonight. You ask: (what / wear?)

3 Your friend has just bought a new table. You ask: (where / put it?)

4 Your friend has decided to have a party. You ask: (who / invite?)

[image]

Read the situations and complete the dialogues. Use going to.

1 You have decided to clean your room this morning. friend: Are you going out this morning?

you: No, I'm going to clean my room.

2 You bought a sweater, but it doesn't fit you very well. You have decided to take it back to the shop.

friend: That sweater is too big for you. you: I know.

3 You have been offered a job, but you have decided not to accept it. friend: I hear you've been offered a job.

you: That's right, but

4 You have to phone Sarah. It's morning now, and you have decided to phone her tonight. friend: Have you phoned Sarah yet?

you: No,

5 You are in a restaurant. The food is awful and you've decided to complain. friend: This food is awful, isn't it?

you: Yes, it's disgusting.

[image]

What is going to happen in these situations? Use the words in brackets.

1 There are a lot of black clouds in the sky. (rain) ..It's going to rain.

2 It is 8.30. Tom is leaving his house. He has to be at work at 8.45, but the journey takes 30 minutes.

(late) He

3 There is a hole in the bottom of the boat. A lot of water is coming in

through the hole, (sink) The boat

4 Lucy and Chris are driving. There is very little petrol left in the tank. The nearest petrol station is a long way away.

(run out) They

[image]

Complete the sentences with was/were going to + the following verbs: buy
give up phone play say travel

1 We were going to travel by train, but then we decided to go by car instead.

2 I some new clothes yesterday, but I was very busy and
didn't have time to go to the shops.

3 Oliver and I tennis last week, but he had to cancel
because he'd hurt his knee.

4 I Jane, but I decided to email her instead.

5 a: When I last saw Tim, he his job. b: That's right, but in the end he
decided to stay where he was.

6 I'm sorry I interrupted you. What you ?

Will/shall 1

We use I'll (= I will) when we've just decided to do something. When we
say 'I'll do something', we announce our decision:

☐ Oh, I've left the door open. I'll go and shut it.

O 'What would you like to drink?' 'I'll have an orange juice, please.'

O 'Did you phone Lucy?' 'Oh no, I forgot. I'll phone her now.' You cannot
use the present simple (I do / I go etc.) in these sentences:

O I'll go and shut the door, (not I go and shut)

We often use I think I'll ... and I don't think I'll ...

I feel a bit hungry. I think I'll have something to eat. O I don't think I'll go out tonight. I'm too tired.

In spoken English the negative of will is usually won't (= will not): O I can see you're busy, so I won't stay long.

Do not use will to talk about what you decided before (see Units 19-20): O I'm going on holiday next Saturday, (not I'll go) C Are you working tomorrow? (not Will you work)

We often use will in these situations:

Offering to do something

O That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it. (/?ot I help)

Agreeing to do something

O a: Can you give Tim this book?

Q b: Sure, I'll give it to him when I see him this afternoon.

Promising to do something

O Thanks for lending me the money. I'll pay you back on Friday. O I won't tell anyone what happened. I promise.

Asking somebody to do something (Will you ... ?)

Will you please turn the music down? I'm trying to concentrate.

You can use won't to say that somebody refuses to do something: I've tried to give her advice, but she won't listen. O The car won't start. (= the car 'refuses' to start)

Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?

Shall is used mostly in the questions shall I ... ? / shall we ... ? We use shall I ... ? / shall we ... ? to ask somebody's opinion (especially in offers or suggestions): O Shall I open the window? (= Do you want me to open the window?)

□ I've got no money. What shall I do? (= What do you suggest?) O 'Shall we go?' 'Just a minute. I'm not ready yet.'

□ 'Where shall we have lunch?' 'Let's go to Marino's.'

Compare shall I ... ? and will you ... ?:

O Shall I shut the door? (= Do you want me to shut it?) O Will you shut the door? (= I want you to shut it)

[image]

Will/shall 2 -> Unit 22 I will and I'm going to # Unit 23 American English
Appendix 7

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences with I'll + a suitable verb.

1 I'm too tired to walk home. I think I'll take a taxi.

2 'It's cold in this room.' 'Is it? on the heating then.'

3 'Bye! Have a nice holiday!' 'Thanks. you a postcard.'

4 'Shall I do the washing-up?' 'No, it's all right. it later.'

5 'I don't know how to shut down this computer' 'OK, you.

6 'Would you like tea or coffee?' ' coffee, please.'

7 'Are you coming with us?' 'No, I think here.'

8 Thanks for lending me the money. it back as soon as possible, OK?

9 a: I know you're busy, but can you finish this report this afternoon? b:
Well, , but I can't promise.

Read the situations and write sentences with I think I'll... or I don't think

I'll... .

1 It's a bit cold. The window is open and you decide to close it. You say: I think I'll close the window.

2 You are feeling tired and it's getting late. You decide to go to bed. You say: I think I'll go to bed.

3 A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car, but you decide to walk. You say: Thank you, but I'll walk.

4 You were going to have lunch. Now you decide that you don't want to eat anything. You say: I don't think I'll eat.

5 You planned to go swimming. Now you decide that you don't want to go. You say: I'll stay at home.

Unit

21

[image]

Which is correct? (If necessary, study Units 19-20 first.)

1 'Did you phone Lucy?' 'Oh no, I forgot. I phono / I'll phone her now.' (I'll phone is correct)

2 I can't meet you tomorrow. I'm playing / I'll play tennis. (I'm playing is correct)

3 'I meet / I'll meet you outside the hotel in half an hour, OK?' 'Yes, that's fine.'

4 'I need some money.' 'OK. I'm lending / I'll lend you some. How much do you need?'

5 I'm having / I'll have a party next Saturday. I hope you can come.

6 'Remember to get a newspaper when you go out.' 'OK. I don't forget / I won't forget.'

7 What time does your train leave / will your train leave tomorrow?

8 I asked Sue what happened, but she doesn't tell / won't tell me.

9 'Are you doing / Will you do anything tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm free. Why?' 10 I don't want to go out alone. Do you come / Will you come with me?

What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with shall I ... ? or shall we ... ?

1 You and a friend want to do something this evening, but you don't know what. You ask your friend: What shall we do this evening?

2 You try on a jacket in a shop. You are not sure whether to buy it or not.

You ask a friend for advice: it?

3 It's Helen's birthday next week. You want to give her a present, but you don't know what. You ask a friend for advice:

What

4 You and a friend are going on holiday together, but you have to decide where. You ask him/her:

5 You and a friend are going out. You have to decide whether to go by car or to walk. You ask him/her: or

6 Your friend wants you to come and see her. You don't know what time to come. You ask her:

Additional exercises 10-13 (pages 308-10)

We do not use will to say what somebody has already arranged or decided to do: Diane is working next week, (not Diane will work) O Are you going to watch anything on TV this evening? (not Will you watch) For 'is working' and 'Are you going to ... ?', see Units 19-20.

But often, when we talk about the future, we are not talking about what somebody has decided to do. For example:

Kate is doing an exam next week. Chris and Joe are talking about it.

Do you think Kate will pass the exam?

mm

[image]

f Yes, she'll pass easily. J

She'll pass does not mean 'she has decided to pass'. Joe is saying what he knows or believes will happen.

He is predicting the future.

When we predict a future happening or situation, we use will/won'

CHRIS

Some more examples:

They've been away a long time. When they return, they'll find a lot of changes here. D 'Where will you be this time next year?' Til be in Japan.' O That plate is hot. If you touch it, you'll burn yourself. O Tom won't pass the exam. He hasn't studied hard enough.

Anna looks completely different now. You won't recognise her. C When will you get your exam results?

We often use will ('11) with:

After I hope, we generally use the present (will is also possible): Z) I hope Kate passes the exam, (or I hope Kate will pass . O I hope it doesn't rain tomorrow.

Generally we use will to talk about the future, but sometimes we use will to talk about now. For example:

C Don't phone Ann now. She'll be busy. (= she'll be busy now)

I shall... / we shall...

Normally we use shall only with I and we. You can say: I shall or I will (I'll) we shall or we will (we'll) ~ I shall be late this evening, (or I will be)

We shall probably go to France in June, (or We will probably go)

In spoken English we normally use I'll and we'll: O We'll probably go to France.

The negative of shall is shall not or shan't:

O I shan't be here tomorrow, (or I won't be)

Do not use shall with he/she/it/you/they:

D She will be very angry, (not She shall be)

(Will/shall 1 -> Unit 21 I ^Will have to-> Unit31A

I will and I'm going to Unit 23 Will be doing and will have done -> Unit 24

The future -> Appendix 3 American English -> Appendix 7

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Which form of the verb is better in these sentences? The verbs are underlined .

1 Diane isn't free on Saturday. She'll wor k / She's working . (She's working is correct)

2 I'll go / I'm going to a party tomorrow night. Would you like to come too?

3 I think Amy will get / is getting the job. She has a lot of experience.

4 I can't meet you this evening. A friend of mine will come / is coming to see me.

5 a: Have you decided where to go for your holidays? b: Yes, we'll go / we're going to Italy.

6 Don't be afraid of the dog. It won't hurt / It isn't hurting you.

Put in will ('11) or won't.

1 Can you wait for me? I won't be long.

2 Don't ask Amanda for advice. She know what to do.

3 I'm glad you're coming to see us next week. It be good to see you again.

4 I'm sorry about what happened yesterday. It happen again.

5 You don't need to take an umbrella with you. I don't think it rain.

6 I've got some incredible news! You believe it.

Complete the sentences using will ('11). Choose from the following:

it / be she / come you / get you / like

people / live it / look we / meet you / p a ss

1 Don't worry about your exam. I'm sure youU p&ss

2 Why don't you try on this jacket? nice on you.

3 You must meet Daniel sometime. I think him.

4 It's raining. Don't go out. wet.

5 Do you think longer in the future?

6 Bye! I'm sure again before long.

7 I've invited Anna to the party, but I don't think

8 It takes me an hour to get to work at the moment, but when the new road is finished,

much quicker.

Write questions using do you think ... will... ? + the following:

[image]

be back cost end get married happen -Uke- rain

1 I've bought this picture for Karen. Do you thwk she'll Uke it ?

2 The weather doesn't look very good. Do you ?

3 The meeting is still going on. When do you ?

4 My car needs to be repaired. How much ?

5 Sally and David are in love. Do ?

6 I'm going out now.' 'OK. What time ?'

7 The future situation is uncertain. What ?

Where do you think you will be at these times? Write true sentences about yourself. Use: I'll be ... or I'll probably be ... or I don't know where I'll be

1 (next Monday evening at 7.45) I'll be a£ Home.

fit probably be ah home. I don't know where I'LL be.

or or

2 (at 5 o'clock tomorrow morning)

3 (at 10.30 tomorrow morning)

4 (next Saturday afternoon at 4.15)

5 (this time next year)

I will and I'm going to

Future actions

Study the difference between will and (be) going to:

Sarah is talking to Helen:

[image]

That's a great idea. We'll invite lots of people

[image]

[image]

will ('11): We use will to announce a new decision. The party is a new idea.
decision now

We'll

past

now

future

SARAH

HELEN

Later that day, Helen meets Dan:

Sarah and I have decided to have a party. We're going to invite lots of people.

[image]

V

(be) going to: We use (be) going to when we have already decided to do something. Helen had already decided to invite lots of people before she spoke to Dan.

[image]

decision before

I

We're going to

past

now

future

HELEN

DAN

Compare:

O 'Gary phoned while you were out.' 'OK. I'll call him back.'

'Gary phoned while you were out.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back.' O 'Anna is in hospital.' 'Oh really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her.'

'Anna is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening.'

Future happenings and situations (predicting the future)

We use both will and going to to predict future happenings and situations.
So you can say: O I think the weather will be nice later, or

I think the weather is going to be nice later. O Those shoes are well-made.
They'll last a long time, or

Those shoes are well-made. They're going to last a long time.

When we say something is going to happen, we know this from the situation now. What is happening now shows that something is going to happen in the future. For example: C Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain, (not It will rain)

(We can see that it is going to rain from the clouds that are in the sky now.)
O I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick, (not I think I'll be sick) (I think I'm going to be sick because I feel terrible now.) Do not use will in this type of situation.

I'm going to -* Unit 20 Will Units 21-22 The future Appendix 3

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using will ('ll) or going to.

1 a: Why are you turning on the TV?

B: I'm going to watch the news. (I / watch)

2 a: Oh, I've just realised. I haven't got any money.

b: Haven't you? Well, don't worry you some. (I / lend)

3 a: I've got a headache.

b: Have you? Wait a second and an aspirin for you. (I / get)

4 a: Why are you filling that bucket with water?

b: the car. (I / wash)

5 a: I've decided to repaint this room.

b: Oh, have you? What colour it? (you / paint)

6 a: Where are you going? Are you going shopping?

b: Yes, some things for dinner. (I / buy)

7 a: I don't know how to use the washing machine.

b: It's easy. you. (I / show)

8 a: What would you like to eat?

b: a pizza, please. (I / have)

9 a: Did you call Lisa?

b: Oh, no. I completely forgot. her now. (I / call)

10 a: Has Dan decided what to do when he leaves school?

b: Yes. Everything is planned. a holiday for a few weeks,

(he / have) Then a management training course, (he / do)

Read the situations and complete the sentences using will ('11) or going to.

1 The phone rings and you answer. Somebody wants to speak to John.

caller: Hello. Can I speak to John, please?

you: Just a moment. I'll get him. (I / get)

2 It's a nice day, so you have decided to take a walk. Just before you go,

you tell your friend. you: The weather's too nice to stay in. a walk. (I/take)

friend: Good idea! I think you. (I/join)

3 Your friend is worried because she has lost her driving licence.

you: Don't worry. I'm sure it. (you/find)

friend: I hope so.

4 There was a job advertised in the paper recently. At first you were interested, but then you decided not to apply.

friend: Have you decided what to do about that job you were interested in?

you: Yes, for it. (I / not / apply)

5 You and a friend are stuck in traffic. You have to be in a meeting in five minutes and you need at least another 20 minutes to get there.

you: The meeting begins in five minutes. . (we / be late)

6 Ann and Sam are staying at a hotel. Their room is in very bad condition, especially the ceiling. ann: The ceiling doesn't look very safe, does it?

sam: No, it looks as if (it / fall down)

7 Paul has to go to the airport to catch a plane tomorrow morning.

paul: Kate, I need somebody to take me to the airport tomorrow morning.

kate: That's no problem. you. (I / take) What time is your flight?

PAUL 10.30.

kate: OK, you up at your house at about 8 o'clock then. (I / pick)

Later that day, Joe offers to take Paul to the airport. joe: Paul, do you want me to take you to the airport?

paul: No thanks, Joe. me. (Kate/take)

Additional exercises 10-13 (pages 308-10)

Unit

24

Will be doing and will have done

Study this example situation:

These people are standing in a queue to get into the cinema.

[image]

now

Half an hour from now, the cinema will be full. Everyone will be watching the film.

[image]

half an hour from now

Three hours from now, the cinema will be empty. The film will have finished. Everyone will have gone home.

[image]

three hours from now

J

I will be doing something (future continuous) = I will be in the middle of doing it:

O This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll be lying on the beach or swimming in the sea. O You have no chance of getting the job. You'll be wasting your time if you apply for it.

Compare will be (do)ing and will (do):

O Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be having dinner. O Let's wait for Liz to arrive and then we'll have dinner.

Compare will be -ing with other continuous forms:

O At 10 o'clock yesterday, Sally was in her office. She was working, (past)
It's 10 o'clock now. She is in her office. She is working, (present) At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working.

We also use will be -ing to talk about complete actions in the future. For example:

O The government will be making a statement

about the crisis later today. O Will you be going away this summer?

Later in the programme, I'll be talking to the Minister of Education ... O Our best player is injured and won't be playing in the game on Saturday.

In these examples will be -ing is similar to (be) going to

Later in the programme I'll be talking to

name~J

We use will have (done) (future perfect) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future. For example:

O Sally always leaves for work at 8.30 in the morning. She won't be at home at 9 o'clock -she'll have gone to work.

O We're late. The film will already have started by the time we get to the cinema.

Compare will have (done) with other perfect forms:

O Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years, (presentperfect) Next year they will have been married for 25 years.

When their son was born, they had been married for three years, (pastperfect)

Will

Units 21-22 By then / by the time -* Unit 120 The future Appendix 3

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Read about Andy. Then tick (/) the sentences which are true. In each group of sentences at least one is true.

Andy goes to work every day. He leaves home at 8 o'clock and arrives at work at about 8.45. He starts work immediately and continues until 12.30 when he has lunch (which takes about half an hour). He starts work again at 1.15 and goes home at exactly 4.30. Every day he follows the same routine and tomorrow will be no exception.

[image]

At 7.45

a he'll be leaving the house b he'll have left the house c he'll be at home / d he'll be having breakfast /

[image]

At 12.45

a he'll have lunch

b he'll be having lunch

c he'll have finished his lunch

d he'll have started his lunch

[image]

At 8.15

a he'll be leaving the house b he'll have left the house c he'll have arrived at work d he'll be arriving at work

[image]

At 4 o'clock

a he'll have finished work

b he'll finish work

c he'll be working

d he won't have finished work

[image]

[image]

At 4.45

a he'll leave work b he'll be leaving work c he'll have left work d he'll have arrived home

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, will be (do)ing or will have (done).

1 Don't phone between 7 and 8. WeU be having dinner then, (we / have)

2 Phone me after 8 o'clock. dinner by then, (we/finish)

3 Tomorrow afternoon we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4.30.
So at 4 o'clock,

tennis, (we / play)

4 a: Can we meet tomorrow?

b: Yes, but not in the afternoon . (I/work)

5 B has to go to a meeting which begins at 10 o'clock. It will last about an hour. a: Will you be free at 11.30?

b: Yes, by then, (the meeting / end)

6 Ben is on holiday and he is spending his money very quickly. If he continues like this,

all his money before the end of his holiday, (he / spend)

7 Do you think the same job in ten years'time? (you / still/do)

8 Lisa is from New Zealand. She is travelling around Europe at the moment. So far she has

travelled about 1,000 miles. By the end of the trip, more

than 3,000 miles, (she / travel)

9 If you need to contact me, at the Lion Hotel until Friday.

(I / stay)

10 a: Laura tomorrow? (you / see)

b: Yes, probably. Why?

a: I borrowed this DVD from her. Can you give it back to her?

Additional exercises 12-13 (pages 309-10)

Unit

25 .

When I do / When I've done When and if

Study this example:

Yes, I'll phone you when I get
home from work.

[image]

'I'll phone you when I get home' is a sentence with two parts:

the main part I'll phone you and the when-part. when I get home

The time in the sentence is future (tomorrow), but we use a present tense (I get) in the when-part of the sentence.

We do not use will in the when-part of the sentence.

Some more examples:

O We'll go out when it stops raining, (not when it will stop)

O When you are in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be)

O (said to a child) What do you want to be when you grow up? (not will grow)

The same thing happens after while / before / after / as soon as / until or till:

O What are you going to do while I'm away? (not while I will be)

O I'll probably go back home on Sunday. Before I go, I'd like to visit the museum.

O Wait here until (or till) I come back.

You can also use the present perfect (have done) after when / after / until / as soon as: O Can I borrow that book when you've finished with it? O Don't say anything while Ian is here. Wait until he has gone.

If you use the present perfect, one thing must be complete before the other (so the two things do not happen together):

O When I've phoned Kate, we can have dinner.

(= First I'll phone Kate and after that we can have dinner.)

Do not use the present perfect if the two things happen together:

O When I phone Kate, I'll ask her about the party, (not When I've phoned)

It is often possible to use either the present simple or the present perfect:

O I'll come as soon as I finish. or I'll come as soon as I've finished. O You'll feel better after you have or You'll feel better after you've had

something to eat. something to eat.

After if, we normally use the present simple (if I do / if I see etc.) for the future: O It's raining hard. We'll get wet if we go out. (not if we will go) O I'll be angry if it happens again, (not if it will happen) □ Hurry up! If we don't hurry, we'll be late.

When and if

We use when for things which are sure to happen:

□ I'm going out later, (for sure) When I go out, I'll get some bread.

We use if (not when) for things that will possibly happen:

O I might go out later, (it's possible) If I go out, I'll get some bread.

If it is raining this evening, I won't go out. (nor When it is raining) O Don't worry if I'm late tonight, (not when I'm late)

If they don't come soon, I'm not going to wait, (nor When they don't come)

If-> Units 38-40

Even if / even when Unit 112D

Unless-* Unit 115

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets. All the sentences are about the future. Use will/won't or the present simple (I see / he plays / it is etc.).

1 When you are, (you / be) in London again, come and see us.

2 I want to see Sophie before (she / go) out.

3 Call me when (you / know) what time you're going to get here.

4 I'm going out now. (you / be) here when

(I / get) back?

5 I think everything will be fine, but if (there / be) any problems,

(I / call) you, OK?

6 We must do something soon before (it / be) too late.

7 Anna looks very different now. When (you / see) her again,

(you / not / recognise) her.

8 Steve has applied for the job, but he isn't really qualified for it. (I / be)

surprised if (he / get) it.

9 I'm going to be away for a few days. If (you / need) to contact me while (I / be) away, here's my mobile number.

10 I don't want to go without you (I / wait) for you until

(you / be) ready.

Make one sentence from two.

1 It will stop raining soon. Then we'll go out.

WeU go out when it stops raining.

2 I'll find somewhere to live. Then I'll give you my address.

I when

3 I'll do the shopping. Then I'll come straight back home.

after

4 It's going to get dark. Let's go home before that. before

5 She must apologise to me first. I won't speak to her until then. until

[image]

Read the situations and complete the sentences.

1 A friend of yours is going on holiday. You want to know what she is going to do. You ask: What are you going to do when you are, on holiday

2 A friend is visiting you. She has to go soon, but you'd like to show her some pictures. You ask: Do you have time to look at some pictures before

3 You want to sell your car. Mark is interested in buying it, but he hasn't decided yet. You ask: Can you let me know as soon as

4 Your friends are going to Hong Kong soon. You want to know where they're going to stay. You ask: Where are you going to stay when

5 The traffic is very bad in your town, but they are going to build a new road.

You say: I think things will be better when they

[image]

Put in when or if.

1 Don't worry... if I'm late tonight.

2 Be careful. You'll hurt yourself you fall.

3 I'm going to Rome next week. I'm there, I hope to visit a friend of mine.

4 I'm going shopping. you want anything, I can get it for you.

5 I don't see you tomorrow, when will I see you again?

6 I'm going away for a few days. I'll call you I get back.

7 I hope Sarah can come to the party. It will be a shame she can't come.

8 We can eat at home or, you prefer, we can go to a restaurant.

-> Additional exercises 12-15 (pages 309-11), 32 (page 321)

Can, could and (be) able to

We use can to say that something is possible or allowed, or that somebody has the ability to do something. We use can + infinitive (can do / can see etc.):

O We can see the lake from our hotel.

O 'I don't have a pen.' 'You can use mine.'

C Can you speak any foreign languages?

O I can come and see you tomorrow if you like. The word 'dream' can be a noun or a verb.

The negative is can't (= cannot):

I'm afraid I can't come to the party on Friday.

You can say that somebody is able to do something, but can is more usual: We are able to see the lake from our hotel.

But can has only two forms: can (present) and could (past). So sometimes it is necessary to use (be) able to. Compare:

I can't sleep.

Tom can come tomorrow. Maria can speak French, Spanish and English.

I haven't been able to sleep recently. Tom might be able to come tomorrow.
Applicants for the job must be able to
speak two foreign languages.

[image]

[image]

52

Could

Sometimes could is the past of can. We use could especially with:

see hear smell taste feel remember understand

O We had a lovely room in the hotel. We could see the lake. C As soon as I walked into the room, I could smell gas.

I was sitting at the back of the theatre and couldn't hear very well.

We also use could to say that somebody had the general ability or permission to do something: My grandfather could speak five languages. O We were totally free. We could do what we wanted. (= we were allowed to do)

Could and was able to

We use could for general ability. But if you want to say that somebody did something in a specific situation, use was/were able to or managed to (not could):

The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody was able to

escape / managed to escape, (not could escape)

We didn't know where David was, but we managed to find / were able to find him in the

end. (not could find)

Compare:

Jack was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He could beat anybody. (= he had the general ability to beat anybody) but Jack and Andy played a match yesterday. Andy played well, but Jack managed to beat him. (= he managed to beat him this time)

The negative couldn't (could not) is possible in all situations: C My grandfather couldn't swim.

O We looked for David everywhere, but we couldn't find him. O Andy played well, but he couldn't beat Jack.

Could (do) and could have (done) H> Unit 27 Can/could you ...?-> Unit 37

Must and can't-* Unit 28

j

Exercises

Unit

26

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using can or (be) able to. Use can if possible; otherwise use (be) able to.

1 Gary has travelled a lot. He can speak five languages.

2 I haven't been .able to sleep very well recently.

3 Nicole drive, but she doesn't have a car.

4 I used to stand on my head, but I can't do it any more.

5 I can't understand Mark. I've never understand him.

6 I can't see you on Friday, but I meet you on Saturday morning.

7 Ask Katherine about your problem. She might help you.

Write sentences about yourself using the ideas in brackets.

1 (something you used to be able to do) I used to be able to sing well.

2 (something you used to be able to do) I used

3 (something you would like to be able to do)

I'd

4 (something you have never been able to do) I've

Complete the sentences with can/can't/could/couldn't + the following:

eat hear run sleep wait

1 I'm afraid I can't come to your party next week.

2 When Dan was 16, he 100 metres in 11 seconds.

3 'Are you in a hurry?' 'No, I've got plenty of time. I

4 I was feeling sick yesterday. I anything.

5 Can you speak a little louder? I you very well.

6 'You look tired.' 'Yes, I last night.'

Complete the answers to the questions with was/were able to

1 a: Did everybody escape from the fire?

b: Yes, although the fire spread quickly, everybody MM <^>^ to escape

2 a: Did you finish your work this afternoon? b: Yes, there was nobody to disturb me, so I

3 a: Did you have problems finding our house?

b: Not really. Your directions were good and we

4 a: Did the thief get away?

b: Yes. No-one realised what was happening and the thief

Complete the sentences using could, couldn't or managed to.

1 My grandfather travelled a lot. He could speak five languages.

2 I looked everywhere for the book, but I couldn't find it.

3 They didn't want to come with us at first, but we managed to persuade them.

4 Laura had hurt her leg and walk very well.

5 I ran my first marathon recently. It was very hard, but I finish.

6 I looked very carefully and I see somebody in the distance.

7 I wanted to buy some tomatoes. The first shop I went to didn't have any, but I

get some in the next shop.

8 My grandmother loved music. She play the piano very well.

9 A girl fell into the river, but fortunately we pull her out. 10 I had forgotten to bring my camera, so I take any pictures.

27 Could (do) and could have (done)

We use could in a number of ways. Sometimes could is the past of can (see Unit 26): O Listen. I can hear something, (now) O I listened. I could hear something, (past)

But could is not only used in this way. We also use could to talk about possible actions now or in the future (especially to make suggestions). For example:

What shall we do tonight?

a: What shall we do tonight? b: We could go to the cinema.

O a: When you go to Paris next month, you could stay with Sarah. b: Yes, I suppose I could.

Can is also possible in these sentences ('We can go to the cinema.' etc.).
Could is less sure than can.

[image]

www—

We also use could (not can) for actions that are not realistic. For example:
O I'm so tired, I could sleep for a week, (not I can sleep for a week)

Compare can and could:

O I can stay with Sarah when I go to Paris, (realistic)

O Maybe I could stay with Sarah when I go to Paris, (possible, but less sure)

O This is a wonderful place. I could stay here for ever, (unrealistic)

We also use could (not can) to say that something (a situation or a happening) is possible now or in

the future. The meaning is similar to might or may (see Unit 29):

O The story could be true, but I don't think it is. (not can be true)

O I don't know what time Lisa is coming. She could get here at any time.

Compare can and could:

O The weather can change very quickly in the mountains, (in general)

O The weather is nice now, but it could change, (the weather now, not in general)

We use could have (done) to talk about the past. Compare: O I'm so tired, I could sleep for a week, (now)

I was so tired, I could have slept for a week, (past) O The situation is bad, but it could be worse, (now)

The situation was bad, but it could have been worse, (past)

Something could have happened = it was possible but did not happen:

O Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You could have stayed with Sarah.

(you didn't stay with her) O David was lucky. He could have hurt himself when he fell, but he's OK.

We use couldn't to say that something would not be possible:

O I couldn't live in a big city. I'd hate it. (= it wouldn't be possible for me)

O Everything is fine right now. Things couldn't be better.

For the past we use couldn't have (done):

□ We had a really good holiday. It couldn't have been better.

O The trip was cancelled last week. Paul couldn't have gone anyway because he was ill. (= it would not have been possible for him to go)

Couldn't have (done) Unit 28B Could and might -¥ Unit 29C Could I/you ...
? Unit 37 Could with if -> Units 38C, 39E, 40D Modal verbs (can/could/
will/would etc.) -> Appendix 4

Exercises

Unit

27

[image]

Answer the questions with a suggestion. Use could.

S\

1 2 3 4 5

Where shall we go for our holidays? What shall we have for dinner tonight?

When shall I phone Vicky? What shall I give Ann for her birthday? Where shall we hang this picture?

[image]

(to Scotland) We- could go to Scotland (fish) We (now) You

(a book)

(in the kitchen)

[image]

OK (could go is also possible)

[image]

out with us.

for it.

In some of these sentences, you need could (not can). Change the sentences where necessary.

1 The story can be true, but I don't think it is. could be true

2 It's a nice day. We can go for a walk.

3 I'm so angry with him. I can kill him!

4 If you're hungry, we can have dinner now.

5 It's so nice here. I can stay here all day, but unfortunately I have to go.

6 a: Where's my bag. Have you seen it? b: No, but it can be in the car.

7 Peter is a keen musician. He plays the flute and he can also play the piano.

8 a: I need to borrow a camera. b: You can borrow mine.

9 Be careful climbing that tree. You can fall.

Complete the sentences. Use could or could have + a suitable verb.

1 a: What shall we do this evening? b: I don't mind. We could go to the cinema.

2 a: I spent a very boring evening at home yesterday. b: Why did you stay at home? You

3 a: Have you seen this job advertised in the paper? You b: What sort of job? Show me the advertisement.

4 a: How was your exam? Was it difficult?

b: It wasn't so bad. It was.

5 a: I got very wet walking home in the rain last night.

b: Why did you walk? You took a taxi.

6 a: Where shall we meet tomorrow?

b: Well, I'll go to your house if you like.

Complete the sentences. Use couldn't or couldn't have + these verbs (in the correct form): -be- be come find get lie wear

1 I couldn't live in a big city. I'd hate it.

2 We had a really good holiday. It couldn't have been better.

3 I put that hat. I'd look silly and people would laugh at me.

4 We managed to find the restaurant you recommended, but we did it without the map that you drew for us.

5 Paul has to get up at 4 o'clock every morning. I don't know how he does it. I

get up at that time every day.

6 The staff at the hotel were really nice when we stayed there last summer.

They more helpful.

7 a: I tried to phone you last week. We had a party and I wanted to invite you.

b: That was nice of you, but I anyway. I was away all last week.

-> Additional exercises 16-18 (pages 311-13)

Unit

28

Must and can't

Study this example:

f My house is very near the motorway. J fit must be very noisy. J

[image]

[image]

You can use must to say that you believe something is certain:

You've been travelling all day. You must be tired. (Travelling is tiring and you've been travelling all day, so you must be tired.)

'Joe is a hard worker.' 'Joe? You must be joking. He doesn't do anything.' O Louise must get very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day. I'm sure Sally gave me her address. I must have it somewhere.

You can use can't to say that you believe something is not possible:

You've just had lunch. You can't be hungry already. (People are not normally hungry just after eating a meal. You've just eaten, so you can't be hungry.) O They haven't lived here for very long. They can't know many people.

Study the structure:

I/you/he (etc.)

must can't

be (tired / hungry / at work etc.) be (doing / going / joking etc.) do / get / know / have etc.

For the past we use must have (done) and can't have (done).

Study this example:

There's nobody at home. They must have gone out.

[image]

Martin and Lucy are standing at the door of their friends' house. They have rung the doorbell twice, but nobody has answered. Lucy says:

They must have gone out.

'We used to live very near the motorway.' 'Did you? It must have been noisy.' 'I've lost one of my gloves.' 'You must have dropped it somewhere.'
C Sarah hasn't contacted me. She can't have got my message.

Tom walked into a wall. He can't have been looking where he was going.

Study the structure:

You can use couldn't have instead of can't have: C Sarah couldn't have got my message.

Tom couldn't have been looking where he was going.

C Can't ('I can't swim' etc.) -> Unit 26 Must ('I must go' etc.) -> Units 31-32

y^Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) -> Appendix 4 American English -> Appendix 7

Exercises

Unit

[image]

Put in must or can't.

1 You've been travelling all day. You ~~must~~ be tired.

2 That restaurant be very good. It's always full of people.

3 That restaurant be very good. It's always empty.

4 I'm sure I gave you the key. You have it. Have you looked in your bag?

5 I often see that woman walking along this street. She live near here.

6 It rained every day during their holiday, so they have had a very nice time.

7 Congratulations on passing your exam. You be very pleased.

8 You got here very quickly. You have walked very fast.

9 Bill and Sue always stay at luxury hotels, so they be short of money.

Complete each sentence with a verb (one or two words).

1 I've lost one of my gloves. I must have dropped it somewhere.

2 Their house is very near the motorway. It must be very noisy.

3 Sarah knows a lot about films. She must go to the cinema a lot.

4 I left my bike outside the house last night and now it's gone. Somebody must have taken it.

5 'How old is Ted?' 'He's older than me. He must be at least 40.'

6 I didn't hear the phone ring. I must have been asleep.

7 a: You're going on holiday soon. You must hurry to it.

b: Yes, it will be really good to get away.

8 The police have closed the road, so we have to go a different way. There

must

an accident.

9 I'm sure you know this song. You must it before.

10 There is a man walking behind us. He has been walking behind us for the last 20 minutes. He must us.

Read the situations and use the words in brackets to write sentences with must have and can't have.

1 We went to their house and rang the doorbell, but nobody answered, (they / go out)

They must have gone out.

2 Sarah hasn't contacted me. (she / get / my message)

She cWt have got mtj message.

3 The jacket you bought is very good quality, (it / very expensive)

4 I haven't seen our neighbours for ages, (they / go away)

5 I can't find my umbrella. (I / leave / it in the restaurant last night)

6 Amy was in a very difficult situation when she lost her job. (it / easy for her)

7 There was a man standing outside the cafe, (he / wait / for somebody)

8 Rachel did the opposite of what I asked her to do. (she / understand / what I said)

9 When I got back to my car, the door was unlocked. (I / forget / to lock it)

10 I was woken up in the night by the noise next door, (my neighbours / have / a party)

11 The light was red, but the car didn't stop, (the driver / see / the red light)

-¥ Additional exercises 16-18 (pages 311-13)

29 May and might 1

Study this example situation: You are looking for Ben. Nobody is sure where he is, but you get some suggestions.

[image]

_ ^ /JHe may be in his office.^ (= perhaps he is in his office) _ ^JHe might be having lunch.^ (= perhaps he is having lunch)

I

^/^Ask Ann. She might know.^ (= perhaps she knows)

We use may or might to say that something is possible. Usually you can use may or might, so you

can say:

C It may be true, or It might be true. (= perhaps it is true) O She might know, or She may know.

The negative forms are may not and might not (or mightn't):

O It may not be true. (= perhaps it isn't true)

O She might not work here any more. (= perhaps she doesn't work here)
Study the structure:

For the past we use may have (done) or might have (done): O a: I wonder why Kate didn't answer her phone.

b: She may have been asleep. (= perhaps she was asleep) O a: I can't find my phone anywhere.

b: You might have left it at work. (= perhaps you left it at work)

a: Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?

b: She might not have known about it. (= perhaps she didn't know) O a: I wonder why David was in such a bad mood yesterday.

b: He may not have been feeling well. (= perhaps he wasn't feeling well)

Study the structure:

Could is similar to may and might:

O It's a strange story, but it could be true. (= it is possible that it's true)

You could have left your phone at work. (= it's possible that you left it there)

But couldn't (negative) is different from may not and might not. Compare:

O Sarah couldn't have got my message. Otherwise she would have replied.
(= it is not possible that she got my message)

I wonder why Sarah hasn't replied to my message. I suppose she might not have got it. (= it's possible that she didn't get it - so perhaps she did, perhaps she didn't)

Could -* Unit 27 May/might 2 -> Unit 30 May I ... ? -> Unit 37C

Might with if Units 30B, 38C, 40D Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) -> Appendix 4

Exercises

Unit

29

[image]

Write these sentences in a different way using might.

1 Perhaps Helen is in her office. She might be w her office.

2 Perhaps Helen is busy.

3 Perhaps she is working.

4 Perhaps she wants to be alone.

5 Perhaps she was ill yesterday.

6 Perhaps she went home early.

7 Perhaps she had to go home early.

8 Perhaps she was working yesterday.

In sentences 9-11 use might not.

9 Perhaps she doesn't want to see me.

10 Perhaps she isn't working today.

11 Perhaps she wasn't feeling well yesterday.

[image]

[image]

Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form.

1 'Where's Ben?' 'I'm not sure. He might be having lunch.'

2 'Who is that man with Anna?' 'I'm not sure. It might be her brother.'

3 a: Who was the man we saw with Anna yesterday?

b: I'm not sure. It may be her brother.

4 a: What are those people doing by the side of the road?

b: I don't know. I suppose they might be on a bus.

5 'Is Sarah here?' 'I can't see her. She may not yet.'

Read the situation and make sentences from the words in brackets. Use might.

1 I can't find Jeff anywhere. I wonder where he is.

a (he / go / shopping) He might have gone shopping.

b (he / play / tennis) He might be playing tennis.

2 I'm looking for Sophie. Do you know where she is? a (she/watch/TV)

b (she / go / out)

3 I can't find my umbrella. Have you seen it?

a (it / be / in the car)

b (you / leave / in the restaurant)

4 Why didn't Dan answer the doorbell? I'm sure he was at home at the time.

a (he / go / to bed early)

b (he / not / hear / the doorbell)

c (he / be / in the shower)

[image]

Complete the sentences using might not have ... or couldn't have

1 a: Do you think Sarah got the message I sent her?

b: No, she would have replied. She couldn't have got it

2 a: I was surprised Amy wasn't at the meeting. Perhaps she didn't know about it. b: That's possible. ... She might not have known about it

3 a: I wonder why they haven't replied to the email I sent. Do you think they received it?

b: Maybe not. They

4 a: I wonder how the fire started. Was it an accident?

b: No, the police say it

5 a: Mike says he needs to see you. He tried to find you yesterday.

b: Well, he very hard. I was in my office all day.

6 a: The man you spoke to - are you sure he was American?

b: No, I'm not sure. He

-* Additional exercises 16-18 (pages 311-13)

30 May and might 2

We use may and might to talk about possible actions or happenings in the future:

O I haven't decided yet where to go on holiday. I may go to Ireland. (= perhaps I will go there) O Take an umbrella with you. It might rain later. (= perhaps it will rain) O The bus isn't always on time. We might have to wait a few minutes. (= perhaps we will have to wait)

The negative forms are may not and might not (mightn't):

O Amy may not go out tonight. She isn't feeling well. (= perhaps she will not go out) O There might not be enough time to discuss everything at the meeting. (= perhaps there will not be enough time)

Compare will and may/might:

O I'll be late this evening, (for sure)

O I may/might be late this evening, (possible)

Usually you can use may or might. So you can say:

~ I may go to Ireland, or I might go to Ireland. O Jane might be able to help you. or Jane may be able to help you.

But we use only might (not may) when the situation is not real:

G If they paid me better, I might work harder, (not I may work) The situation here is not real because they do not pay me well, so I'm not going to work harder.

There is a continuous form: may/might be -ing. Compare this with will be -ing: G Don't phone at 8.30. I'll be watching the football on television. O Don't phone at 8.30. I might be watching (or I may be watching) the football on TV. (= perhaps I'll be watching it)

We also use may/might be -ing for possible plans. Compare: O I'm going to Ireland in July, (for sure)

Q I might be going (or I may be going) to Ireland soon, (possible) But you can also say I might go / I may go with little difference in meaning.

Might as well

Helen and Clare have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.

[image]

O a: What time are you going out?

b: Well, I'm ready, so I might as well go now.

Buses are so expensive these days, you might as well get a taxi. (= taxis are as good, no more expensive)

f Will be -ing -* Unit 24 May/might 1 Unit 29 May !..?-> Unit 37C 1
^Might with if-» Units 38C, 4QD

Exercises

Unit

30

[image]

[image]

Write sentences with might.

1 Where are you going for your holidays? (to Ireland???) I haven't decided yet I might go to Ireland.

2 What sort of car are you going to buy? (a Honda???) I'm not sure yet. I

3 When is Tom coming to see us? (on Saturday???) He hasn't said yet.

4 Where are you going to hang that picture? (in the dining room???) I haven't made up my mind yet.

5 What is Tanya going to do when she leaves school? (go to university???)
She's still thinking about it.

Complete the sentences using might + the following: bite break need r3in
slip wake

1 Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It might ram later.

2 Don't make too much noise. You the baby.

3 Be careful of that dog. It you.

4 Don't throw that letter away. We it later.

5 Be careful. The footpath is very icy. You

6 Don't let the children play in this room. They something.

Complete the sentences. Use might be able to or might have to + one of the
following: fix help leave meet sell work

1 Tell me about your problem. I might be able to help you.

2 I'm not free this evening, but I you tomorrow.

3 I don't know if I'll be free on Sunday. I

4 I can come to the meeting, but I before the end.

5 I'm short of money. I want to keep my car, but I it.

6 a: There's something wrong with my bike. b: Let me have a look. I it.

} Write sentences with might not.

1 I'm not sure that Liz will come to the party. Liz might not come to the
party.

2 I'm not sure that I'll go out this evening. I

3 I'm not sure that we'll be able to get tickets for the game. We

4 I'm not sure that Sam will be able to go out with us tonight.

[image]

[image]

[image]

Read the situations and make sentences with might as well.

1 You and a friend have just missed the bus. The buses run every hour.

You say: We'll have to wait an hour for the next bus. We might as well walk.

2 You've been invited to a party. You're not very excited about it, but you decide to go.

You say: I'm not doing anything else, so I to the party.

3 You've just painted your kitchen. You still have a lot of paint, so why not paint the bathroom too? You say: We There's plenty of paint left.

4 You and a friend are at home. You're bored. There's a film on TV starting in a few minutes.

You say: There's nothing else to do.

Additional exercises 16-18 (pages 311-13)

[image]

I have to do something = it is necessary to do it, I am obliged to do it: * .

You can't turn right here. You have to turn left. (you have to tu r n left here.)

O I have to wear glasses for reading.

Robert can't come out with us this evening.

He has to work late. G Last week Tina broke her arm and had to go to hospital.

I haven't had to go to the doctor for ages.

We use do/does/did in questions and negative sentences (for the present and past simple): What do I have to do to get a new driving licence? (not What have I to do?) Karen doesn't have to work Saturdays, (not Karen hasn't to) Why did you have to leave early?

You can say I'll have to ... »I'm going to have to ... and I might /I may have to ... They can't fix my computer, so I'll have to buy a new one. or I'm going to have to buy a new one.

Tom might have to work late tomorrow, or Tom may have to work ...

(= it's possible that he will have to)

Must is similar to have to:

O It's later than I thought. I must go. or I have to go.

You can use must or have to to give your own opinion (for example, to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

O I haven't spoken to Sue for ages. I must phone her. /I have to phone her.

(= I say this is necessary) D Mark is a really nice person. You must meet him. / You have to meet him. (I recommend this)

We use have to (not usually must) to say what someone is obliged to do. The speaker is not giving his/her own opinion:

O I have to work from 8.30 to 5.30 every day. (a fact, not an opinion)

O Jane has to travel a lot for her work.

But must is used in written rules and instructions:

O Applications for the job must be received by 18 May.

O (exam instruction) Answer all the questions. You must write your answers in ink.

You cannot use must to talk about the past:

O We didn't have much time. We had to hurry, (not we must hurry)

Mustn't and don't have to are completely different:

You mustn't do something = it is necessary

that you do not do it (so don't do it):

You must keep this a secret. You mustn't tell anyone. (= don't tell anyone)

D I promised I would be on time. I mustn't be late. (= I must be on time)

You don't have to do something = you don't need to do it (but you can if you want):

You don't have to tell Tom what

happened. I can tell him myself.

I don't have to be at the meeting, but

I think I'll go anyway.

You can use have got to instead of have to. So you can say:

O I've got to work tomorrow, or I have to work tomorrow. When has Helen got to go? or When does Helen have to go?

Must ('You must be tired') -> Unit 28 Must/mustn't/needn't -> Unit 32 J

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using have to / has to / had to.

1 Bill starts work at 5 a.m. He has to get up at four, (he/get up)

2 'I broke my arm last week.' 'Oxi you have to go to hospital?' (you/go)

3 There was a lot of noise from the street. the window, (we / close)

4 Karen can't stay for the whole meeting early, (she / leave)

5 How old to drive in your country? (you / be)

6 I don't have much time. soon. (I /go)

7 How is Paul enjoying his new job? a lot? (he/travel)

8 I'm afraid I can't stay long. 'What time ?' (you/go)

9 'The bus was late again.' 'How long ?' (you/wait)

10 There was nobody to help me. I everything by myself. (I/do)

Complete the sentences using have to + the verbs in the list. Some sentences are positive (I have to ... etc.) and some are negative (I don't have to ... etc.):

ask do drive go to up go make make pay show

1 I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.

2 Steve didn't know how to turn off the computer, so I had to show him.

3 Excuse me a moment - I have a phone call. I won't be long.

4 I'm not too busy. I have a few things to do, but I do them now.

5 I couldn't find the street I wanted. I asked somebody for directions.

6 The car park is free. You can park your car there.

7 A man was injured in the accident, but he went to hospital because it wasn't serious.

8 Jane has a senior position in the company. She makes important decisions.

9 When Patrick starts his new job next month, he has to travel 50 miles to work every day.

In some of these sentences, must is wrong or unnatural. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 It's later than I thought. I must go. OK (have to is also correct)

2 I must work every day from 8.30 to 5.30. I must work

3 You must come and see us again soon.

4 Tom can't meet us tomorrow. He must work.

5 I must work late yesterday evening.

6 I must get up early tomorrow. I have a lot to do.

7 Julia wears glasses. She must wear glasses

since she was very young.

[image]

Complete the sentences with mustn't or don't/doesn't have to.

1 I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You mustn't tell anyone.

2 Richard doesn't have to wear a suit to work, but he usually does.

3 I can sleep late tomorrow morning because I go to work.

4 Whatever you do, you touch that switch. It's very dangerous.

5 There's a lift in the building, so we climb the stairs.

6 You forget what I told you. It's very important.

7 Silvia get up early, but she usually does.

8 Don't make so much noise. We wake the children.

9 I eat too much. I'm supposed to be on a diet. 10 You be a good player to enjoy a game of tennis.

Unit

-> Additional exercise 16 (page 311)

32 Must mustn't needn't

w \

Must and mustn't

You must do something = it is necessary that you do it:

O Don't tell anybody what I said. You must keep it a secret. C We haven't got much time. We must hurry.

You mustn't do something = it is necessary that you do not do it (so don't do it): O You must keep it a secret. You mustn't tell anyone. (= don't tell anyone) O We must be very quiet. We mustn't make any noise.

Needn't and don't need to

You needn't do something = it's not necessary to do it (but you can if you like):

We've got plenty of time. We needn't hurry. (= it is not necessary to hurry)

Joe can stay here. He needn't come with us. (= it is not necessary for him to come)

You can also use don't/doesn't need to: We don't need to hurry.

Remember that we say don't need to do / doesn't need to do, but needn't do (without to).

Needn't have (done) Study this example situation:

[image]

Paul and Sue decided to go to a restaurant. But the restaurant was almost empty.

They reserved a table. So they needn't have reserved a table.

They needn't have reserved a table. = They reserved a table, but this was not necessary.

Compare needn't (do) and needn't have (done):

Q Everything will be OK. You needn't worry, (it is not necessary)

O Everything was OK. You needn't have worried, (you worried, but it was not necessary) Needn't have (done) and didn't need to (do)

He needn't have done something = he did it, but now we know that it was not necessary:

Why did he get up at 5 o'clock? He needn't have got up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.

He didn't need to do something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn't matter whether he did it or not:

O He didn't need to get up early, so he didn't.

□ He didn't need to get up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did. He didn't have to ... is also possible in these examples.

Must ('You must be tired') -> Unit 28 Have to and must -4 Unit 31

Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) -¥ Appendix 4 American English •
+ Appendix 7

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Which is correct?

1 We haven't got much time. We must / mustn't hurry, (must is correct)

2 We've got plenty of time. We mustn't / don't need to hurry.

3 I have to talk to Gary. I must / mustn't remember to call him.

4 I have to talk to Gary. I mustn't / needn't forget to call him.

5 There's plenty of time for you to make up your mind. You mustn't / don't need to decide now.

6 We needn't / mustn't wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.

7 This is a valuable book. You must / needn't take good care of it and you mustn't / don't need to lose it.

8 a: What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?

b: Well, it mustn't / needn't be big - that's not so important. But it must / mustn't have a nice garden - that's essential.

Complete the sentences. Use needn't + one of these verbs: ask come explain leave walk

1 We've got plenty of time. We needn't Leave yet.

2 I can manage the shopping alone. You with me.

3 We all the way home. We can get a taxi.

4 Just help yourself if you'd like more to eat. You first.

5 I understand the situation perfectly. You further.

Write two sentences for each situation. Use needn't have in the first sentence and could have in the second (as in the example). For could have, see Unit 27.

1 Why did you rush? Why didn't you take your time?

You needn't have rushed. You could h&ve taken your time.

2 Why did you walk home? Why didn't you take a taxi?

3 Why did you stay at a hotel? Why didn't you stay with us?

4 Why did she phone me in the middle of the night? Why didn't she wait until the morning?

5 Why did you shout at me? Why weren't you more patient?

6 Why did you leave without saying anything? Why didn't you say goodbye to me?

[image]

Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We have plenty of time. We don't need hurry . We don't need to hurry

2 You must keep it a secret. You mustn't tell anybody else. OK

3 I'll be all right. You needn't to worry about me.

4 You mustn't wait for me. You go on and I'll join you later

5 You don't need to keep these emails. You can delete them

6 I needn't have gone out, so I stayed at home.

7 I needn't have bought eggs. We had some already.

-> Additional exercises 16-17 (pages 311-12)

You should do something = it is a good thing to do or the right thing to do.

You can use should to give advice or to give an opinion:

You look tired. You should go to bed.

C The government should do more to improve education.

O 'Should we invite Stephanie to the party?' 'Yes, I think we should.'

We often use should with I think /I don't think / Do you think ... ?: O I think the government should do more to improve education. O I don't think you should work so hard.

□ 'Do you think I should apply for this job?' Yes, I think you should.'

You shouldn't do something = it isn't a good thing to do:

O You shouldn't believe everything you read in the newspapers.

Should is not as strong as must or have to:

O You should apologise. (= it would be a good thing to do)

O You must apologise. / You have to apologise. (= you have no alternative)

You can use should when something is not right or what you expect:

Where's Tina? She should be here by now. (= she isn't here yet, and this is not normal) O The price on this packet is wrong. It should be £2.50, not £3.50.

O That man on the motorbike should be wearing a helmet.

We also use should to say that we expect something to happen:

Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she should pass. (= I expect her to pass)

There are plenty of hotels in the town. It shouldn't be hard to find a place to stay.

(= I don't expect it to be hard)

[image]

He should be wearing
a helmet.

You should have done something = you didn't do it, but it would have been the right thing to do: O You missed a great party last night. You should have come. Why didn't you?

(= you didn't come, but it would have been good to come) O I wonder why they're so late. They should have got here long ago.

You shouldn't have done something = you did it, but it was the wrong thing to do: O I'm feeling sick. I shouldn't have eaten so much. (= I ate too much) O She shouldn't have been listening to our conversation. It was private. (= she was listening)

Compare should (do) and should have (done): O You look tired. You

should go to bed now.

O You went to bed very late last night. You should have gone to bed earlier.

Ought to ...

You can use ought to instead of should in the sentences on this page. We say 'ought to do' (with to) O Do you think I ought to apply for this job? (= Do you think I should apply ... ?) O Jack ought not to go to bed so late. (= Jack shouldn't go ...)

It was a great party last night. You ought to have come. O Helen has been studying hard for the exam, so she ought to pass.

Should 2 -> Unit 34 Should and had better -+ Unit 35B Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) -> Appendix 4

Exercises

[image]

[image]

For each situation, write a sentence with should or shouldn't + one of the following:

go away for a few days put some pictures on the walls

go to bed so late look for another job take a photo use her car so much

1 Anna needs a change.

2 Your salary is very low.

3 Jack always finds it hard to get up.

4 What a beautiful view!

5 Sue drives everywhere. She never walks.

6 Dan's room isn't very interesting.

She should go away -for a- few days You

He

You

She

[image]

Read the situations and write sentences with I think / I don't think ... should
....

1 Joe and Catherine are planning to get married. You think it's a bad idea.

I don't think they should get married.

2 Jane has a bad cold, but plans to go out tonight. You don't think this is a good idea. You say to her:

3 Peter needs a job. He's just seen an advert for a job which you think would be ideal for him, but he's not sure whether to apply or not. You say to him:

4 The government wants to increase taxes, but you don't think this is a good idea.

[image]

Complete the sentences with should (have) + the verb in brackets.

1 Helen should pass the exam. She's been studying very hard, (pass)

2 You missed a great party last night You should have come . (come)

3 We don't see you enough. You and see us more often, (come)

4 I'm in a difficult position. What do you think I now? (do)

5 I'm sorry that I didn't take your advice. I what you said, (do)

6 We lost the game yesterday, but we . We were the better team, (win)

7 Tanya has a tennis match against Jane tomorrow. Jane -she's much better than Tanya, (win)

8 'Is Joe here yet?' 'Not yet, but he here soon.' (be)

9 We went the wrong way and got lost. We right, not left, (turn)

Read the situations and write sentences with should/shouldn't. Some of the sentences are past and some are present.

1 I'm feeling sick. I ate too much. ' shouldn't have eaten so much.

2 That man on the motorbike isn't wearing a helmet. That's dangerous. He should be wearing a helmet.

3 When we got to the restaurant, there were no free tables. We hadn't reserved one. We

4 The notice says that the shop is open every day from 8.30. It is 9 o'clock now, but the shop isn't open yet

5 The speed limit is 30 miles an hour, but Kate is doing 50. She

6 Laura told me her address, but I didn't write it down. Now I can't remember the house number.

I

7 I was driving behind another car. Suddenly, the driver in front stopped without warning and I drove into the back of his car. It wasn't my fault.

The driver in front

8 I walked into a wall. I was looking behind me. I wasn't looking where I was going.

-* Additional exercises 16-18 (pages 311-13)

You can use should after:

insist recommend suggest demand propose O I insisted that he should apologise.

O Doctors recommend that everyone should eat plenty of fruit. O What do you suggest we should do?

O Many people are demanding that something should be done about the problem.

a/50

It's important/vital/necessary/essential that... should ... O It's essential that everyone should be here on time.

You can also leave out should in the sentences in section A. So you can say:

O It's essential that everyone be here on time. (= ... that everyone should be here) O I insisted that he apologise. (= ... that he should apologise) O What do you suggest we do?

O Many people are demanding that something be done about the problem.

This form (be/do/apologise etc.) is called the subjunctive. It is the same as the infinitive (without to). You can also use normal present and past tenses:

O It's essential that everyone is here on time.

O I insisted that he apologised.

After suggest, you cannot use to ... ('to do / to buy' etc.). You can say:

O What do you suggest we should do? or What do you suggest we do? (but not What do you suggest us to do?)

O Jane won the lottery.

I suggested that she should buy a car with the money she'd won. or I suggested that she buy a car.

or I suggested that she bought a car. (but not I suggested her to buy) You can also use -ing after suggest (What do you suggest doing?). See Unit 53.

You can use should after a number of adjectives, especially:

strange odd funny typical natural interesting surprised surprising

It's strange that he should be late. He's usually on time. O I was surprised that he should say such a thing.

You can say 'If something should happen For example:

We have no jobs at present, but if the situation should change, we will contact you.

You can also begin with should (Should something happen ...):

C Should the situation change, we will contact you. This means the same as 'If the situation changes, With should, the speaker feels that the possibility is smaller.

You can use I should ... I \ shouldn't... to give somebody advice. For example: D 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, I should wait a bit.'

Here, I should wait = I would wait if I were you, I advise you to wait. More examples:

'I'm going out now. Is it cold out?' 'Yes, I should wear a coat.' O I shouldn't stay up too late. You have to be up early tomorrow.

Should 1 -> Unit 33 American English -> Appendix 7

)

Write a sentence (beginning in the way shown) that means the same as the first sentence.

1 'I think it would be a good idea to see a specialist/ the doctor said to me. The doctor recommended that I should see a. specialist

2 'You really must stay a little longer,' she said to me. She insisted that I

3 'Why don't you visit the museum after lunch?' I said to them.

I suggested that

4 'You must pay the rent by Friday,' the landlord said to us. The landlord demanded that

5 'Why don't we go away for a few days?' Jack said to me.

Jack suggested that

Are these sentences right or wrong?

1 a Tom suggested that I should look for another job. OK b Tom suggested that I look for another job.

c Tom suggested that I looked for another job.

d Tom suggested me to look for another job.

2 a Where do you suggest I go for my holiday?

b Where do you suggest me to go for my holiday?

c Where do you suggest I should go for my holiday?

Complete the sentences using should + the following: ask -be- leave listen say worry

1 It's strange that he should, be late. He's usually on time.

2 It's funny that you that. I was going to say the same thing.

3 It's only natural that parents about their children.

4 Isn't it typical of Joe that he without saying goodbye to anybody?

5 I was surprised that they me for advice. What advice could I give them?

6 I'm going to give you all some essential information, so it's important that everybody

very carefully.

Use the words in brackets to complete these sentences. Use If ... should

1 We have no jobs at present, (the situation / change)

If the situation should change , we will contact you.

2 I've hung the washing out to dry on the balcony, (it/rain)

, can you bring the washing in, please?

3 I think everything will be OK. (there / be / any problems)

, I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.

4 I don't want anyone to know where I'm going. (anyone / ask)

, just say that you don't know.

Write sentences 3 and 4 again, this time beginning with Should.

1 (3) Should , I'm sure we'll be able to solve them.

2 (4) , just say that you don't know.

(Section F) Complete the sentences using I should + the following: get keep phone w a it

1 'Shall I leave now?' 'No, I should wait a bit.'

2 'Shall I throw these things away?' 'No, them. You may need them.'

3 'Shall I go and see Paul?' 'Yes, but him first.'

4 'Is it worth getting this TV repaired?' 'No, a new one.'

Unit

35 Had better It's time...

Had better (I'd better / you'd better etc.)

I'd better do something = it is advisable to do it. If I don't do it, there will be a problem or a danger: O I have to meet Amy in ten minutes. I'd better go now or I'll be late. O 'Shall I take an umbrella?' 'Yes, you'd better. It might rain.' O We'd better stop for petrol soon. The tank is almost empty.

The negative is I'd better not (= I had better not):

□ 'The jacket looks good on you. Are you going to buy it?' 'I'd better not.

It's too expensive.' O You don't look very well. You'd better not go out tonight.

Remember that:

The form is 'had better' (usually 'I'd better' / 'you'd better' etc. in spoken English). O I'd better phone Chris, hadn't I?

Had is normally past, but the meaning of had better is present or future, not past. C I'd better go to the bank now / tomorrow.

We say 'I'd better do' (not to do):

It might rain. We'd better take an umbrella, (not We'd better to take)

J

Had better and should

Had better is similar to should, but not exactly the same. We use had better only for a specific situation, not for things in general. You can use should in all types of situations to give an opinion or give advice:

J It's late. You'd better go. / You should go. (a specific situation)

D You're always at home. You should go out more often, (in general - not 'had better go')

Also, with had better, there is always a danger or a problem if you don't follow the advice. Should means only 'it is a good thing to do'. Compare:

□ It's a great film. You should go and see it. (but no problem if you don't)

C The film starts at 8.30. You'd better go now or you'll be late.

It's time ...

You can say It's time (for somebody) to ...

O It's time to go home. / It's time for us to go home.

But you can also say:

O It's late. It's time we went home. When we use it's time + past (we went / I did / they were etc.), the meaning is present, not past:

O It's time they were here. Why are they so late? (not It's time they are here)

It's time somebody did something = they should have already done it or started it. We often use this structure to criticise or to complain:

O This situation can't continue. It's time you did something about it.

O He's very selfish. It's time he realised that he isn't the most important person in the world.

You can also say It's about time This makes the criticism stronger:

O Jack is a great talker. But it's about time he did something instead of just talking.

Should 1 -* Unit 33

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Read the situations and write sentences with had better or had better not. Use the words in brackets.

1 You're going out for a walk with Tom. It looks as if it might rain. You say to Tom: (an umbrella) We'd better take an umbrella..

2 Oliver has just cut himself. It's a bad cut. You say to him: (a plaster)

3 You and Kate plan to go to a restaurant this evening. It's a popular restaurant. You say to Kate: (reserve) We ..,

4 Rebecca doesn't look very well this morning - not well enough to go to work. You say to her: (work)

5 You received your phone bill four weeks ago, but you haven't paid it yet. If you don't pay soon, you could be in trouble. You say to yourself:

(pay)

6 You want to ask your boss something, but he's very busy and you know he doesn't like to be disturbed. You say to a colleague:

(disturb) I

Put in had better where suitable. If had better is not suitable, use should.

1 I have an appointment in ten minutes. I A btttxx go now or I'll be late.

2 It's a great film. You should go and see it. You'll really like it.

3 You set your alarm. You'll never wake up on time if you don't.

4 When people are driving, they keep their eyes on the road.

5 I'm glad you came to see us. You come more often.

6 She'll be upset if we don't invite her to the party, so we invite her.

7 These biscuits are delicious. You try one.

8 I think everybody learn a foreign language.

Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need only one word, sometimes two.

1 a I have a toothache. I'd better to the dentist.

b John is expecting you to phone him. You better phone him now.

c 'Shall I leave the window open?' 'No, you'd better it.' d We'd better leave as soon as possible, we?

2 a It's time the government something about the problem, b It's time something about the problem.

c I think it's about time you about other people instead of only thinking about yourself.

Read the situations and write sentences with It's time (somebody did something).

1 You think the oil in the car needs to be changed. It hasn't been changed for a long time.

It's time we change the oil in the car.

2 You haven't had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now. It's time I

3 You're sitting on a train waiting for it to leave the station. It's already five minutes late.

4 You enjoy having parties. You haven't had one for a long time.

5 The company you work for has been badly managed for a long time. You think some changes should be made.

6 Andrew has been doing the same job for the last ten years. He should try something else.

-i Additional exercise 16 (page 311)

We use would ('d) / wouldn't when we imagine a situation or action (= we think of something that is not real):

It would be nice to buy a new car, but we can't afford it. I'd love to live by the sea.

a: Shall I tell Chris what happened? b: No, I wouldn't say anything.

(= I wouldn't say anything in your situation)

We use would have (done) when we imagine situations or actions in the past (= things that didn't happen):

They helped us a lot. I don't know what we'd have done

(= we would have done) without their help. O I didn't tell Sam what happened. He wouldn't have been pleased.

Compare would (do) and would have (done):

O I would call Lisa, but I don't have her number, (now)

I would have called Lisa, but I didn't have her number, (past) O I'm not going to invite them to the party. They wouldn't come anyway.

I didn't invite them to the party. They wouldn't have come anyway.

We often use would in sentences with if (see Units 38-40): I would call Lisa if I had her number. O I would have called Lisa if I'd had her number.

[image]

Compare will ('ll) and would ('d):

O I'll stay a little longer. I've got plenty of time.

I'd stay a little longer, but I really have to go now. (so I can't stay longer) O I'll call Lisa. I have her number.

I'd call Lisa, but I don't have her number, (so I can't call her)

Sometimes would/wouldn't is the past of will/won't. Compare:

present

O tom: I'll call you on Sunday. —>

amy: I promise I won't be late.

lisa: Damn! The car won't start. —>

past

Tom said he'd call me on Sunday.

Amy promised that she wouldn't be late.

Lisa was annoyed because her car wouldn't start.

Somebody wouldn't do something = he/she refused to do it:

I tried to warn him, but he wouldn't listen to me. (= he refused to listen) C
The car wouldn't start. (= it 'refused' to start)

You can also use would to talk about things that happened regularly in the past:

When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we would all get up early and go for a swim. (= we did this regularly)
C Whenever Richard was angry, he would walk out of the room.

With this meaning, would is similar to used to (see Unit 18):

O Whenever Richard was angry, he used to walk out of the room.

f Will -> Units 21-22 Would you ...?-> Unit 37A Would if-> Units 38-40

Wish ... would -* Unit 41 Would like -¥ Units 37E, 58 Would prefer / would rather Unit 59 ^Modal verbs -> Appendix 4

Exercises

Unit

36

[image]

Write sentences about yourself. Imagine things you would like or wouldn't like.

1 (a place you'd love to live) I'd Love to Live by the sea. (a job you wouldn't like to do) (something you would love to do)

(something that would be nice to have)

(a place you'd like to go to)

[image]

Complete the sentences using would + the following verbs (in the correct form): be be -de- do enjoy enjoy have pass stop

1 They helped us a lot. I don't know what we would have done without their help.

2 You should go and see the film. You it.

3 It's a pity you couldn't come to the party last night. You it.

4 Shall I apply for the job or not? What you in my position?

5 I was in a hurry when I saw you. Otherwise I to talk.

6 We took a taxi home last night, but got stuck in the traffic. It quicker to walk.

7 Why don't you go and see Clare? She very pleased to see you.

8 Why didn't you do the exam? I'm sure you it.

9 In an ideal world, everybody enough to eat.

[image]

Each sentence on the right follows a sentence on the left. Which follows which?

1 2 3 4 5 6

I'd like to go to Australia one day. I wouldn't like to live on a busy road.
I'm sorry the trip was cancelled. I'm looking forward to going out tonight.
I'm glad we didn't go out in the rain. I'm not looking forward to the trip.

a b c d e f

It wouldn't have been very nice.

It would have been fun.

It would be nice.

It won't be much fun.

It wouldn't be very nice.

It will be fun.

1 2 3 4 5 6

[image]

Write sentences using promised + would/wouldn't.

1 I wonder why Laura is late. She promised she wouldn't be late.

2 I wonder why Steve hasn't called me. He promised

3 Why did you tell Jane what I said? You

4 I'm surprised they didn't wait for us. They

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use wouldn't + a suitable verb.

1 I tried to warn him, but he wouldn't ...listen to me.

2 I asked Amanda what had happened, but she me.

3 Paul was very angry about what I'd said and to me for two weeks.

4 Martina insisted on carrying all her luggage. She me help her.

These sentences are about things that often happened in the past. Complete the sentences using would + these verbs:

forget help shake share walk

1 Whenever Richard was angry, he would walk out of the room.

2 We used to live next to a railway line. Every time a train went past, the house

3 Alan was a very kind man. He always you if you had a problem.

4 Katherine was always very generous. She didn't have much, but she what she had with everyone else.

5 You could never rely on Joe. It didn't matter how many times you reminded him to do something, he always

Additional exercises 16-18 (page 311-13)

Unit Can/Could/Would you ... ? etc. 37 (Requests, offers, permission and invitations)

C Could you open the door, please? J

—

Asking people to do things (requests)

We use can or could to ask people to do things:

O Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait a moment, please?

D Helen, can you do me a favour?

D Excuse me, could you tell me how to get to the airport?

Note that we say Do you think you could ... ? (not can): O Do you think you could take me to the station?

We also use will and would to ask people to do things (but can/could are more usual): O Helen, will you do me a favour? O Would you please be quiet? I'm trying to concentrate.

[image]

[image]

[image]

Asking for things

To ask for something, we use Can I have ... ? / Could I have .. (in a shop)
Can I have these postcards, please? or Can I get these postcards, please? D
(during a meal) Could I have the salt, please?

May I have ... ? is also possible:

O May I have these postcards, please?

Asking to do things

To ask to do something, we use can, could or may:

(on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Steve, please?

O 'Could I use your phone?' 'Sure.'

O Do you think I could borrow your bike?

O 'May I come in?' 'Yes, please do.' May is more formal than can or could.

To ask to do something, you can also say Do you mind if I ... ? or Is it all right / Is it OK if I ... ?:

O 'Do you mind if I use your phone?' 'Sure. Go ahead.'

O 'Is it all right if I come in?' 'Yes, of course.'

? or Can I get... ?:

f Could I use your

[image]

[image]

Offering to do things

To offer to do something, we use Can I ... ?:

O 'Can I get you a cup of coffee?' 'That would be nice.' O 'Can I help you?'
'No, it's all right. I can manage.'

74

Offering and inviting

To offer or to invite, we use Would you like ... ? (not Do you like): O
'Would you like a cup of coffee?' 'Yes, please.' O 'Would you like to eat
with us tonight?' 'I'd love to.'

I'd like ... is a polite way of saying what you want:

O (at a tourist information office) I'd like some information about hotels, please. O (in a shop) I'd like to try on this jacket, please.

f Can and could -> Units 26-27 Mind -ing -* Unit 53 l^Modai verbs (can/could/will/would etc.) -> Appendix 4

Would like -* Units 55A, 58B

Exercises

Unit

37

[image]

[image]

Read the situations and write questions beginning Can ... or Could

1 You're carrying a lot of things. You can't open the door yourself. There's a man standing near the door. You say to him: Could you open the door, please?

2 You phone Kate's office, but somebody else answers. Kate isn't there. You want to leave a message for her. You say:

3 You're a tourist. You want to go to the station, but you don't know how to get there. You ask at your hotel:

4 You are in a clothes shop. You see some trousers you like and you want to try them on. You say to the shop assistant:

5 You have a car. You have to go the same way as Steve, who is on foot. You offer him a lift. You say to him:

Read the situation and write a question using the word in brackets.

1 You want to borrow your friend's bike. What do you say to him? (think)
Do you think I could borrow your bike?

2 You are staying at a friend's house and you would like to make some coffee. What do you say? (all right) Is it all right if I make some coffee?

3 You've filled in some forms in English. You want your friend to check them for you. What do you ask?

(think)

4 You want to leave work early. What do you ask your boss? (mind)

5 The woman in the next room is playing music. It's very loud. You want her to turn it down. What do you say to her?

(think)

6 You're on a train. The window is open and you're feeling cold. You'd like to close it, but first you ask the woman next to you.

7 You're still on the train. The woman next to you has finished reading her paper, and you'd like to have a look at it. You ask her.

(think)

What would you say in these situations?

1 Paul has come to see you in your flat. You offer him something to eat.

you: Would you like something to eat ?

paul: No, thank you. I've just eaten.

2 You need help to charge the battery in your camera. You ask Kate.

you: I don't know how to charge the battery. ?

kate: Sure. It's easy. All you have to do is this.

3 You're on a bus. You have a seat, but an elderly man is standing. You offer him your seat.

you: ?

man: Oh, that's very kind of you. Thank you very much.

4 You're the passenger in a car. Your friend is driving very fast. You ask her to slow down.

you: You're making me very nervous. ? driver: Oh, I'm sorry. I didn't realise I was going so fast.

5 You've finished your meal in a restaurant and now you want the bill. You ask the waiter:

you: ?

waiter: Sure. I'll get it for you now.

6 A friend of yours is interested in one of your books. You invite him to borrow it. friend: This looks very interesting.

you: Yes, it's a good book ?

Unit

38 If I do ... and If I did ...

Compare these examples:

(1) lisa: Shall we go by bus or by train? jess: If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.

For Jess, it is possible that they will go by bus, so she says:

If we go by bus, it will be ...

USA JESS

(2) Lisa and Jess decide to go by train.

Later, Jess talks to Joe.

joe: How are you going to travel?

jess: We're going by train. If we went by bus, it would be cheaper, but the train is quicker.

Now Jess knows they are not going to travel by bus, so she says:

If we went by bus, it would be ... (not If we go ...)

[image]

[image]

When we imagine something that will not happen, or we don't expect that it will happen, we use if + past (if we went / if there was / if you found etc.).

But the meaning is not past:

What would you do if you won a lot of money?

(we don't really expect this to happen) O If there was (or were) an election tomorrow,

who would you vote for?

For if ... was/were, see Unit 39C.

Compare if I find and if I found:

I think I left my watch at your house. If you find it, (if I won a lot of money ... ^

can you call me?

but If you found a wallet in the street, what would you do with it?

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence:

I'd be very scared if somebody pointed a gun at me. (not if somebody would point) O If we went by bus, it would be cheaper, (not If we would go)

But you can use if ... would when you ask somebody to do something:

(from a formal letter) I would be grateful if you would let me know your decision as soon as possible.

In the other part of the sentence (not the if-part) we use would / wouldn't: O What would you do if you were bitten by a snake?

O I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I went to bed now, I wouldn't sleep. O Would you mind if I used your phone?

Could and might are also possible:

If I won a lot of money, I might buy a house. (= it is possible that I would buy a house) O If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out)

[image]

f Will -> Units 21-22 If and when -> Unit 25D Would -> Unit 36 If I knew -
* Unit 39 I if I had known -> Unit 40

Exercises

Unit

38

[image]

What do you say in these situations?

1 Of course you don't expect to win the lottery. Which do you say? a If I win the lottery, I'll buy a big house. LJ

b If I won the lottery, I'd buy a big house. \Z\ (b fa correct)

2 You're not going to sell your car because it's old and not worth much. Which do you say? a If I sell my car, I won't get much money for it. LJ

b If I sold my car, I wouldn't get much money for it. LJ

3 You often see Sarah. A friend of yours wants to contact her. Which do you say? a If I see Sarah, I'll tell her to call you. LJ

b If I saw Sarah, I'd tell her to call you. LJ

4 You don't expect that there will be a fire in the building. Which do you say? a What will you do if there is a fire in the building? LJ

b What would you do if there was a fire in the building? LJ

5 You've never lost your passport. You can only imagine it. a I don't know what I'll do if I lose my passport.

b I don't know what I'd do if I lost my passport. LJ

6 Somebody stops you and asks the way to a bank. Which do you say?

a If you go right at the end of this street, you'll see a bank on your left. LJ b

If you went right at the end of this street, you'd see a bank on your left. LJ

7 You're in a lift. There is an emergency button. Nobody is going to press it. Which do you say? a What will happen if somebody presses that button? LJ

b What would happen if somebody pressed that button?

Put the verb into correct form.

1 I'd be very scared if somebody pointed (point) a gun at me.

2 I can't afford to buy a car. If I (buy) a car, I'd have to borrow the money.

3 Don't lend Amy your car. If she (ask) me, I wouldn't lend her mine.

4 If the computer factory closed down, many people (lose) their jobs.

5 I don't think Gary and Emma will get married. I (be) amazed if they did.

6 What would you do if you (be) in a lift and it (stop) between floors?

7 If somebody (give) me £10,000, I (have) a very long holiday.

Write sentences beginning If

1 We've decided not to catch the 10.30 train, (arrive too early)

If we- caught the 10.30 train, we'd arrive too early,

2 Kevin is not going to do his driving test now. (fail)

If he

3 We've decided not to stay at a hotel, (cost too much) If

4 Sally isn't going to leave her job. (not / get another one)

5 We've decided not to invite Ben to the party, (have to invite his friends too)

6 I'm not going to tell him what happened, (not / believe me)

H^kfc Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 If I won a lot of money, I'a. buy a House.

2 I'd be very angry if

3 If you bought a car,

4 I'd be surprised if

5 Would you mind if

f. If I knew ... I wish I knew ...

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Study this example situation:

Sarah wants to phone Paul, but she can't do this because she doesn't know his number. She says:

If I knew his number, I would phone him.

Sarah says: If I knew his number.... This tells us that she doesn't know his number. She is imagining the situation. The real situation is that she doesn't know his number.

0

If I knew his number

[image]

j

When we imagine a situation like this, we use if + past (if I knew / if you were / if we didn't etc.). But the meaning is present, not past:

□ There are many things I'd like to do if I had more time, (but I don't have time)

O If I didn't want to go to the party, I wouldn't go. (but I want to go)

O We wouldn't have any money if we didn't work, (but we work)

O If you were in my position, what would you do?

O It's a pity he can't drive. It would be useful if he could.

We use the past in the same way after wish (I wish I knew / I wish you were etc.). We use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be:

O I wish I knew Paul's phone number.

(= I don't know it and I regret this) O Do you ever wish you could fly?

(you can't fly) □ It rains a lot here. I wish it didn't rain so much. O It's very crowded here. I wish there weren't so

many people, (there are a lot of people)

I wish I didn't have to work tomorrow, but

unfortunately I do.

f I wish I had an umbrella.)

[image]

If I were / if I was

After if and wish, you can use were instead of was (if I were / I wish it were etc.). If I was / I wish it was are also possible. So you can say:

C If I were you, I wouldn't buy that coat. or If I was you, ...

O I'd go for a walk if it weren't so cold. or ... if it wasn't so cold. I wish she were here. or I wish she was here.

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence or after wish: If I were rich, I would travel a lot. (not If I would be rich) Who would you ask if you needed help? (not if you would need) O I wish I had something to read, (not I wish I would have)

Sometimes wish ... would is possible: I wish you would listen. See Unit 41.

Could sometimes means 'would be able to' and sometimes 'was/were able to':

C She could get a better job (she could get = she would be able to get)

if she could speak English. (if she could speak = if she was/were able to speak) O I wish I could help you. (I wish I could = I wish I was able)

Could Units 26-27 If I do / if I did -> Unit 38 If I had known / I wish I had known -> Unit 40

Wish Unit 41

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form.

1 |f I knew (| / know) his number, I would phone him.

2 I wouldn't buy (| / not / buy) that coat if I were you.

3 (I / help) you if I could, but I'm afraid I can't.

4 We don't need a car at present, but we would need a car if (we / live) in the country.

5 If we had the choice, (we / live) in the country.

6 This soup isn't very good. (it / taste) better if it wasn't so salty.

7 I wouldn't mind living in England if the weather (be) better.

8 If I were you, (I / not / wait). (I/go) now.

9 You're always tired. If (you / not / go) to bed so late every night, you wouldn't be tired all the time.

10 I think there are too many cars. If (there / not / be) so many cars, (there / not / be) so much pollution.

Write a sentence with if ... for each situation.

1 We don't see you very often because you live so far away.

If you didn't live so far away, we'd see you more often.

2 It's a nice book but it's too expensive, so I'm not going to buy it.

I'll buy it if so.

3 We don't go out very often - we can't afford it.

We go out more often.

4 I can't meet you tomorrow - I have to work late.

If I have time.

5 It would be nice to have lunch outside but it's raining, so we can't. We'll have it indoors.

6 I don't want his advice, and that's why I'm not going to ask for it.

If

Write sentences beginning I wish

1 I don't know many people (and I'm lonely). I wish I knew more people.

2 I don't have a computer (and I need one). I wish

3 Helen isn't here (and I need to see her).

4 It's cold (and I hate cold weather)

5 I live in a big city (and I don't like it)

6 I can't go to the party (and I'd like to)

7 I have to get up early tomorrow (but I'd like to sleep late).

8 I don't know anything about cars (and my car has just broken down).

9 I'm not feeling well (and it's not nice).

[image]

Write your own sentences beginning I wish

1 (somewhere you'd like to be now - on the beach, in New York, in bed etc.)

I wish I

2 (something you'd like to have - a motorbike, more friends, lots of money etc.)

3 (something you'd like to be able to do - sing, travel more, cook etc.)

4 (something you'd like to be - beautiful, strong, younger etc.)

-> Additional exercises 19-21 (pages 313-14)

Unit

If I had known

Study this example situation:

I wish I had known

Last month Gary was in hospital for a few days. Rachel didn't know this, so she didn't go to visit him. They met a few days ago. Rachel said:

If I'd known you were in hospital, I would have gone to see you.

Rachel said: If I'd known (= If I had known) you were in hospital. This tells us that she didn't know.

■iWPW!J-UilWJJIJU"l-MWMM . -- - ■

We use if + had ('d) ... to talk about the past (if I had known/been/done etc.):

D I didn't see you when you passed me in the street. If I'd seen you, of course I would have said

hello, (but I didn't see you) D I didn't go out last night. I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired, (but I was tired)

If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn't have walked into the wall, (but he

wasn't looking)

O The view was wonderful. If I'd had a camera with me, I would have taken some pictures, (but I didn't have a camera)

Compare:

O I'm not hungry. If I was hungry, I would eat something, (now)

O I wasn't hungry. If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something, (past)

Do not use would in the if-part of the sentence. We use would in the other part of the sentence: O If I had seen you, I would have said hello, (not If I would have seen you)

Note that'd can be would or had:

C If I'd seen you, (I'd seen = I had seen)

O I'd have said hello. (I'd have said = I would have said)

We use had (done) in the same way after wish. I wish something had happened = I am sorry that it didn't happen:

O I wish I'd known that Gary was ill. I would have gone to see him. (but I didn't know)

O I feel sick. I wish I hadn't eaten so much cake. (I ate too much cake)

O Do you wish you'd studied science instead of languages? (you didn't study science)

Do not use would have ... after wish:

D The weather was cold when we were on holiday. I wish it had been warmer, (not I wish it would have been)

Compare would (do) and would have (done):

If I'd gone to the party last night, I would be tired now. (I am not tired now -present)) If I'd gone to the party last night, I would have met lots of people. (I didn't meet lots of people -past)

Compare would have, could have and might have:

we would have gone out.

D If the weather hadn't been so bad,

we could have gone out.

(= we would have been able to go out)

we might have gone out.

(= perhaps we would have gone out)

(Had done -* Unit 15 If I do / if I did Unit 38 If I knew / I wish I knew Unit

Exercises

Unit

40

[image]

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form.

1 I didn't see you when you passed me in the street. If JLA (I/see) you,

I would Hove saxd (I / say) hello.

2 Sam got to the station just in time to catch the train to the airport. If

(he / miss) the train, (he / miss) his flight too.

3 I'm glad that you reminded me about Rachel's birthday

(I / forget) if (you / not / remind) me.

4 I wanted to send you an email, but I didn't have your email address. If

(I / have) your address, (I / send) you an email.

5 a: How was your trip? Was it good?

b: It was OK, but (we / enjoy) it more if the weather

(be) better.

6 I took a taxi to the hotel, but the traffic was bad. (it / be) quicker if (I/ walk).

7 I'm not tired. If (I / be) tired, I'd go home now.

8 I wasn't tired last night. If (I / be) tired, I would

have gone home earlier.

For each situation, write a sentence beginning with If.

1 I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat anything.

If I'd been Hungry, I would have eaten something.

2 The accident happened because the road was icy.

If the road was icy, the accident

3 I didn't know that Joe had to get up early, so I didn't wake him up. If I had known that he had to get up early,

4 Unfortunately I lost my phone, so I couldn't call you.

If

5 Karen wasn't injured in the crash because she was wearing a seat belt.

6 You didn't have breakfast - that's why you're hungry now.

7 I didn't get a taxi because I didn't have enough money.

P Imagine that you are in these situations. For each situation, write a sentence with I wish.

1 You've eaten too much and now you feel sick. You say: I wish I hadn't eaten so much.

2 There was a job advertised in the paper. You decided not to apply for it. Now you think that your decision was wrong. You say: I wish I

3 When you were younger, you never learned to play a musical instrument. Now you regret this. You say:

4 You've painted the gate red. Now you think that red was the wrong colour. You say:

5 You are walking in the country. You'd like to take some pictures, but you didn't bring your camera.

You say:

6 You have some unexpected guests. They didn't phone you first to say they were coming. You are very busy and you are not prepared for them.
You say (to yourself):

[image]

-> Additional exercises 19-21 (pages 313-14)

Unit

41

Wish

You can say 'I wish you luck / all the best / a happy birthday' etc.: O I wish you all the best in the future. C I saw Mark before the exam and he wished me luck.

We say 'wish somebody something' (luck / a happy birthday etc.). But you cannot say 'I wish that something happens'. We use hope in this situation. For example:

O I'm sorry you're not well. I hope you feel better soon, (not I wish you feel)

Compare I wish and I hope:

O I wish you a pleasant stay here.

☐ I hope you have a pleasant stay here, (not I wish you have)

We also use wish to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it. When we use wish in this way, we use the past (knew/ lived etc.), but the meaning is present:

O I wish I knew what to do about the problem. (I don't know and I regret this)

O I wish you didn't have to go so soon, (you have to go)

☐ Do you wish you lived near the sea? (you don't live near the sea)

O Jack's going on a trip to Mexico soon. I wish I was going too. (I'm not going)

To say that we regret something in the past, we use wish + had ... (had known / had said) etc.: I wish I'd known about the party. I would have gone if I'd known. (I didn't know)

□ It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it. (I said it)

For more examples, see Units 39 and 40.

I wish I could (do something) = I regret that I cannot do it:

O I'm sorry I have to go. I wish I could stay longer, (but I can't)

O I've met that man before. I wish I could remember his name, (but I can't)

I wish I could have (done something) = I regret that I could not do it:

O I hear the party was great. I wish I could have gone, (but I couldn't go)

You can say 'I wish (somebody) would (do something)'. For example:

I

I wish it would stop raining.

[image]

It's been raining all day. Tanya doesn't like it. She says: I wish it would stop raining.

Tanya would like the rain to stop, but this will probably not happen.

We use I wish ... would when we would like something to happen or change. Usually, the speaker doesn't expect this to happen.

We often use I wish ... would to complain about a situation:

O The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I wish somebody would answer it.

O I wish you'd do (= you would do) something instead of just sitting and

doing nothing.

You can use I wish ... wouldn't... to complain about things that people do repeatedly: O I wish you wouldn't keep interrupting me. (= please don't interrupt me)

We use I wish ... would ... to say that we want something to happen. But we do not use I wish would ... to say how we would like things to be.

Compare: O I wish Sarah would come. (= I want her to come) but I wish Sarah was (or were) here now. (not I wish Sarah would be)

but

O I wish somebody would buy me a car.

I wish I had a car. (not I wish I would have)

f Would -> Unit 36 I wish I knew -* Unit 39 \J wish I had known -> Unit 40

I wish I was /I wish I were -> Unit 39C

Exercises

Unit

41

[image]

[image]

Put in wish(ed) or hope(d).

1 I wMI you a pleasant stay here.

2 Enjoy your holiday. I you have a great time.

3 Goodbye. I you all the best.

4 We said goodbye to each other and each other luck.

5 We're going to have a picnic tomorrow, so I the weather is nice.

6 I you luck in your new job. I it works out well for you.

What do you say in these situations? Write sentences with I wish ... would

1 It's raining. You want to go out, but not in the rain. You say: ! wi,ski it yooulA. stop rainmg.

2 You're waiting for Jane. She's late and you're getting impatient. You say to yourself: I wish

3 You're looking for a job - so far without success. Nobody will give you a job.

You say: I wish somebody

4 You can hear a baby crying. It's been crying for a long time and you're trying to study. You say:

5 Brian has been wearing the same clothes for years. You think he needs some new clothes. You say to Brian:

For the following situations, write sentences with I wish ... wouldn't....

6 Your friend drives very fast. You don't like this.

You say to your friend: I wish you

7 Joe leaves the door open all the time. This annoys you.

You say to Joe:

8 A lot of people drop litter in the street. You don't like this. You say: I wish people

[image]

Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 I wish Sarah would be here now. ! wj^Jh Sarah were here now,

2 I wish you would listen to me.

- 3 I wish I would have more free time.
- 4 I wish our flat would be a bit bigger.
- 5 I wish the weather would change.
- 6 I wish you wouldn't complain all the time.
- 7 I wish everything wouldn't be so expensive.

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form.

- 1 It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I HaxLn't sauL it. (I/not/say)
- 2 I'm fed up with this rain. I wish It. would stop . (it / stop)
- 3 It's a difficult question. I wish the answer. (I / know)
- 4 I should have listened to you. I wish your advice. (I/take)
- 5 You're lucky to be going away. I wish with you. (I / can / come)
- 6 I have no energy at the moment. I wish so tired. (I / not / be)
- 7 Aren't they ready yet? I wish . (they / hurry up)
- 8 It would be nice to stay here longer. I wish to go now. (we / not / have)
- 9 When we were in London last year, we didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see. I wish longer, (we / can / stay)
- 10 It's freezing today. I wish so cold. I hate cold weather, (it / not / be)
- 11 Joe still doesn't know what he wants to do. I wish (he / decide)
- 12 I really didn't enjoy the party. I wish (we/not/go)

Unit

- 42 . Passive 1 (is done / was done)

[image]

Study this example:

[image]

This house was built in 1961.

Was built is passive.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody built this house in 1961. (active) subject object

This house was built in 1961. (passive) subject

When we use an active verb, we say what the subject does:

C My grandfather was a builder. He built this house in 1961. C It's a big company. It employs two hundred people.

When we use a passive verb, we say what happens to the subject: O 'How old is this house?' 'It was built in 1961.' O Two hundred people are employed by the company.

When we use the passive, who or what causes the action is often unknown or unimportant:

A lot of money was stolen in the robbery, (somebody stole it, but we don't know who) Is this room cleaned every day? (does somebody clean it? - it's not important who)

If we want to say who does or what causes the action, we use by: This house was built by my grandfather. Two hundred people are employed by the company.

The passive is be (is/was etc.) + past participle (done/cleaned/seen etc.):

(be) done (be) cleaned (be) damaged (be) built (be) seen etc.

For irregular past participles (done/seen/known etc.), see Appendix 1.

Study the active and passive forms of the present simple and past simple:

Present simple

active clean(s) / see(s) etc.

passive am/is/are + cleaned/seen etc.

Many accidents are caused by careless driving. Z I'm not invited to parties very often. How is this word pronounced?

Somebody cleans this room every day.

This room is cleaned every day.

Past simple

active cleaned/saw etc.

passive was/were + cleaned/seen etc.

Somebody cleaned this room yesterday.

This room was cleaned yesterday.

We were woken up by a loud noise during the night. 'Did you go to the party?' 'No, I wasn't invited.' How much money was stolen in the robbery?

J

g 4 I Passive 2-3 Units 43-44 By -¥ Unit 128

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using one of these verbs in the correct form, present or past:

c a u s e damage hold invite make

overtake show surround translate write

- 1 Many accidents are caused by dangerous driving.
- 2 Cheese from milk.
- 3 The roof of the building in a storm a few days ago.
- 4 You to the wedding. Why didn't you go?
- 5 A cinema is a place where films
- 6 In the United States, elections for president every four years.
- 7 Originally the book in Spanish, and a few years ago it
into English.
- 8 Although we were driving fast, we by a lot of other cars.
- 9 You can't see the house from the road. It by trees.

Write questions using the passive. Some are present and some are past.

- 1 Ask about glass, (how/make?) How us glass made?
- 2 Ask about television, (when / invent?)
- 3 Ask about mountains, (how/form?)
- 4 Ask about antibiotics, (when / discover?)
- 5 Ask about silver, (what / use for?)

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, present simple or past simple, active or passive.

- 1 It's a big factory. Five hundred people M& employed (employ) there.
- 2 Old somebody dean (somebody / clean) this room yesterday?
- 3 Water (cover) most of the earth's surface.

- 4 How much of the earth's surface (cover) by water?
- 5 The park gates (lock) at 6.30 p.m. every evening.
- 6 The letter (send) a week ago and it (arrive) yesterday.
- 7 The boat hit a rock and (sink) quickly. Fortunately everybody (rescue).
- 8 Robert's parents (die) when he was very young. He and his sister (bring up) by their grandparents.
- 9 I was born in London, but I (grow up) in Canada.
- 10 While I was on holiday, my camera (steal) from my hotel room.
- 11 While I was on holiday, my camera (disappear) from my hotel room.
- 12 Why (Sue / resign) from her job? Didn't she enjoy it?
- 13 Why (Ben / fire) from his job? Did he do something wrong?
- 14 The company is not independent. It (own) by a much larger company.
- 15 I saw an accident last night. Somebody (call) an ambulance but nobody (injure), so the ambulance (not / need).
- 16 Where (these pictures / take)? In London?
(you / take) them, or somebody else?
- 17 Sometimes it's quite noisy living here, but it's not a problem for me -I (not / bother) by it.

K- J Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using somebody, they, people etc., write a passive sentence.

- 1 Somebody cleans the room every day. JHe ropryi Ls clearied evert} day.
- 2 They cancelled all flights because of fog. All

3 People don't use this road much.

4 Somebody accused me of stealing money. I

5 How do people learn languages? How

6 People warned us not to go out alone.

Unit

43 Passive 2 (be done / been done / being done)

Study the following active and passive forms: Infinitive

active (to) do/clean/see etc.

Somebody will clean this room later.

I

passive (to) be + done/cleaned/seen etc.

The situation is serious. Something must be done before it's too late. O A mystery is something that can't be explained. O The music was very loud and could be heard from a long way away. O A new supermarket is going to be built next year. O Please go away. I want to be left alone.

This room will be cleaned later.

Perfect infinitive

active (to) have + done/cleaned/seen etc.

Somebody should have cleaned the room

passive (to) have been + done/cleaned/seen etc. The room should have been cleaned.

I should have received the letter by now. It might have been sent to the wrong address. □ If you had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen.

There were some problems at first, but they seem to have been solved.

Present perfect

active have/has + done etc.

passive have/has been + done etc.

O Have you heard? The trip has been cancelled. O Have you ever been bitten by a dog?

'Are you going to the party?' 'No, I haven't been invited.'

The room looks nice. Somebody has cleaned it

i

The room looks nice. It has been cleaned.

Past perfect

active had + done etc.

passive had been + done etc.

The vegetables didn't taste good. They had been cooked too long. O The car was three years old, but hadn't been used very much.

■ iujumajwww,m i w »

Present continuous

active am/is/are + (do)ing

passive am/is/are + being (done)

The room looked nice. Somebody had cleaned it .

The room looked nice. It had been cleaned.

I

Somebody is cleaning the room at the moment.

The room is being cleaned at the moment.

There's somebody walking behind us. I think we are being followed. (in a shop) 'Can I help you?' 'No, thanks. I'm being served.'

Past continuous

active was/were + (do)ing

Somebody was cleaning the room when I arrived.

passive was/were + being (done) The room was being cleaned when I arrived.

O There was somebody walking behind us. I think we were being followed.

Passive 1,3-* Units 42, 44

j

Exercises

Unit

43

[image]

What do these words mean? Use it can ... or it can't... . Use a dictionary if necessary.

If something is

1 washable, M. 4 unusable,

2 unbreakable, it 5 invisible,

3 edible, . 6 portable,

[image]

[image]

Complete these sentences with the following verbs (in the correct form):
arrest carry cause -de^ make repair -send- spend wake up

Sometimes you need have (might have, should have etc.).

1 The situation is serious. Something must be done before it's too late.

2 I should have received the letter by now. It might have been sent to the wrong address.

3 A decision will not until the next meeting.

4 Do you think that more money should on education?

5 This road is in very bad condition. It should a long time ago.

6 The injured man couldn't walk and had to

7 I told the hotel receptionist I wanted to at 6.30 the next morning.

8 If you hadn't pushed the policeman, you wouldn't

9 It's not certain how the fire started, but it might by an electrical fault.

Rewrite these sentences. Instead of using somebody or they etc., write a passive sentence.

1 Somebody has cleaned the room. The room Has been cleaned.

Somebody is using the computer right now. The computer

I didn't realise that somebody was recording our conversation.

I didn't realise that

When we got to the stadium, we found that they had cancelled the game.

When we got to the stadium, we found that

They are building a new ring road round the city.

6 They have built a new hospital near the airport.

p Make sentences from the words in brackets. Sometimes the verb is active, sometimes passive.

1 There's somebody behind us. (I think / we / follow) I think we're being - followed.

2 This room looks different, (you / paint / the walls?) Have you painted the walls ?

3 My car has disappeared, (it / steal!) It

4 My umbrella has disappeared, (somebody / take) Somebody

5 Sam gets a higher salary now. (he / promote) He

6 Ann can't use her office this week, (it / redecorate) It

7 There was a problem with the photocopier yesterday, but now it's OK.

(it / work) It again, (it / repair) It

8 When I went into the room, I saw that the table and chairs were not in the same place, (the furniture / move) The

9 A neighbour of mine disappeared six months ago. (he / not / see / since then)

He

10 I wonder how Jane is these days. (I / not / see / for ages)

11 A friend of mine was mugged on his way home a few nights ago. (you / ever / mug?)

-» Additional exercises 22-24 (pages 314-15)

mm

44 Passive 3

I was offered ... / we were given ... etc.

Some verbs can have two objects. For example, give:

D Somebody gave the police the information. (= somebody gave the information to the police)

v v '

object 7 object 2

So it is possible to make two passive sentences: O The police were given the information, or The information was given to the police.

Other verbs which can have two objects are:

ask offer pay show teach tell

When we use these verbs in the passive, most often we begin with the person:

I've been offered the job, but I don't think I'll accept it. (= they have offered me the job) D You will be given plenty of time to decide. (= we will give you plenty of time)

I didn't see the original document but I was shown a copy. (= somebody showed me.) O Tim has an easy job - he's paid a lot of money to do very little. (= they pay him a lot)

I don't like being ...

The passive of doing/seeing etc. is being done / being seen etc. Compare:

active I don't like people telling me what to do. passive I don't like being told what to do.

O I remember being taken to the zoo when I was a child. (= I remember somebody taking me to the zoo)

Steve hates being kept waiting. (= he hates people keeping him waiting)

We managed to climb over the wall without being seen. (= without anybody seeing us)

I was born ...

We say 'I was born ...' (not I am born): I was born in Chicago.

Where were you born? (not Where are you born?)

but

How many babies are born every day? present

Get

You can use get instead of be in the passive:

There was a fight at the party, but nobody got hurt. (= nobody was hurt) I don't get invited to many parties. (= I'm not invited) I'm surprised Liz didn't get offered the job. (= Liz wasn't offered the job)

We use get only when things happen. For example, you cannot use get in these sentences: Jessica is liked by everybody, (not gets liked - this is not a 'happening') Peter was a mystery man. Very little was known about him. (not got known)

We use get mainly in informal spoken English. You can use be in all situations.

We also use get in the following expressions (which are not passive in meaning):

get married, get divorced get dressed (= put on your clothes)

get lost (= not know where you are) get changed (= change your clothes)

[image]

Exercises

[image]

Write these sentences in another way, beginning in the way shown.

1 They didn't give me the information I needed.

| wasn't given tHe information I needed.

2 They asked me some difficult questions at the interview.

I

- 3 Amy's colleagues gave her a present when she retired. Amy
- 4 Nobody told me about the meeting. I wasn't
- 5 How much will they pay you for your work? How much will you
- 6 I think they should have offered Tom the job. I think Tom
- 7 Has anybody shown you what to do? Have you

[image]

Complete the sentences using being + the following verbs (in the correct form):

give invite keep knock down stick treat

[image]

- 1 Steve hates Mng kept waiting.
- 2 We went to the party without
- 3 I like giving presents and I also like them.
- 4 It's a busy road and I don't like crossing it. I'm afraid of
- 5 I'm an adult. I don't like like a child.
- 6 You can't do anything about in a traffic jam.

When were they born? Choose five of these people and write a sentence for each. (Two of them were born in the same year.)

Ludwig van Beethoven Mahatma Gandhi Elvis Presley 1452 1869 1935

Walt Disney Michael Jackson William Shakespeare 1564 4901- 1958

Galileo Martin Luther King Leonardo da Vinci 1770 1929

- 1 Wait Disney was bom In 1901.

[image]

3

4

5

6

7 And you? I

Complete the sentences using get/got + the following verbs (in the correct form): ask damage hurt pay steal sting stop use

1 There was a fight at the party, but nobody %ot hurt

2 Alex by a bee while he was sitting in the garden.

3 These tennis courts don't very often. Not many people want to play.

4 I used to have a bicycle, but it a few months ago.

5 Rachel works hard but doesn't very much.

6 Last night I by the police as I was driving home. One of the lights on my car wasn't working.

7 Please pack these things very carefully. I don't want them to

8 People often want to know what my job is. I that question a lot.

■# Additional exercises 22-24 (pages 314-15)

It is said that... He is said to ... He is supposed to ...

Study this example situation:

[image]

George is very old. Nobody knows exactly how old he is, but: It is said that he is 108 years old.

or He is said to be 108 years old.

Both these sentences mean: 'People say that he is 108 years old.'

■■■ 1

You can use these structures with a number of other verbs, especially:

alleged believed considered expected known reported thought understood

Compare the two structures:

D Cathy loves running.

It is said that she runs ten miles a day. The police are looking for a missing boy. It is believed that the boy is wearing a white sweater and blue jeans. The strike started three weeks ago. It is expected that the strike will end soon.

A friend of mine has been arrested. It is alleged that he hit a policeman. The two houses belong to the same family. It is said that there is a secret tunnel between them.

or She is said to run ten miles a day.

or The boy is believed to be wearing

a white sweater and blue jeans.

or The strike is expected to end soon.

or He is alleged to have hit a policeman.

or There is said to be a secret tunnel between them.

These structures are often used in news reports. For example, in a report about an accident: It is reported that two people were or Two people are reported to have

injured in the explosion. been injured in the explosion.

J

(Be) supposed to

Sometimes (it is) supposed to ... = (it is) said to ...

I want to see that film. It's supposed to be good. (= it is said to be good) O
Fireworks are supposed to have been invented in China. Is it true?

But sometimes supposed to has a different meaning. We use supposed to to say what is intended, arranged or expected. Often this is different from the real situation:

The plan is supposed to be a secret, but everybody seems to know about it.

(= the plan is intended to be a secret) Q What are you doing at work?
You're supposed to be on holiday.

(=you arranged to be on holiday)

□ Our guests were supposed to come at 7.30, but they were late. C Jane was supposed to phone me last night, but she didn't.

O I'd better hurry. I'm supposed to be meeting Chris in ten minutes.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed or advisable:

□ You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.

Jeff is much better after his illness, but he's still not supposed to do any heavy work.

Exercises

Unit

45

[image]

[image]

Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown. Use the underlined word each time.

1 It is expected that the strike will end soon. The strike ^ expected to end soon.

2 It is expected that the weather will be good tomorrow.

The weather is

3 It is believed that the thieves got in through a window in the roof. The thieves

4 It is reported that many people are homeless after the floods. Many people

5 It is thought that the prisoner escaped by climbing over a wall. The prisoner

6 It is alleged that the man was driving at 110 miles an hour.

The man

7 It is reported that the building has been badly damaged by the fire. The building

8 a It is said that the company is losing a lot of money.

The company

b It is believed that the company lost a lot of money last year. The company

c It is expected that the company will make a loss this year. The company

There are a lot of rumours about Alan. Here are some of the things people say about him:

: ^Alan speaks ten languages.") ^ C\~e knows a lot of famous people.*)

^aw — is

3

[image]

very rich.^ ^He has twelve children.^ ^He was an actor when

~2y he was younger.

[image]

Nobody is sure whether these things are true. Write sentences about Alan using supposed to.

1 Alan is supposed to speak ten languages...

2 He

4

5

[image]

Complete the sentences using supposed to be + the following:

on a diet a flower my friend a joke a secret working

1 How is it that everybody seems to know about the plan? It \%,
supposed...to be a secret.

2 You shouldn't criticise me all the time. You

3 I shouldn't be eating this cake really. I

4 I'm sorry for what I said. I was trying to be funny. It

5 What's this drawing? Is it a tree? Or maybe it

6 You shouldn't be reading the paper now. You

^ J| Write sentences with supposed to + the following verbs: block depart
park phone start

Use the negative (not supposed to) where necessary.

1 You Ve not supposed to park here. It's private parking only.

2 We work at 8.15, but we rarely do anything before 8.30.

3 Oh, I Helen last night, but I completely forgot.

4 This door is a fire exit. You it.

5 My flight at 11.30, but it was an hour late.

•* Additional exercises 22-24 (pages 314-15)

Unit

46 Have something done

The roof of Lisa's house was damaged in a storm. So she called a builder, and yesterday a man came and repaired it.

Lisa had the roof repaired yesterday.

This means: Lisa arranged for somebody else to repair the roof. She didn't repair it herself.

J

We use have something done to say that we arrange for somebody else to do something for us. Compare:

Lisa repaired the roof. (= she repaired it herself)

Lisa had the roof repaired. (= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)

D 'Did you make those curtains yourself?' 'Yes, I enjoy making things.' 'Did you have those curtains made?' 'No, I made them myself.'

Be careful with word order. The past participle (repaired/cut etc.) is after the object:

Get something done

You can also say 'get something done' instead of 'have something done':

O When are you going to get the roof repaired? (= have the roof repaired) I think you should get your hair cut really short.

Sometimes have something done has a different meaning. For example: Paul and Karen had their bags stolen while they were travelling.

This does not mean that they arranged for somebody to steal their bags.
'They had their bags stolen' means only: 'Their bags were stolen'.

With this meaning, we use have something done to say that something happens to somebody or their belongings. Often what happens is not nice:

C Gary had his nose broken in a fight. (= his nose was broken)

O Have you ever had your bike stolen?

[image]

Exercises

[image]

Tick (/) the correct sentence, (a) or (b), for each picture

fS 1 1

[image]

[image]

[image]

SARAH

(a) Sarah is cutting her hair.

(b) Sarah is having her hair cut.

BILL

(a) Bill is cutting his hair.

(b) Bill is having his hair cut.

JOHN

(a) John is cleaning his shoes.

(b) John is having his shoes cleaned.

[image]

Put the words in the correct order.

1 had / a few weeks ago / the house / we / painted

We had the house painted, a, -few weeks ago.

2 serviced / her car / Sarah / once a year / has Sarah

3 twelve pounds / have / cleaned / it / my suit / cost / to

Unit

46

[image]

SUE

(a) Sue is taking a picture.

(b) Sue is having her picture taken.

4 my eyes / I / two years ago / had / tested / the last time / was

5 had / in the kitchen / fitted / some new cupboards / we've

6 as soon as possible / need / translated / we / to get / this document

[image]

Write sentences in the way shown.

1 Lisa didn't repair the roof herself. She had it repaired.

2 I didn't cut my hair myself. I

3 We didn't clean the carpets ourselves. We

4 John didn't build that wall himself

5 I didn't deliver the flowers myself.

J| Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use the structure have something done.

1 WeVe having, the house painted (we / the house / paint) this week.

2 I lost my key. I'll have to (another key / make).

3 When was the last time (you / your hair / cut)?

4 (you / a newspaper / deliver) to

your house every day, or do you go out and buy one?

5 a: What's happening in your garden?

b: Oh, (we / a garage / build).

6 a: (you / the washing machine / fix)?

b: Not yet. There's someone coming to look at it next week.

7 If you want to wear earrings, why don't you (you / your ears / pierce)?

Now use 'have something done' with its second meaning (see Section D).

8 Gary was in a fight last night. He hod his nose broken (he / his nose / break).

9 Did I tell you about Jane?

(she / her credit cards / steal).

10 Security was very strict at the airport.

(we all / our bags / search).

Unit

47

[image]

[image]

[image]

Reported speech 1 (He said that...)

Study this example situation:

[image]

You want to tell somebody what Paul said. There are two ways of doing this:

You can repeat Paul's words (direct speech): Paul said I'm feeling ill '

Or you can use reported speech: Paul said that he was feeling ill.

Compare:

T



direct Paul said ' I am feeling ill.'

T 'J

reported Paul said that he was feeling ill.

In writing we use these quotation marks to show direct speech.

When we use reported speech, the main verb of the sentence is usually past (Paul said that.. I told her that ... etc.). The rest of the sentence is usually past too: Paul said that he was feeling ill. C I told Lisa that I didn't have any money.

You can leave out that. So you can say:

C Paul said that he was feeling ill. or Paul said he was feeling ill.

In general, the present form in direct speech changes to the past form in reported speech: am/is —> was do/does —> did will —> would

are —> were have/has —> had can —> could

want/like/know/go etc. wanted/liked/knew/went etc.

./

Compare direct speech and reported speech:

You met Anna. Here are some of the things she said in direct speech:

My parents are fine.

I'm going to learn to drive.

I want to buy a car.

John has a new job.

I can't come to the party on

Friday.

I don't have much free time. I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you when I get back.

Later you tell somebody what Anna said. You use reported speech:

[image]

ANNA

o □

o o

□

o

Anna said that her parents were fine. She said that she was going to learn to drive.

She said that she wanted to buy a car. She said that John had a new job. She said that she couldn't come to the party on Friday.

She said she didn't have much free time. She said that she was going away for a few days and would phone me when she got back.

[image]

The past simple (did/saw/knew etc.) can usually stay the same in reported speech, or you can change it to the past perfect (had done / had seen / had known etc.):

direct Paul said 'I woke up feeling ill, so I didn't go to work.' reported Paul said (that) he woke up feeling ill, so he didn't go to work, or

Paul said (that) he had woken up feeling ill, so he hadn't gone to work.

94

Reported speech 2 Unit 48 Reported questions Unit 50B

j

Exercises

[image]

Yesterday you met a friend of yours, Steve. You hadn't seen him for a long time. Here are some of the things Steve said to you:

1 I'm living in London. \^ — 7 I haven't seen Amy recently.

2 My father isn't very we

3 Rachel and Mark are g married next month.

4 My sister has had a baby.

5 I don't know what Joe is doing.

[image]

Steve

8 I'm not enjoying my job very much.

9 You can come and stay at my place if you're ever in London.

10 My car was stolen a few days ago.

11 I want to go on holiday, but I can't afford it.

6 I saw Helen at a party in June and she seemed fine.

12 I'll tell Chris I saw you.

Later that day you tell another friend what Steve said. Use reported speech.

1 Steve said that he was living in London.

2 He said that

3 He

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

Somebody says something to you which is not what you expected. Use your own ideas to complete your answers.

1 a: It's quite a long way from the hotel to the station.

b: Is it? The man on the reception desk said it was only a five minutes' walk

2 a: Sue is coming to the party tonight.

b: Is she? I saw her a few days ago and she said she

3 a: Sarah gets on fine with Paul.

b: Does she? Last week you said each other.

4 a: Joe knows lots of people.

b: That's not what he told me. He said anyone.

5 a: Jane will be here next week.

b: Oh, really? When I spoke to her, she said away.

6 a: I'm going out tonight.

b: Are you? I thought you said home.

7 a: John speaks French quite well.

b: Does he? He told me any other languages.

8 a: I haven't seen Ben recently.

b: That's strange. He told me last weekend.

[image]

■* Additional exercise 25 (page 316)

Unit

48 Reported speech 2

It is not always necessary to change the verb in reported speech. If the situation is still the same, you do not need to change the verb to the past. For example: C direct Paul said 'My new job is boring.' reported Paul said that his new job is boring.

(The situation is still the same. His job is still boring now.)

O direct Helen said 'I want to go to Canada next year.'

reported Helen told me that she wants to go to Canada next year. (Helen still wants to go to Canada next year.)

You can also change the verb to the past:

□ Paul said that his new job was boring.

O Helen told me that she wanted to go to Canada next year.

But if the situation has changed or finished, you must use a past verb:

O Paul left the room suddenly. He said he had to go. (not has to go)

SONIA

You need to use a past form when there is a difference between what was said and what is really true. For example:

You met Sonia a few days ago. She said: Joe is in hospital.

Later that day you meet Joe in the street. You say:

Hi, Joe. I didn't expect to see you. Sonia said you were in hospital. (not 'Sonia said you are in hospital', because clearly he is not)

[image]

Joe said you were in hospital.

JOE

Etc

TELL SOMEBODY

SAY

Say and tell

If you say who somebody is talking to, use tell:

Sonia told me that you were in hospital, (not Sonia said me) O What did you tell the police? (not say the police)

Otherwise use say:

Sonia said that you were in hospital, (not Sonia told that...) What did you say?

But you can 'say something to somebody':

C Ann said goodbye to me and left, (not Ann said me goodbye) C What did you say to the police?

Tell/ask somebody to do something

We also use the infinitive (to do / to be etc.) in reported speech, especially with tell and ask (for orders and requests):

C direct 'Drink plenty of water,' the doctor said to me. reported The doctor told me to drink plenty of water. direct 'Don't be late,' I said to Joe. reported I told Joe not to be late. C direct 'Can you help me, please,' Jackie said to me. reported Jackie asked me to help her.

You can also say 'Somebody said (not) to do something':

O Paul said not to worry about him. (but not Paul said me)

[image]

Reported speech 1 « ♦ Unit 47 Reported questions Unit 50B

Exercises

Here are some things that Sarah said to you:

[image]

[image]

've never been to the United States

[image]

I don't have any brothers or sisters.^

[image]

I don't like fish.^ ^Jane has a very well-paid job/)

[image]

'm working tomorrow evening/) Qane is a friend of mine.^

[image]

But later Sarah says something different to you. What do you say? Sarah

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

Dave works very hard. Let's have fish for dinner. I'm going to buy a car.
Jane is always short of money.

My sister lives in Paris, think New York is a great place. Let's go out
tomorrow evening. I've never spoken to Jane.

But Ljou saiA He was Uizy But

A.

You

[image]

Complete the sentences with say or tell (in the correct form). Use only one
word each time.

1 Ann sojA goodbye to me and left.

2 us about your holiday. Did you have a nice time?

3 Don't just stand there! something!

4 I wonder where Sue is. She she would be here at 8 o'clock.

5 Dan me that he was bored with his job.

6 The doctor that I should rest for at least a week.

7 Don't anybody what I . It's a secret just between us.

8 'Did she you what happened?' 'No, she didn't anything to me.'

9 Gary couldn't help me. He me to ask Chris.

10 Gary couldn't help me. He to ask Chris.

[image]

The following sentences are direct speech:

0

Don't wait for me if I'm late

[image]

[image]

^Mind your own bus

[image]

Don't worry, Sue.^

^ H urry up!

[image]

^Can you open your bag, please?^ ^Could you get me a paper?^

Will you marry me?) ^Do you think you could give me a hand, Tom?^

Now choose one of these to complete each of the sentences below. Use reported speech.

1 Will was taking a long time to get ready, so I toUi bum to hurry up

2 Sarah was driving too fast, so I asked

3 Sue was nervous about the situation. I told

4 I couldn't move the piano alone, so I

5 The security guard looked at me suspiciously and

6 Tom was going to the shop, so I

7 The man started asking me personal questions, so

8 John was in love with Marianne, so he

9 I didn't want to delay Helen, so I

-» Additional exercise 25 (page 316)

Unit

49 4 Questions 1

98

[image]

But do not use do/does/did if who/what etc. is the subject of the sentence.
Compare:

who object

Emma phoned somebody

object

Who did Emma phone?

subject

who subject

somebody phoned Emma. Who phoned Emma?

In these examples, who/what etc. is the subject:

D Who wants something to eat? (not Who does want)

What happened to you last night? (not What did happen) How many people came to the meeting? (not did come) C Which bus goes to the centre? (not does go)

Note the position of prepositions in questions beginning Who/What/Which/Where ... ? : Who do you want to speak to? What was the weather like yesterday?

O Which job has Tina applied for? O Where are you from?

You can use preposition + whom in formal style: Q To whom do you wish to speak?

Isn't it... ? / Didn't you ... ? etc. (negative questions)

We use negative questions especially to show surprise:

Didn't you hear the doorbell? I rang it three times.

or when we expect the listener to agree with us:

'Haven't we met before?' 'Yes, I think we have.'

Don't you want to go?

Note the meaning of yes and no in answers to negative questions:

Yes. (= Yes, I want to go) No. (= No, I don't want to go)

Note the word order in negative questions beginning Why ... ? : Why don't we eat out tonight? (not Why we don't eat) Why wasn't Emma at work yesterday? (not Why Emma wasn't)

Questions 2 -> Unit 50 Question tags (do you ? isn't it? etc.) -* Unit 52

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Ask Joe questions. (Look at his answers before you write the questions.)

Sn

1 2 3 4

6 7 8

(where / live?) Where do you live? (born there?)

(married?)

(how long / married?)

(children?)

(how old / they?) (what / do?) (what / wife / do?)

In Manchester. No, I was born in London. Yes.

17 years.

Yes, two boys.

12 and 15. I'm a journalist. She's a doctor.

[image]

[image]

Make questions with who or what.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

Somebody hit me. I hit somebody. Somebody paid the bill. Something happened. Diane said something. This book belongs to somebody. Somebody lives in that house. I fell over something. Something fell off the shelf. This word means something, borrowed the money from somebody. I'm worried about something.

A.

Who hit you?

Who did you hit?

Who

What

J

[image]

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

Put the words in brackets in the correct order. All the sentences are questions.

1 (when / was / built / this house) When was this house built?. how / cheese / is / made)

when / invented / the computer / was)

why / Sue / working / isn't / today)

what time / coming / your friends / are)

why / was / cancelled / the trip)

where / your mother / was / born)

why / you / to the party / didn't / come) how / the accident / did / happen)

why / this machine / doesn't / work)

^ J| Write negative questions from the words in brackets. In each situation you are surprised.

1 a: We won't see Lisa this evening.

b: Why not? (she / not / come / out with us?) \M% she coming out with us?

2 a: I hope we don't meet Luke tonight.

b: Why? (you / not / like / him?)

3 a: Don't go and see that film. b: Why not? (it / not / good?)

4 a: I'll have to borrow some money.

b: Why? (you / not / have / any?) ...

Unit Questions 2 (Do you know where ... ? / 50 He asked me where ...)

Do you know where ... ? / I don't know why ... / Could you tell me what... ?
etc. We say: Where has Tom gone?

but Do you know where Tom has gone? (not Do you know where has Tom gone?)

When the question (Where has Tom gone?) is part of a longer sentence (Do you know ... ? / I don't know ... / Can you tell me ... ? etc.), the word order changes. We say:

O What time is it? but Do you know what time it is?

Who are those people? I don't know who those people are.

Where can I find Louise? Can you tell me where I can find Louise?

How much will it cost? Do you have any idea how much it will cost?

Be careful with do/does/did questions. We say:

What time does the film start? but Do you know what time the film starts?

(not does the film start) What do you mean? Please explain what you mean.

Why did she leave early? I wonder why she left early.

[image]

Use if or whether where there is no other question word (what, why etc.):

Did anybody see you? but Do you know if anybody saw you?

or ... whether anybody saw you?

He asked me where ... (reported questions)

The same changes in word order happen in reported questions. Compare: 0 direct The police officer said to us 'Where are you going ?'

reported The police officer asked us where we were going .

direct Clare said 'What time do the banks close ?'

reported Clare wanted to know what time the banks closed . In reported speech the verb usually changes to the past (were, closed etc.). See Unit 47.

Study these examples. You had an interview for a job and these were some of the questions the

interviewer asked you: / * 7 ~ 7. ~ ~ T T \ A . , , . T ~ c T . . , \

J (Are you willing to travel? J (Why did you apply for the job? J

^Wh a t do you do in your spare time? ^ ^Canyou speak any other languages?" ^

How long have you been | \N

working in your present job? J f Do you have a driving licence?)

Later you tell a friend what the interviewer asked you. You use reported speech:

She asked if (or whether) I was willing to travel.

She wanted to know what I did in my spare time. D She asked how long I had been working in my present job. □ She asked why I had applied for the job. (or ... why I applied) Q She wanted to know if (or whether) I could speak any other languages. O She asked if (or whether) I had a driving licence.

^Reported speech -> Units 47-48 J

[image]

Exercises

[image]

Which is right? Tick (/) the correct alternative.

1 a Do you know what time the film starts? v/ b Do you know what time does the film start? c do you know what time starts the film?

a b c

a b c

Why Amy does get up so early every day? Why Amy gets up so early every day? Why does Amy get up so early every day?

I want to know what this word means. I want to know what does this word mean. I want to know what means this word.

7

4 a I can't remember where did I park the car. b I can't remember where I parked the car. c I can't remember where I did park the car.

8

a Why you didn't phone me yesterday?

b Why didn't you phone me yesterday?

c Why you not phoned me yesterday?

a Do you know where does Helen work?

b Do you know where Helen does work?

c Do you know where Helen works?

a How much it costs to park here?

b How much does it cost to park here?

c How much it does cost to park here?

a Tell me what you want,

b Tell me what you do want,

c Tell me what do you want.

Put the words in the correct order.

1 (don't / Tom / where / know / gone / has) I don't know where Tom has gone

2 3 4 5

7

(is / to the airport / far / it) How don't know where Tom has gone ?

(wonder / is/ how/old / Tom) I don't know where Tom has gone

(Lisa/on holiday/going/is) When don't know where Tom has gone ?

(tell / the post office / you / me / is / where)

Could ?

(in the accident / injured / anyone / don't / whether / know / was)

I

(what / tomorrow / know / time / will / arrive / you / you)

Do ?

[image]

You have been away for a while and have just come back to your home town. You meet Tony, a friend of yours. He asks you a lot of questions:

5

^ ^How are you?

'why did you come back?^

"where are you living?^

^Where have you been?"

^How long have you been

[image]

[image]

8

Tony

* Q're you glad to be back?^

Do you have any plans to go away again?^

^What are you doing now?

^Can you help me find a job?^J

Now you tell another friend what Tony asked you. Use reported speech.

1 He asked me how I was.

2 He asked me

3 He

4

5

6

7

8

9

Additional exercise 25 (page 316)

Unit Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) 51 I think so / I hope so etc.

[image]

In each of these sentences there is an auxiliary verb and a main verb:

In these examples have/can't/was/do are auxiliary (= helping) verbs.

You can use an auxiliary verb when you don't want to repeat something:

O 'Have you locked the door?' 'Yes, I have.' (= I have locked the door) C

Gary wasn't working, but Laura was. (= Laura was working)

Jessica could lend me the money, but she won't. (= she won't lend me the money)

Use do/does/did for the present and past simple:

G 'Do you like onions?' 'Yes, I do.' (= I like onions)

'Does Simon live in London?' 'He did, but he doesn't any more.'

You can use auxiliary verbs to deny what somebody says (= say it is not true):

D 'You're sitting in my place.' 'No, I'm not.' (= I'm not sitting in your place)

'You didn't lock the door before you left.' 'Yes, I did.' (= I locked the door)

We use have you? / isn't she? / do they? etc. to show interest in what somebody has said, or to show surprise:

3 'I've just seen Stephen.' 'Oh, have you? How is he?'

'Lisa isn't very well today.' 'Oh, isn't she? What's wrong with her?' □ 'It rained every day during our holiday.' 'Did it? What a shame!'

'James and Tanya are getting married.' 'Are they? Really?'

We use auxiliary verbs with so and neither:

O 'I'm tired.' 'So am I.' (= I'm tired too)

O 'I never read newspapers.' 'Neither do I.' (= I never read newspapers either) O Sarah hasn't got a car and neither has Mark.

Note the word order after so and neither (verb before subject): I passed the exam and so did Paul, (not so Paul did)

Instead of neither, you can use nor. You can also use not... either:

'I don't know.' 'Neither do I.' or 'Nor do I.' or 'I don't either.'

I think so / I hope so etc.

After some verbs we use so when we don't want to repeat something:

O 'Are those people Korean?' 'I think so.' (= I think they are Korean) O
'Will you be at home this evening?' 'I expect so. (= I expect I'll be at home
...)' 'Do you think Kate has been invited to the party?' 'I suppose so.'

In the same way we say: I hope so, I guess so and I'm afraid so.

The usual negative forms are: I think so / I expect so I hope so / I'm afraid
so / I guess so I suppose so

'Is that woman American?' 'I think so. / I don't think so.'

'Do you think it will rain?' 'I hope so. / I hope not.' (not I don't hope so)

—*

—>

I don't think so / I don't expect so I hope not / I'm afraid not / I guess not I
don't suppose so or I suppose not

102

American English -* Appendix 7

j

Exercises

[image]

Complete each sentence with an auxiliary verb (do/was/could etc.).
Sometimes the verb must be negative (don't/wasn't etc.).

1 I wasn't tired, but my friends were .

2 I like hot weather, but Ann

3 'Is Andy here?' 'He five minutes ago, but I think he's gone home now.'

4 Liz said she might call me later this evening, but I don't think she

5 'Are you and Chris coming to the party?' 'I , but Chris

6 I don't know whether to apply for the job or not. Do you think I ?

7 'Please don't tell anybody what I said.' 'Don't worry. I

8 'You never listen to me.' 'Yes, I !'

9 I thought it was going to rain, but it

10 'Please help me.' 'I'm sorry. I if I , but I

[image]

You never agree with Sue. Answer in the way shown.

1 2 3 4 5 6

[image]

Sue

I'm hungry. I'm not tired. I like football. I didn't enjoy the film. I've never been to Australia, thought the exam was easy.

Are you? I'm not. Aren't you? I oum

You

[image]

You are talking to Tina. If you're in the same position as Tina, reply with So ... or Neither as in the first example. Otherwise, ask questions as in the second example.

1

2 3 4 5 6 7

[image]

[image]

Tina

I'm tired. I work hard. I watched television last night. I won't be at home tomorrow.

I like reading. I read a lot. I'd like to live somewhere else. I can't go out tonight.

So cum I.

Do you? WHat do you do?

[image]

You

[image]

In these conversations, you are B. Read the information in brackets and then answer with I think so, I hope not etc.

1 (You don't like rain.)

a: Is it going to rain? b: (hope) I n °pe not.

2 (You need more money quickly.)

a: Do you think you'll get a pay rise soon? b: (hope)

3 (You think Katherine will probably get the job that she applied for.)

a: Do you think Katherine will get the job? b: (expect)

4 (You're not sure whether Amy is married - probably not.) a: Is Amy married? b: (think)

5 (You are the receptionist at a hotel. The hotel is full.) a: Have you got a room for tonight? b: (afraid)

6 (You're at a party. You have to leave early.)

a: Do you have to leave already? b: (afraid)

7 (Ann normally works every day, Monday to Friday. Tomorrow is Wednesday.) a: Is Ann working tomorrow? b: (suppose)

8 (You are going to a party. You can't stand John.)

a: Do you think John will be at the party? b: (hope)

9 (You're not sure what time the concert is - probably 7.30.) a: Is the concert at 7.30? b: (think)

Question tags (do you? isn't it? etc.)

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

104

Study these examples:

You haven't seen Lisa today, have you?

—vr

[image]

[image]

It was a good film, wasn't it?

[image]

Yes, it was great/)

Have you? and wasn't it? are question tags (= mini-questions that we often put on the end of a sentence in spoken English). In question tags, we use an auxiliary verb (have/was/will etc.). We use do/does/did for the present and past simple (see Unit 51):

O 'Karen plays the piano, doesn't she?' 'Well, yes, but not very well.' 'You didn't lock the door, did you?' 'No, I forgot.'

Normally we use a negative question tag after a positive sentence:

... and a positive question tag after a negative sentence:

positive sentence + Kate will be here soon, There was a lot of traffic, Joe should pass the exam,

negative tag won't she? wasn't there? shouldn't he?

negative sentence + positive tag

Kate won't be late, will she?

They don't like us, do they?

You haven't eaten yet, have you?

Notice the meaning of yes and no in answer to a negative sentence:

Yes. (= Yes, I am going out)

You're not going out today, are you?

No. (= No, I am not going out)

The meaning of a question tag depends on how you say it. If your voice goes down, you are not really asking a question; you are only inviting the listener to agree with you: □ 'It's a nice day, isn't it?' 'Yes, beautiful.'

O 'Paul doesn't look well today, does he?' 'No, he looks very tired.'

'Lisa's very funny. She's got a great sense of humour, hasn't she?' 'Yes, she has.'

But if the voice goes up, it is a real question:

'You haven't seen Lisa today, have you?' 'No, I haven't.' (= Have you by chance seen Lisa today?)

You can use a negative sentence + positive tag to ask for things or information, or to ask somebody to do something. The voice goes up at the end of the tag in sentences like these:

O 'You haven't got a pen, have you?' 'Yes, here you are.'

O 'You couldn't do me a favour, could you?' 'It depends what it is.'

Q 'You don't know where Karen is, do you?' 'Sorry, I have no idea.'

After Let's ... , the question tag is shall we:

Let's go for a walk, shall we? (the voice goes up)

After Don't... , the question tag is will you:

Don't be late, will you? (the voice goes down)

After I'm ... , the negative question tag is aren't I (= am I not): I'm right, aren't I? 'Yes, you are.'

Auxiliary verbs (have/do/can etc.) -> Unit 51

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Put a question tag on the end of these sentences.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18

3\

Kate won't be late, wR. she ?

You're tired, aren't you ?

You travel a lot, ?

You weren't listening, ?

Sarah doesn't know Ann, ?

Jack's on holiday, ?

Kate's been to China before, ?

You can speak German, ?

They won't mind if I take a photo, ?

There are a lot of people here, ?

Let's go out tonight, ?

This isn't very interesting, ?

I'm too impatient, ?

You wouldn't tell anyone, ?

Ann has lived here a long time, ?

I shouldn't have lost my temper, ?

He'd never met her before, ?

Don't drop that vase, ?

A.

No, she's never late. Yes, a little. Yes, I love travelling. Yes, I was! No, they've never met. Yes, he's in Australia. Yes, two or three times. Yes, but not fluently. No, of course they won't. Yes, more than I expected. Yes, that would be great. No, not really. Yes, you are sometimes. No, of course not. Yes, 20 years. No, but that's all right. No, that was the first time. Don't worry. I won't.

[image]

[image]

Read the situation and write a sentence with a question tag. In each situation you are asking your friend to agree with you.

1 You look out of the window. The sky is blue and the sun is shining. What do you say to your friend? (beautiful day) It's a beautiful day, isn't it?

2 You're with a friend outside a restaurant. You're looking at the prices, which are very high. What do you say? (expensive) It

3 You and a colleague have just finished a training course. You really enjoyed it. What do you say to your colleague? (great) The course

4 Your friend's hair is much shorter than when you last met. What do you say to her/him? (have / your hair / cut) You

5 You and a friend are listening to a woman singing. You like her voice very much. What do you say to your friend? (a good voice) She

6 You are trying on a jacket in a shop. You look in the mirror and you don't like what you see. What do you say to your friend? (not / look / very good)

It

7 You and a friend are walking over a small wooden bridge. The bridge is very old and some parts are broken. What do you say? (not / very safe)

This bridge

In these situations you are asking for information, asking people to do things etc.

1 You need a pen. Perhaps Jane has got one. Ask her. Jane, you haven't got a pen, have you?

2 You have to move a heavy table. You want Joe to give you a hand with it. Ask him. Joe, you

3 You're looking for Sarah. Perhaps Kate knows where she is. Ask her. Kate, you

4 You need a bicycle pump. Perhaps Helen has got one. Ask her. Helen,

5 Ann has a car and you need a lift to the station. Perhaps she'll take you. Ask her.

Ann,

6 You're looking for your keys. Perhaps Robert has seen them. Ask him.

Robert,

Verb + -ing (enjoy doing / stop doing etc.)

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Look at these examples:

D I enjoy reading, (not I enjoy to read)

Would you mind closing the door?

(not mind to close) D Chris suggested going to the cinema.

(not suggested to go)

After enjoy, mind and suggest, we use -ing (not to Some more verbs that are followed by -ing:

Would you mind closing the door?

Suddenly everybody stopped talking. There was silence. O I'll do the shopping when I've finished cleaning the flat. D He tried to avoid answering my question.

I don't fancy going out this evening. (= I'm not enthusiastic about it) O

Have you ever considered going to live in another country? D They said they were innocent. They denied doing anything wrong.

The negative form is not -ing:

O When I'm on holiday, I enjoy not having to get up early.

We also use -ing after:

[image]

give up (= stop) put off (= postpone) go on or carry on (= continue) keep or keep on (= do something continuously or repeatedly)

O I've given up reading newspapers. I think it's a waste of time.

Catherine doesn't want to retire. She wants to go on working, (or ... to carry on working.) O You keep interrupting when I'm talking! or You keep on interrupting ...

With some verbs you can use the structure verb + somebody + -ing: □ I can't imagine George riding a motorbike. O You can't stop me doing what I want. O Did you really say that? I don't remember you saying that. O 'Sorry to keep you waiting so long.' 'That's all right.'

Note the passive form (being done/seen/kept etc.):

O I don't mind being kept waiting. (= I don't mind people keeping me ...)

When you are talking about finished actions, you can say having done/ stolen/said etc.: O They admitted having stolen the money.

But it is not necessary to use having (done). You can also say: O They admitted stealing the money. D I now regret saying (or having said) what I said.

After some of the verbs on this page (especially admit/deny/suggest) you can also use that... They denied that they had stolen the money, (or They denied stealing ...) O Chris suggested that we went to the cinema, (or Sam suggested going ...)

Suggest Unit 34 Being done (passive) -* Unit 44B Verb + to ... -* Unit 54

Verb + to ... and -ing Units 55C, 56-58 Remember / regret / go on H> Unit 56B Co on / carry on / keep on H> Unit 141A

Exercises

Complete the sentences for each situation using -ing.

1 (what shall we do? ^^ /we could go to the zoo.) S ^Jf W fe

2 (Do you want to play tennisA ^ ffi^No, not really") He didn't fancy

She admitted

^ (\ou were driving too fast.X^ ^^^^ ^You're right. Sorry!)

4 /TT ••\j* ^ 7~~i P\ She suggested

(Let s go swimming, v^pr ^ _ Good idea! J &t>

(you broke the DVD playeT ^/^ ^ y^No, I didn't!^ He denied

[image]

[image]

[image]

6/7 ~~, . " A fl u N They didn't mind

(Can you wait a few minutes 7 Sure, no problem. J ^

Complete each sentence with one of the following verbs (in the correct form):

answer a PPy t> e forget listen live

lose make pay read try use

1 He tried to avoid cunsweurig my question.

2 Could you please stop so much noise?

3 I enjoy to music.

4 I considered for the job, but in the end I decided against it.

5 Have you finished the newspaper yet?

6 We need to change our routine. We can't go on like this.

7 I don't mind you my phone, but please ask me first.

8 My memory is getting worse. I keep things.

9 I've put off this bill so many times. I really must do it today.

10 What a stupid thing to do! Can you imagine anybody so stupid?

11 I've given up to lose weight - it's impossible.

12 If you gamble, you risk your money.

Complete the sentences so that they mean the same as the first sentence.

1 I can do what I want and you can't stop me. You can't stop me doing what I want.

2 It's not a good idea to travel during the rush hour.

It's better to avoid during the rush hour.

3 Shall we paint the kitchen next weekend instead of this weekend?

Shall we postpone until next weekend?

4 Could you turn the music down, please?

Would you mind, please?

5 Please don't interrupt all the time.

Would you mind all the time?

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use -ing.

1 She's a very interesting person. I always enjoy talking to her

2 I'm not feeling very well. I don't fancy

3 I'm afraid there aren't any chairs. I hope you don't mind

4 It was a beautiful day, so I suggested

5 It was very funny. I couldn't stop

6 My car isn't very reliable. It keeps

[image]

[image]

After these verbs you can use to ... (infinitive):

O It was late, so we decided to take a taxi home.

C Simon was in a difficult situation, so I agreed to help him.

How old were you when you learnt to drive? (or learnt how to drive) I
waved to Karen, but failed to attract her attention.

The negative is not to ...

O We decided not to go out because of the weather. O I promised not to be
late.

After some verbs to ... is not possible. For example, enjoy/think/suggest: □
I enjoy reading, (not enjoy to read)

Andy suggested meeting for coffee, (not suggested to meet) O Are you
thinking of buying a car? (not thinking to buy)

For verb + -ing, see Unit 53. For verb + preposition + -ing, see Unit 62.

After dare you can use the infinitive with or without to:

O I wouldn't dare to tell him. or I wouldn't dare tell him.

But after dare not (or daren't), you must use the infinitive without to: I
daren't tell him what happened, (not I daren't to tell him)

We also use to ... after:

seem appear tend pretend claim

For example:

D They seem to have plenty of money.

O I like Dan, but I think he tends to talk too much.

O Ann pretended not to see me when she passed me in the street.

There is also a continuous infinitive (to be doing) and a perfect infinitive (to have done): D I pretended to be reading the paper. (= I pretended that I was reading) You seem to have lost weight. (= it seems that you have lost weight) Joe seems to be enjoying his new job. (= it seems that he is enjoying it)

After some verbs you can use a question word (what/whether/how etc.) + to We use this structure especially after:

ask decide know remember forget explain learn understand

wonder

how where whether what

to get to go to apply to do?

to the station, for your holidays? for the job or not.

We asked Have you decided I don't know Do you understand

Also

show/tell/ask/advise/teach somebody what/how/where to do something: O
Can somebody show me how to use this camera? Ask Jack. He'll tell you
what to do.

Verb + -ing -fr Unit 53 Verb + object + to ... (want etc.) -fr Unit 55 Verb +
to ... and -ing -» Units 55C, 56-58

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences for these situations.

1 (Shall we get married? \ ^|§ j ^ /ves, let's.) They decided to get

[image]

(please help me. ^ ^ 3 (can I carry your bag for you ? ^ ^ j ^ , ^ / ^ No, thanks. I can manage.)

C ~ ~ . , i 1 (.., m , A ^ ^ She agreed

He offered

Let's meet at 8 o'clock \ @ > M VoiTfir ^ They arranged

[image]

[image]

5 (what's your name? } > ^ j ^ ^ /I'm not going to tell you.) She refused

^ (please don't tell anyone. X ^ . Jjj ^ ^ • « ^ J won't- I promise.) ^ e P rorn ' sec '

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete each sentence with a suitable verb.

1 Don't forget to Lock the door when you go out.

2 There was a lot of traffic, but we managed to the airport in time.

3 We couldn't afford in London. It's too expensive.

4 We've got new computer software in our office. I haven't learnt it yet.

5 Mark doesn't know what happened. I decided not him.

6 We were all afraid to speak. Nobody dared anything.

Put the verb into the correct form, to ... or -ing. (See Unit 53 for verbs + -ing.)

1 When I'm tired, I enjoy v^a±chmq television. It's relaxing, (watch)

2 I've decided for another job. I need a change, (look)

3 Let's get a taxi. I don't fancy home, (walk)

4 I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind (wait)

5 Tina ran in a marathon last week, but she failed (finish)

6 I wish that dog would stop . It's driving me crazy, (bark)

7 Our neighbour threatened the police if we didn't stop the noise, (call)

8 We were hungry, so I suggested dinner early, (have)

9 Hurry up! I don't want to risk the train, (miss)

10 They didn't know I was listening to them. I pretended asleep, (be)

Make a new sentence using the verb in brackets.

1 You've lost weight. (seem) Yow seem to have Lost weight.

2 Tom is worried about something, (appear) Tom appears

3 You know a lot of people. (seem) You

4 My English is getting better. (seem)

5 That car has broken down. (appear)

6 David forgets things. (tend)

7 They have solved the problem. (claim)

Complete each sentence using what/how/where/whether + these verbs: do
^gst- go put ride use

1 Do you know ho^o to get to John's house?

2 Would you know if there was a fire in the building?

3 You'll never forget a bicycle once you've learnt.

4 I've been invited to the party, but I haven't decided or not.

5 My room is very untidy. I've got so many things and I don't know them.

6 I have some clothes to wash. Can you show me the washing machine?

Additional exercises 26-28 (pages 317-19)

Verb (+ object) + to ... (I want you to ... etc.)

want ask help would like

expect beg mean (= intend) would prefer

These verbs are followed by to ... (infinitive). The structure can be:

verb + to ... or verb + object + to ...

□ We expected to be late. We expected Dan to be late.

J Would you like to go now? J He doesn't want to know.

Would you like me to go now?

He doesn't want anybody to know.

Do not say 'want that':

O Do you want me to come with you? (not Do you want that I come)

After help you can use the infinitive with or without to. So you can say:

Can you help me to move this table? or Can you help me move this table?

These verbs have the structure verb + object + to ... O Can you remind me to call Sam tomorrow? O Who taught you to drive?

I didn't move the piano by myself. I got somebody to help me. O Joe said the switch was dangerous and warned me not to touch it.

In the next example, the verb is passive (I was warned / we were told etc.):
□ I was warned not to touch the switch.

You cannot use suggest with the structure verb + object + to ...

Jane suggested that I ask your advice, (not Jane suggested me to ask)

After advise and allow, two structures are possible. Compare:

verb + -ing (without an object)

I wouldn't advise staying in that hotel.

Q They don't allow parking in front of the building.

Study these examples with (be) allowed (passive): Parking isn't allowed in front of the building.

Make and let

verb + object + to ...

I wouldn't advise anybody to stay in that hotel.

They don't allow people to park in front of the building.

You aren't allowed to park in front of the building.

These verbs have the structure verb + object + infinitive (without to):

I made him promise that he wouldn't tell anybody what happened, (not to promise) Hot weather makes me feel tired. (= causes me to feel tired) Her parents wouldn't let her go out alone. (= wouldn't allow her to go out) O Let me carry your bag for you.

We say 'make somebody do' (not to do), but in the passive we say 'made to do' (with to): O We were made to wait for two hours. (= They made us wait...)

Suggest -¥ Units 34, 53 Tell/ask somebody to ... Unit 48D Verb + -ing -> Unit 53 Verb + to ... -> Unit 54 Verb + to ... and -ing -> Units 56-58 Help -> Unit 57C

J

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the questions. Use do you want me to ... ? or would you like me to ... ? with these verbs (+ any other necessary words):

come lend repeat show shut wait

1 Do you want to go alone, or do you want me to come with you ?

2 Do you have enough money, or do you want ?

3 Shall I leave the window open, or would you ?

4 Do you know how to use the machine, or would ?

5 Did you hear what I said, or do ?

6 Can I go now, or do ?

[image]

Complete the sentences for these situations.

1

1

Meet me at 10. the station. ^>

[image]

OK.

Why don't you come and stay with us?

[image]

That would be

nice.^

She told Hum to meet h er ah th e station

They invited him

^Don't forget to call Joe.^y ffi- Jsje <^No, I won't forget)

, ^ ^Don't worry. I wilt)

[image]

He reminded her

She warned

f Can you give me a hand?V^^l^v l^^/sure. J

He asked

[image]

Complete each second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first sentence.

1 My father said I could use his car.

2 I was surprised that it rained.

3 Don't stop him doing what he wants.

4 Tim looks older when he wears glasses.

5 I think you should know the truth.

6 At first I didn't want to apply for the job, but Sarah persuaded me.

7 My lawyer said I shouldn't say anything to the police.

8 I was told that I shouldn't believe everything he says.

9 If you've got a car, you are able to get around more easily

My father allowed I didn't expect Let

Tim's glasses make

I want

Sarah persuaded

me to use his car.

My lawyer advised

was warned

Having a car enables

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form: infinitive (do/make/eat etc.), to + infinitive, or -ing.

1 They don't allow people to park j n front of the building, (park)

2 I've never been to Hong Kong, but I'd like there, (go)

3 I'm in a difficult position. What do you advise me ? (do)

4 The film was very sad. It made me . (cry)

5 Lisa's parents always encouraged her hard at school, (study)

6 If you want to get a cheap flight, I'd advise early, (book)

7 Sarah wouldn't let me her car. She doesn't trust me. (borrow)

8 If you enter a country with a tourist visa, you are normally not allowed there, (work)

9 'I don't think Alex likes me.' 'What makes you that?' (think)

-> Additional exercises 26-28 (pages 317-19)

Unit

56 Verb + -ing or to ... 1 (remember/regret etc.)

Some verbs are followed by -ing and some are followed by to ...

[image]

112

Some verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... with a difference of meaning:
remember

The following verbs can be followed by -ing or to ... with no difference of meaning: begin start continue intend bother

So you can say:

G It started raining, or It started to rain. O Andy intends buying a house, or Andy intends to buy ... Don't bother locking the door, or Don't bother to lock ...

But normally we do not use -ing after -ing:

O It's starting to rain, (not It's starting raining)

Verb +-ingUnit 53 Verb + to

Units 54-55 Other verbs + -ing or to ... Units 57-58

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, -ing or to

1 They denied stealing the money, (steal)

2 I don't enjoy very much, (drive)

3 I can't afford out tonight. I don't have enough money, (go)

4 Has it stopped yet? (rain)

5 We were unlucky to lose the game. We deserved (win)

6 Why do you keep me questions? Can't you leave me alone? (ask)

7 Please stop me questions! (ask)

8 I refuse any more questions, (answer)

9 The driver of one of the cars admitted the accident, (cause)

10 Mark needed our help, and we promised what we could, (do)

11 I don't mind alone, but it's better to be with other people, (be)

12 The wall was quite high, but I managed over it. (climb)

13 'Does Sarah know about the meeting?' 'No, I forgot her.' (tell)

14 I've enjoyed to you. I hope you again soon, (talk, see)

Tom can remember some things about his childhood, but he can't remember others. Complete the sentences.

1 He was in hospital when he was a small child. He can still remember this.

He am remember being in hospital when he was a small child.

2 He went to Paris with his parents when he was eight. He remembers this.

He remembers with his parents

when he was eight.

3 He cried on his first day at school. He doesn't remember this.

He doesn't on his first day at school.

4 Once he fell into the river. He can remember this. He

5 He said he wanted to be a doctor. He can't remember this.

to be a doctor.

6 Once he was bitten by a dog. He doesn't remember this.

a dog.

[image]

Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to
Sometimes either form is possible.

1 a Please remember to Lock the door when you go out. b a: You lent me
some money a few months ago.

b: Did I? Are you sure? I don't remember you any money,

c a: Did you remember your sister?

b: Oh no, I completely forgot. I'll phone her tomorrow, d When you see
Steve, remember hello to him from me.

e Someone must have taken my bag. I clearly remember it by the window
and now it has gone.

2 a I believe that what I said was right. I don't regret it.

b I knew they were in trouble, but I regret I did nothing to help them,

c It started to get cold, and he regretted not his coat.

3 a Ben joined the company nine years ago. He became assistant manager after two years, and a

few years later he went on manager of the company.

b I can't go on here any more. I want a different job.

c When I came into the room, Lisa was reading a newspaper. She looked up and said hello, and

then went on her newspaper.

4 a If the company continues money, the factory may be closed, b Julia has been ill, but now she's beginning better.

c The baby started in the middle of the night.

•# Additional exercises 26-28 (pages 317-19)

Unit

57 Verb + -ing or to ... 2 (try/need/help)

Try to ... and try -ing

Try to do = attempt to do, make an effort to do:

I was very tired. I tried to keep my eyes open, but I couldn't. O Please try to be quiet when you come home. Everyone will be asleep.

Try also means 'do something as an experiment or test'. For example: O These cakes are delicious. You should try one.

(= you should have one to see if you like it) D We couldn't find anywhere to stay. We tried every hotel in the town, but they were all full. (= we went to every hotel to see if they had a room)

If try (with this meaning) is followed by a verb, we say try -ing: C a: The photocopier doesn't seem to be working. b: Try pressing the green button.

(= press the green button - perhaps this will help to solve the problem)

Compare:

□ I tried to move the table, but it was too heavy, (so I couldn't move it)

I didn't like the way the furniture was arranged, so I tried moving the table to the other side of the room. But it didn't look right, so I moved it back again.

Need to ... and need -ing

I need to do something = it is necessary for me to do it: O I need to get more exercise.

He needs to work harder if he wants to make progress O I don't need to come to the meeting, do I?

Something needs doing = it needs to be done: C My phone needs charging.

(= it needs to be charged) O Do you think this jacket needs cleaning?

(= ... needs to be cleaned)

It's a difficult problem. It needs thinking about very carefully. (= it needs to be thought about)

f My phone needs charging, j

— —

[image]

Help and can't help

You can say help to do or help do (with or without to): O Everybody helped to clean up after the party, or

Everybody helped clean up ... O Can you help me to move this table? or

Can you help me move ...

I can't help doing something = I can't stop myself doing it:

I don't like him, but he has a lot of problems. I can't help feeling sorry for him. □ She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help laughing. (= she couldn't stop herself laughing) I'm sorry I'm so nervous. I can't help it. (= I

can't help being nervous)

[image]

She couldn't help laughing.

Verb + -ing ■+ Unit 53 Verb +to ... -# Units 54-55 Other verbs + -ing or to ... -> Units 56, 58

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Make suggestions. Use try + one of the following:

phone his office restart it change the batteries

turn it the other way take an aspirin

1

2 3 4 5

The radio isn't working. I can't open the door. The key

won't turn. The computer isn't working

properly.

Fred isn't answering his phone.

What shall I do? I've got a terrible headache. I wish it would go.

Have you tried changing the batteries?

Try

Have you tried

You could

Have you

/L

[image]

For each picture, write a sentence with need(s) + one of the following verbs: clean cut empty paint tighten

[image]

1 This jacket is dirty. It needs cleaning.

2 The room isn't very nice. It

3 The grass is very long

4 The screws are loose

5 The bin is full.

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form.

1 a I was very tired. I tried to keep (keep) my eyes open, but I couldn't.

b I rang the doorbell, but there was no answer. Then I tried (knock)

on the door, but there was still no answer, c We tried (put) the fire out but without success. We had to call the

fire brigade.

d Sue needed to borrow some money. She tried (ask) Gary, but he was short of money too.

e I tried (reach) the shelf, but I wasn't tall enough.

f Please leave me alone. I'm trying (concentrate).

2 a I need a change. I need (go) away for a while, b My grandmother isn't able to look after herself any more. She needs

(look) after.

c The windows are dirty. They need (clean).

d Your hair is getting very long. It needs (cut), e You don't need (iron) that shirt. It doesn't need (iron).

3 a They were talking very loudly. I couldn't help (overhear) what they said.

b Can you help me (get) the dinner ready?

c He looks so funny. Whenever I see him, I can't help (smile).

d The fine weather helped (make) it a really nice holiday.

Verb + -ing or to ... 3 (like / would like etc.)

Like / love / hate

When you talk about repeated actions, you can use -ing or to ... after these verbs. So you can say:

O Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?

O Stephanie hates flying, or Stephanie hates to fly.

O I love meeting people, or I love to meet people.

C I don't like being kept waiting, or ... like to be kept waiting.

O I don't like friends calling me at work, or ... friends to call me at work.

but

(1) We use -ing (notto ...) when we talk about a situation that already exists (or existed). For example:

Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes living there. (He likes living in Berlin = He lives there and he likes it)

0 Do you like being a student? (You are a student-do you like it?)

The office I worked in was horrible. I hated working there. (I worked there and I hated it)

(2) There is sometimes a difference between I like to do and I like doing:

I like doing something = I do it and I enjoy it: C I like cleaning the kitchen. (= I enjoy it.)

I like to do something = I think it is a good thing to do, but I don't necessarily enjoy it: Z It's not my favourite job, but I like to clean the kitchen as often as possible.

Note that enjoy and mind are always followed by -ing (notto ...): D I enjoy cleaning the kitchen, (not I enjoy to clean)

I don't mind cleaning the kitchen, (not I don't mind to clean)

Would like / would love / would hate / would prefer

Would like / would love etc. are usually followed by to ... I'd like (= I would like) to go away for a few days. Q Would you like to come to dinner on Friday? I wouldn't like to go on holiday alone. I'd love to meet your family. Would you prefer to have dinner now or later?

Compare I like and I would like (I'd like):

O I like playing tennis. / I like to play tennis. (= I like it in general) O I'd like to play tennis today. (= I want to play today)

Would mind is always followed by -ing (notto ...): O Would you mind closing the door, please?

I would like to have done something = I regret now that I didn't or couldn't do it:

It's a shame we didn't see Anna when we were in London. I would like to have seen her

again.

C We'd like to have gone away, but we were too busy at home.

You can use the same structure after would love / would hate / would prefer: C Poor David! I would hate to have been in his position. O I'd love to have gone to the party, but it was impossible.

^Enjoy/mind -> Unit 53 Would like -> Units 37E, 55A Prefer -> Unit 59

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Write sentences about yourself. Say whether you like or don't like these activities. Choose one of these verbs for each sentence:

like / don't like love hate enjoy don't mind

1 (fly) I don't Like -flying. or I don't Like to fly.

2 (play cards)

3 (be alone)

4 (go to museums)

5 (cook)

[image]

Make sentences from the words in brackets. Use -ing or to Sometimes either form is possible.

1 Paul lives in Berlin now. It's nice. He likes it.

(he / like / live / there) He Wees Living there.

2 Jane is a biology teacher. She likes her job. (she / like / teach / biology)
She

3 Joe always has his camera with him and takes a lot of pictures, (he / like / take / pictures)

4 I used to work in a supermarket. I didn't like it much.

(I / not / like / work / there)

5 Rachel is studying medicine. She likes it.

(she / like / study / medicine)

6 Dan is famous, but he doesn't like it. (he / not / like / be / famous)

7 Jennifer is a very careful person. She doesn't take many risks, (she / not / like / take / risks)

8 I don't like surprises.

(I / like / know / things / in advance)

[image]

[image]

Complete each sentence with a verb in the correct form, -ing or to In one sentence either form is possible.

1 It's good to visit other places - I enjoy travelling

2 'Would you like down?' 'No, thanks. I'll stand.'

3 I'm not quite ready yet. Would you mind a little longer?

4 When I was a child, I hated to bed early.

5 When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried that I'll miss it. So I like to the station in plenty of time.

6 I enjoy busy. I don't like it when there's nothing to do.

7 I would love to your wedding, but I'm afraid it isn't possible.

8 I don't like in this part of town. I want to move somewhere else.

9 Do you have a minute? I'd like to you about something. 10 If there's bad news and good news, I like the bad news first.

Write sentences using would ... to have (done). Use the verbs in brackets.

1 It's a shame I couldn't go to the party, (like) ...J. would Like to have gone to ..tiii.e .party ,

2 It's a shame I didn't see the programme, (like)

3 I'm glad I didn't lose my watch, (hate)

4 It's too bad I didn't meet your parents, (love)

5 I'm glad I wasn't alone, (not / like)

6 It's a shame I couldn't travel by train, (prefer)

-¥ Additional exercises 26-28 (pages 317-19)

Unit

so

59 Prefer and would rather

Prefer to do and prefer doing

You can use 'prefer to (do)' or 'prefer -ing' to say what you prefer in general:

D I don't like cities. I prefer to live in the country, or I prefer living in the country.

Study the differences in structure after prefer. We say:

O I prefer this coat to the coat you were wearing yesterday.

O I prefer driving to travelling by train.

but O I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.

J Sarah prefers to live in the country rather than (live) in a city.

Would prefer (I'd prefer ...)

We use *would prefer* to say what somebody wants in a specific situation (not in general): O 'Would you prefer tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'

We say '*would prefer* to do something' (not usually *would prefer doing*):

Q 'Shall we go by train?' Yd *prefer* to drive.' (not I'd *prefer driving*) O I'd *prefer* to stay at home tonight rather than go to the cinema.

r %

O 'Shall we go by train?' j ,,

Would rather (I'd *rather* ..)

Would rather (do) = *would prefer* (to do). We use *would rather* + infinitive (without to). Compare:

Yd *prefer* to drive.' 'd *rather drive*.' (not to drive) 'Would you *rather* have tea or coffee?' 'Coffee, please.'

The negative is Yd *rather not* (do something)':

I'm tired. I'd *rather not* go out this evening, if you don't mind. O 'Do you want to go out this evening?' Yd *rather not*.'

We say '*would rather* do something than do something else': D I'd *rather* stay at home tonight than go to the cinema.

I'd *rather* somebody did something

We say Yd *rather* you did something' (not I'd *rather* you do). For example:

O 'Who's going to drive, you or me?' Yd *rather* you *drove*.' (= I would prefer this)

'Jack says he'll repair your bike tomorrow, OK?' Yd *rather* he *did* it today.'
O Are you going to tell Anna what happened, or would you *rather* I told her?

In this structure we use the past (*drove, did* etc.), but the meaning is present not past. Compare:

O I'd *rather* make dinner now.

I'd rather you made dinner now. (not I'd rather you make)

I'd rather you didn't (do something) = I'd prefer you not to do it: O I'd rather you didn't tell anyone what I said.

'Are you going to tell Anna what happened?' 'No. I'd rather she didn't know.' □ 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' Yd rather you didn't.'

Would prefer Unit 58B Prefer (one thing) to (another) -¥ Unit 136D

j

Exercises

Unit

59

[image]

Which do you prefer? Write sentences using 'I prefer (something) to (something else)'. Put the verb into the correct form where necessary.

1 (drive / travel by train)

I prefer driving to travelling by train.

2 (basketball/football)

I prefer

3 (go to the cinema / watch DVDs at home)

I to at home.

4 (be very busy / have nothing to do)

[image]

Now rewrite sentences 3 and 4 using the structure I l prefer to (do something)'.

5 (i) ! prefer to dri,ve rainer them travel by train.

6 (3) I prefer to

7 (4) _ ~ _ —

Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need one word, sometimes more.

Now use the same ideas to complete these sentences using **than** and **rather than**.

10 I'd rather get a taxi than walk home.

11 I'd prefer for a swim

12 I'd rather at home

13 I'd prefer about it for a while

14 I'd rather some music

[image]

Complete the sentences using **would you rather** I

1 Are you going to make dinner or would you rather I

2 Are you going to tell Anna what happened or would you rather

3 Are you going to do the shopping or

4 Are you going to phone Tanya or

???

[image]

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 'Shall I tell Anna what happened?' 'No, I'd rather she didn't know.'

2 Do you want me to go now or would you rather I here?

3 Do you want to go out this evening or would you rather at home?

4 This is a private matter. I'd rather you tell anybody else.

5 I don't want to make a decision without Jack and Sue. I'd rather they

6 a: Do you mind if I put some music on?

b: I'd rather you I'm trying to study.

here.

Additional exercises 27-28 (pages 318-19)

Unit

60 Preposition (in/for/about etc.) + -ing

[image]

If a preposition (in/for/about etc.) is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

[image]

[image]

120

You can also say 'instead of somebody doing something', 'fed up with people doing something' etc.: O I'm fed up with people telling me what to do.

Note the use of the following prepositions + -ing:

before -ing and after -ing:

Before going out, I phoned Sarah, (not Before to go out) C What did you do after finishing school? You can also say 'Before I went out ...' and '... after you finished school'.

by -ing (to say how something happens):

The burglars got into the house by breaking a window and climbing in. O You can improve your English by reading more. She made herself ill by

not eating properly. Many accidents are caused by people driving too fast.

without -ing:

We ran ten kilometres without stopping. O It was a stupid thing to say. I said it without thinking.

She needs to work without people disturbing her. (or ... without being disturbed.) C I have enough problems of my own without having to worry about yours.

To -ing (look forward to doing something etc.)

To is often part of the infinitive (to do / to see etc.): □ We decided to travel by train. O Would you like to meet for lunch tomorrow?

But to is also a preposition (like in/for/about/with etc.). For example: C We went from Paris to Geneva. O I prefer tea to coffee. O Are you looking forward to the weekend?

If a preposition is followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing: O I'm fed up with travelling by train. How about going away this weekend?

So, when to is a preposition and it is followed by a verb, you must say to -ing: O I prefer driving to travelling by train, (not to travel)

Are you looking forward to going on holiday? (not looking forward to go)

Be/get used to -ing -> Unit 61 Verb + preposition + -ing H> Unit 62

While/when -ing Unit 68B In spite of -I Unit 113 Prepositions -» Units 121-136

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 Why is it useful to have a car?

What are the advantages of Having a, car

2 I don't intend to apply for the job. I have no intention of

3 Helen has a good memory for names. Helen is good at

4 You probably won't win the lottery. You have little chance. You have little chance of

5 Did you get into trouble because you were late? Did you get into trouble for

6 We didn't eat at home. We went to a restaurant instead. Instead of

7 We got into the exhibition. We didn't have to queue. We got into the exhibition without

8 We played very well, but we lost the game. We lost the game despite

^^ Complete the sentences using by -ing. Use the following (with the verb in the correct form):

borrow too much money brook a window drive too fast

put some pictures on the walls stand on a chair turn a key

1 The burglars got into the house by breaking <v window

2 I was able to reach the top shelf

3 You start the engine of a car

4 Kevin got himself into financial trouble

5 You can put people's lives in danger

6 We made the room look nicer

Complete the sentences with a suitable word. Use only one word each time.

1 We ran ten kilometres without stopping .. .

2 He left the hotel without his bill.

3 It's a nice morning. How about for a walk?

4 We were able to translate the letter into English without a dictionary.

5 Before to bed, I like to have a hot drink.

6 It was a long trip. I was very tired after on a train for 36 hours.

7 I was annoyed because the decision was made without anybody me.

8 After the same job for ten years, I felt I needed a change.

9 We got lost because we went straight on instead of left. 10 I like these pictures you took. You're good at pictures.

For each situation, write a sentence with I'm (not) looking forward to.

1 You are going on holiday next week. How do you feel?

I'm Looking -forward to going on Holiday.

2 Kate is a good friend of yours and she is coming to visit you soon. So you will see her again soon. How do you feel? I'm

3 You are going to the dentist tomorrow. You don't enjoy going to the dentist. How do you feel? I'm not

4 Rachel hates school, but she's leaving next summer. How does she feel?

5 You've arranged to play tennis tomorrow. You haven't played for a while and you like tennis a lot. How do you feel?

-* Additional exercises 26-28 (pages 317-19)

[image]

Study this example situation:

[image]

Lisa is American, but she lives in Britain. When she first drove a car in Britain, she found it very difficult because she had to drive on the left, not on the right. Driving on the left was strange and difficult for her because:

KEEP LEFT

She wasn't used to it.

She wasn't used to driving on the left.

But after a lot of practice, driving on the left became less strange. So:

She got used to driving on the left.

Now it's no problem for Lisa: She is used to driving on the left.

I'm used to something = it is not new or strange for me:

Paul lives alone. He doesn't mind this because he has lived alone for 15 years. It is not strange for him. He is used to it. He is used to living alone.

I bought some new shoes. They felt a bit strange at first because I wasn't used to them. Our new apartment is on a very busy street. I expect we'll get used to the noise, but at the moment it's very disturbing.

Helen has a new job. She has to get up much earlier now than before - at 6.30. She finds this difficult because she isn't used to getting up so early.

Katherine's husband is often away from home. She doesn't mind this. She is used to him being away.

After be/get used you cannot use the infinitive (to do / to drive etc.). We say: O She is used to driving on the left, (nor She is used to drive)

When we say 'I am used to something', to is a preposition, not a part of the infinitive. So we say:

We're not used to the noise. / We're not used to it. O Paul is used to living alone, (not Paul is used to live) Q Lisa had to get used to driving on the left, (not get used to drive)

Do not confuse I am used to doing and I used to do:

I am used to (doing) something = it isn't strange or new for me: C I am used to the weather in this country.

I am used to driving on the left because I've lived in Britain a long time.

I used to do something = I did it regularly in the past but no longer do it.
You can use this only for the past, not for the present. (See Unit 18.)

The structure is 'I used to do' [not I am used to do]:

D I used to drive to work every day, but these days I usually go by bike. O
We used to live just outside the town, but now we live near the centre.

Used to (do) -> Unit 18 To + -ing -> Unit 60C

)

Exercises

Unit

61

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Look again at the situation in Section A on the opposite page ('Lisa is American ...'). The following situations are similar. Complete the sentences using used to.

1 Jack has to drive two hours to his work every morning. Many years ago, when he first had to do this, it was difficult for him. But now it's OK.

When Jack started working in this job, he wasn't driving

two hours to work every morning, but after some time he it. Now it's no problem for him. He two hours every morning.

2 Julia is a nurse. A year ago she started working nights. At first she found it hard and didn't like it.

She nights and it took her a few months

to it. Now, after a year, it's OK for her.

She nights.

What do you say in these situations? Use I'm (not) used to

1 You live alone. You don't mind this. You have always lived alone. friend:
Do you get lonely sometimes?

you: No, I'm used to living alone.

2 You sleep on the floor. You don't mind this. You have always slept on the floor. friend: Wouldn't you prefer to sleep in a bed?

you: No, I

3 You have to work long hours in your job. This is not a problem for you. You have always worked long hours.

friend: You have to work very long hours in your job, don't you? you: Yes, but I don't mind that. I

4 You usually go to bed early. Last night you went to bed very late (for you) and as a result you are very tired this morning.

friend: You look tired this morning.

you: Yes,

Read the situations and complete the sentences using get/got used to.

1 Some friends of yours have just moved into an apartment on a busy street. It is very noisy. They'll have to get used to the noise.

2 The children at school got a new teacher. She was different from the teacher before her, but this wasn't a problem for the children. They soon

3 Sue moved from a big house to a much smaller one. She found it strange at first. She had to

in a much smaller house.

4 Some people you know from Britain are going to live in your country.

What will they have to get used to?

They'll have to

Complete the sentences using only one word each time (see Section C).

1 Lisa had to get used to dxWmq 0 n the left.

2 Dan used to a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.

3 I feel very full after that meal. I'm not used to so much.

4 I wouldn't like to share an office. I'm used to my own office.

5 I used to a car, but I sold it a few months ago.

6 When we were children, we used to swimming very often.

7 There used to a school here, but it was knocked down a few years ago.

8 I'm the boss here! I'm not used to told what to do.

9 We used to in a village. We moved to London a few years ago and had to get

used to in a big city.

-> Additional exercises 26-28 (pages 317-19)

_nit Verb + preposition + -ing (succeed in -ing / 62 1 accuse somebody of -ing etc.)

Many verbs have the structure verb + preposition (in/for/about etc.) + object. For example:

verb + preposition + object

If the object is another verb, it ends in -ing:

You can also say 'approve of somebody doing something', 'look forward to somebody doing something' etc:

O I don't approve of people killing animals for fun.

O We are all looking forward to Andy coming home.

The following verbs can have the structure verb + object + preposition + -ing:

You can say 'stop somebody doing' or 'stop somebody from doing':

You can't stop me doing what I want, or You can't stop me from doing what I want.

The following examples are with not -ing:

O They accused us of not telling the truth.

O Excuse me for not replying to your email until now.

Some of these verbs are often used in the passive. For example: O We were accused of telling lies. O The general was suspected of being a spy.

Note that we say 'apologise to somebody for...':

O I apologised to them for keeping them waiting, (not I apologised them)

Decide to ... # Unit 54A Preposition + -ing Unit 60 Verb + preposition -> Units 132-136

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete each sentence using only one word.

1 Our neighbours apologised for making so much noise.

2 I feel lazy. I don't feel like any work.

3 I wanted to go out alone, but Joe insisted on with me.

4 Where are you thinking of your holiday this year?

5 We have decided against a car because we can't really afford it.

6 It's good Dan and Amy are coming to stay with us. I'm looking forward to them again.

7 Some parents don't approve of their children a lot of TV.

8 It took us a long time, but we finally succeeded in the problem.

9 I've always dreamed of a small house by the sea.

Complete each sentence using a preposition + one of the following verbs (in the correct form): be

interrupt

cause invite

do tell

eat use

escape walk

■ go-wear

1

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

Do you feel U^e going out this evening?

The driver of the other car accused me the accident.

There's a fence around the lawn to stop people on the grass.

Excuse me you, but may I ask you something?

The man who has been arrested is suspected a false passport.

I'm fed up with my job. I'm thinking something else.

The guards weren't able to prevent the prisoner

I didn't want to hear the story, but Dan insisted me.

I'm getting hungry. I'm really looking forward something.

I think you should apologise to Sue so rude to her.

I'm sorry I can't come to your party, but thank you very much me.

The police stopped the car because they suspected the driver not
a seat belt.

[image]

Complete the sentences on the right.

I

t

YOU

[image]

KEVIN

[image]

It was nice of you to help me. Thanks very much.

Kevin thanked me for helping hur>

[image]

[image]

TOM

[image]

I'll take you to the station. I insist.

Tom insisted Ann

[image]

I hear you got married. Congratulations!

Dan congratulated me

f

YOU

f

YOU

[image]

JENNY

[image]

[image]

KATE

[image]

JANE

It was nice of you to come to see me. Thank you.

I'm sorry I didn't phone earlier.

You're self

Jenny thanked

Kate apologised

Jane accused

-> Additional exercises 27-28 (pages 318-19)

Unit

63 .

Expressions + -ing

When these expressions are followed by a verb, the verb ends in -ing:

It's no use / It's no good ...

There's nothing you can do about the situation, so it's no use worrying about it. O It's no good trying to persuade me. You won't succeed.

There's no point in ...

C There's no point in having a car if you never use it. O There was no point in waiting any longer, so we left.

But we usually say 'the point of doing something':

O What's the point of having a car if you never use it?

J

It's (not) worth ...

I live only a short walk from here, so it's not worth taking a taxi. D Our flight was very early in the morning, so it wasn't worth going to bed.

You can say that a film is worth seeing, a book is worth reading etc.: □
What was the film like? Was it worth seeing?

D Thieves broke into the house, but didn't take anything. There was nothing worth stealing.

Have trouble -ing, have difficulty -ing etc.

Have trouble / difficulty / a problem doing something:

I had no trouble finding a place to stay, (not trouble to find)

Did you have any difficulty getting a visa?

People sometimes have problems reading my writing.

A

Spend time / waste time / be busy

spend/waste (time) doing something:

O He spent hours trying to repair the clock. O I waste a lot of time doing nothing.

(be) busy doing something:

She said she couldn't see me. She was too busy doing other things.

Go swimming / go fishing etc.

We use go -ing for a number of activities (especially sports). For example, you can say:

[image]

go sailing go swimming go fishing go skiing

go camping go surfing go scuba diving go jogging

go riding go hiking go sightseeing go shopping

How often do you go swimming? O I'd like to go skiing.

When was the last time you went shopping?

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Make sentences beginning There's no point....

1 Why have a car if you never use it?

There's no point in Having a car if you never use it.

2 Why work if you don't need money?

3 Don't try to study if you feel tired.

4 Why hurry if you've got plenty of time?

[image]

Complete the sentences on the right.

, ^ .

1 Shall we get a taxi home?

2 If you need help, why don't you

ask David?

I don't really want to go out

tonight. Shall I phone Lisa now?

Are you going to complain about what happened? Do you want to keep
these old

clothes?

No, it isn't far. It's not worth getting JkMsA

It's no use . He

won't be able to do anything.

Well, stay at home! There's no point

if you don't want to.

No, it's no good

now. She won't be at home.

No, it's not worth

Nobody will do anything about it. No, let's throw them away. They're not worth

[image]

Complete the sentences.

1 I managed to get a visa, but it was difficult. I had difficulty getting a. visa

2 I find it hard to remember people's names. I have a problem

3 Lucy managed to get a job. It wasn't a problem. She had no trouble

4 It won't be difficult to get a ticket for the game. You won't have any problem

5 Do you find it difficult to understand him?

Do you have difficulty

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use only one word each time.

1 I waste a lot of time doingnothing.

Every morning I spend about an hour the newspaper.

'What's Karen doing?' 'She's going away tomorrow, so she's busy

I think you waste too much time TV.

There's a beautiful view from that hill. It's worth to the top.

[image]

6 Just stay calm. There's no point in angry.

Complete these sentences with the following (with the verb in the correct form):

go riding

go soil i ng

go shopping

go skiing

go swimming

1 Ben lives by the sea and he's got a boat, so he often goes saUirtg

2 It was a very hot day, so we in the lake.

3 There's plenty of snow in the mountains, so we'll be able to

4 Helen has got two horses. She regularly.

5 'Where's Dan?' 'He's . There were a few things he needed to buy.'

Additional exercises 27-28 (pages 318-19)

Unit

64

To ..., for... and so that

Study these examples:

O I phoned the restaurant to reserve a table.

C What do you need to make bread?

O We shouted to warn everybody of the danger.

O This letter is to confirm the decisions we made at our meeting last week.

G The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.

In these examples to ... (to reserve ... / to make ... etc.) tells us the purpose of something: why somebody does something, has something, needs something etc., or why something exists.

We say 'a place to park', 'something to eat', 'work to do' etc.:

It's difficult to find a place to park in the centre. (= a place where you can park) O Would you like something to eat? (= something that you can eat) O Do you have much work to do? (= work that you must do) O I get lonely if there's nobody to talk to. O I need something to open this bottle with.

Also money/time/chance/opportunity/energy/courage (etc.) to do something: O They gave us money to buy food.

O Do you have much opportunity to practise your English? O I need a few days to think about your proposal.

Compare for ... and to

J

You can say 'for somebody to do something':

O There weren't any chairs for us to sit on, so we sat on the floor.

You can use for -ing or to ... to talk about the general purpose of something, or what it is generally used for:

O I use this brush for washing the dishes, or ... to wash the dishes.

But we do not use for -ing to say why somebody does something: O I went into the kitchen to wash the dishes, (not for washing)

You can use What... for? to ask about purpose: O What is this switch for?
C What did you do that for?

So that

We use so that (not to ...) especially

when the purpose is negative (so that... won't/wouldn't):

I hurried so that I wouldn't be late. (= because I didn't want to be late) Eat something now so that you won't (or don't) get hungry later.

with can and could (so that ... can/could):

She's learning English so that she can study in Canada.

We moved to London so that we could see our friends more often.

You can leave out that. So you can say:

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Choose from Box A and Box B to make a new sentence with to

1 2 3

1 2 3 4 5 6

I shouted

I opened the box

I'm saving money

I need a knife

I'm wearing two sweaters

I phoned the police

B

I want to keep warm

I want to go to Canada

I wanted to report the accident

I wanted to warn people of the danger

I want to chop these onions

I wanted to see what was in it

I shouted to warn people of danger I opened the box

[image]

[image]

Complete these sentences using to + a suitable verb.

1 The president has a team of bodyguards to protect him.

2 I didn't have enough time the newspaper today.

3 I came home by taxi. I didn't have the energy

4 'Would you like something ?' 'Yes, please. A cup of coffee.'

5 We need a bag these things in.

6 There will be a meeting next week the problem.

7 Do you need a visa to the United States?

8 I saw Helen at the party, but we didn't have a chance to each other.

9 I need some new clothes. I don't have anything nice

10 They've just passed their exams. They're having a party

11 I can't do all this work alone. I need somebody me.

Put in to or for.

1 We stopped for petrol.

2 You need a lot of experience this job.

3 You need a lot of experience do this job.

4 We'll need more time make a decision.

5 I went to the dentist a check-up.

6 I had to put on my glasses read the paper.

7 Do you have to wear glasses reading?

8 I wish we had a garden the children
play in.

[image]

1*1:

Make one sentence from two, using so that.

1 I hurried. I didn't want to be late. I hurried so that I wouldn't be late.

2 I wore warm clothes. I didn't want to be cold.

I wore warm clothes

3 I gave Dan my phone number. I wanted him to be able to contact me. I
gave Dan my phone number

4 We whispered. We didn't want anybody else to hear our conversation.
We whispered nobody

5 Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
Please arrive early

6 We made a list of things to do. We didn't want to forget anything.
We made a list of things to do

7 I slowed down. I wanted the car behind me to be able to overtake.
I slowed down ...

Unit

65 Adjective + to ...

Difficult to understand etc. Compare sentences (a) and (b):

James doesn't speak very clearly.

(a) It is difficult to understand him

(b) He is difficult to understand.

Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning. Note that we say:

He is difficult to understand, (not He is difficult to understand him.)

You can use the same structures with:

easy nice safe cheap exciting impossible

hard good dangerous expensive interesting

Do you think it is safe (for us) to drink this water? Do you think this water is safe (for us) to drink? (not to drink it) The questions in the exam were very difficult. It was impossible to answer them. The questions in the exam were very difficult. They were impossible to answer. (not to answer them)

□ Nicola has lots of interesting ideas. It's interesting to talk to her. Nicola is interesting to talk to. (not to talk to her.)

You can also use this structure with adjective + noun:

O This is a difficult question (for me) to answer, (not to answer it)

Nice of (you) to ...

You can say 'It's nice of somebody to do something':

O It was nice of you to take me to the airport. Thank you very much.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:

kind (in)considerate generous mean careless silly stupid unfair

It's silly of Ruth to give up her job when she needs the money. O I think it was unfair of him to criticise me.

Sorry to ... / surprised to ... etc.

You can use adjective + to ... to say how somebody reacts to something: O I'm sorry to hear that your mother isn't well.

You can use many other adjectives in this way. For example:

glad pleased relieved surprised amazed sad disappointed

C Was Julia surprised to see you?

O It was a long and tiring journey. We were glad to get home.

The first / the next (etc.) + to ...

You can use to ... after the first/second/third etc., and also after the last / the next / the only

O If I have any more news, you will be the first (person) to know.

O The next train to arrive at platform 4 will be the 10.50 to Liverpool.

O Everybody was late except me. I was the only one to arrive on time.

You can say that something is sure/certain/likely/bound to happen:

Carla is a very good student. She's bound to pass the exam. (= she is sure to pass) □ I'm likely to get home late tonight. (= I will probably get home late)

(Afraid/interested/sorry Unit 66 It ... Hp Unit 84C Enough and too + adjective HP Unit 103

(Section A) Write these sentences in another way, beginning as shown.

1 It's difficult to understand him. He !€. difficult to understand.

2 It's easy to use this machine. This machine is

3 It was very difficult to open the window. The window

4 It's impossible to translate some words. Some words

5 It's expensive to maintain a car. A

6 It's not safe to stand on that chair. That

(Section A) Complete the second sentence. Use the adjective in brackets

and to ... as in the example.

1 I couldn't answer the question. (difficult) It was a & fewlfc question to answer.

2 Everybody makes that mistake. (easy) It's an

3 I like living in this place. (nice) It's a

4 We enjoyed watching the game, (good) It was a

(Section B) Make a new sentence beginning It... . Use one of these adjectives each time: careless inconsiderate kind nice

1 Sue has offered to help me. It's kind of Sue to offer to Help me.

2 You make the same mistake again and again.

It

3 Dan and Jenny invited me to stay with them.

4 The neighbours make so much noise.

(Section C) Use the following words to complete these sentences:

I / sorry / hear I / glad / hear pleased / meet we / surprised / see

1 I'm sorry to hear that your mother isn't well. I hope she gets better soon.

2 I got your message. that you're keeping well.

3 Paula at the party last night. We didn't expect her to come.

4 'Tom, this is Chris.' 'Hi Chris you.'

(Section D) Complete the second sentence using the words in brackets + to

1 Nobody spoke before me. (the first) I was the. first person to speak,

2 Everybody else arrived before Paul, (the last) Paul was the

3 Emily passed the exam. All the other students failed.

(the only) Emily was

4 I complained to the restaurant manager about the service. Another customer had already complained.

(the second) I was

5 Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969. Nobody had done this before him. (the first) Neil Armstrong was

(Section E) Complete these sentences using the words in brackets and a suitable verb.

1 Carla is a very good student. She M bound to pass the exam, (bound)

2 I'm not surprised you're tired. After such a long journey you tired, (bound)

3 Andy has a very bad memory. He what you tell him. (sure)

4 I don't think you need to take an umbrella. It . (not likely)

5 The holidays begin this weekend. There a lot of traffic on the roads, (likely)

To ... (afraid to do) and preposition + -ing (afraid of -ing)

Afraid to (do) and afraid of (do)ing

I am afraid to do something = I don't want to do it because it is dangerous or the result could be bad.

We use afraid to do for things we do intentionally; we can choose to do them or not: O This part of town is dangerous. People are afraid to walk here at night.

(= they don't want to walk here because it is dangerous - so they don't) O James was afraid to tell his parents what had happened.

(= he didn't want to tell them because he knew they would be angry or

worried)

I am afraid of something happening = it is possible that something bad will happen (for example, an accident).

We do not use afraid of -ing for things we do intentionally:

The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid of falling.
(= it was possible that we would fall - not we were afraid to fall) D I don't like dogs. I'm always afraid of being bitten, (not afraid to be bitten)

So, you are afraid to do something because you are afraid of something happening as a result: O I was afraid to go near the dog because I was afraid of being bitten.

Interested in (do)ing and interested to (do)

I'm interested in doing something = I'm thinking of doing it, I would like to do it: O Let me know if you're interested in joining the club, (not to join) O I tried to sell my car, but nobody was interested in buying it. (not to buy)

We use interested to ... to say how somebody reacts to what they hear/see/read/learn/know/find. For example, 'I was interested to hear it' = I heard it and it was interesting for me: O I was interested to hear that Tanya left her job.

C Ask Mike for his opinion. I would be interested to know what he thinks.
(= it would be interesting for me to know it) This structure is the same as surprised to ... / glad to ... etc. (see Unit 65C): C I was surprised to hear that Tanya left her job.

Sorry to (do) and sorry for/about (do)ing

We use sorry to ... to say we regret something that happens (see Unit 65C):

O I was sorry to hear that Nicky lost her job. (=I was sorry when I heard that ...) O I've enjoyed my stay here. I'll be sorry to leave.

We also say sorry to ... to apologise at the time we do something:

O I'm sorry to phone you so late, but I need to ask you something.

You can use sorry for or sorry about (doing something) to apologise for something you did before: O I'm sorry for (or about) shouting at you yesterday, (not sorry to shout)

You can also say:

O I'm sorry I shouted at you yesterday.

We say:

I want to (do) / I'd like to (do) but I'm thinking of (do)ing / I dream of (do)ing I failed to (do) but I succeeded in (do)ing

I allowed them to (do) but I prevented them from (do)ing

I stopped them from (do)ing

For examples, see Units 54-55 and 62.

f Verb + preposition + -ing -> Unit 62 Adjective + preposition H> Units 130-131 i^Sorry about/for -> Unit 130

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Use the words in brackets to write sentences. Use afraid to ... or afraid of -ing.

1 The streets are unsafe at night.

(a lot of people / afraid / go / out) A lot of people are o^yojA to go out.

2 We walked very carefully along the icy path.

(we / afraid / fall) We were O/fVaid of falling.

3 I don't usually carry my passport with me.

(I / afraid / lose / it)

4 I thought she would be angry if I told her what had happened. (I/afraid/
tell/her)

5 We rushed to the station.

(we / afraid / miss / our train)

6 In the middle of the film there was an especially horrifying scene, (we /
afraid / look)

7 The vase was very valuable, so I held it carefully. (I / afraid / drop / it)

8 I thought the food on my plate didn't look fresh.

a (I / afraid / eat / it)

b (I / afraid / get / sick)

Complete the sentences using in ... or to Use these verbs: -buy- get
know look read start

1 I'm trying to sell my car, but nobody is interested I*! buying it.

2 Julia is interested her own business.

3 I was interested your article in the newspaper last week. It was very well
written.

4 Ben wants to stay single. He's not interested married.

5 I heard from Mark recently. You'll be interested that he's now working in
Paris.

6 I don't enjoy sightseeing. I'm not interested at old buildings.

Complete each sentence using sorry for/about... or sorry to Use the verb in brackets.

1 I'm sorry to phone you so late, but I need to ask you something, (phone)

2 I was that you didn't get the job you applied for. (hear)

3 I'm all those bad things about you. I didn't mean them, (say)

4 I'm you, but do you have a pen I could borrow? (disturb)

5 I'm the book you lent me. I'll buy you another one. (lose)

Complete each sentence using the verb in brackets.

1 a We wanted to Leave the building, (leave)

b We weren't allowed the building, (leave)

c We were prevented the building, (leave)

2 a Peter failed the problem, (solve)

b Chris succeeded the problem, (solve)

3 a I'm thinking away next week, (go)

b I'm hoping away next week, (go)

c I'd like away next week, (go)

d I'm looking forward away next week, (go)

4 a Helen wanted me lunch, (buy) b Helen insisted me lunch, (buy)

c Helen promised me lunch, (buy)

d Helen wouldn't dream me lunch, (buy)

-* Additional exercise 27 (page 318)

Unit

67 See somebody do and see somebody doing

Study this example situation:

Tom got into his car and drove away. You saw this. You can say:

I saw Tom get into his car and drive away.

In this structure we use get/drive/do etc. (not to get / to drive / to do).

Somebody did something

+

I saw this

[image]

[image]

I saw somebody do something

But after a passive ('he was seen' etc.), we use to: O He was seen to get in the car.

TOM

Study this example situation:

J

Yesterday you saw Kate. She was waiting for a bus. You can say:

I saw Kate waiting for a bus.

In this structure we use -ing (waiting/doing etc.): Somebody was doing something + I saw this

I saw somebody doing something

[image]

Study the difference in meaning between the two structures:

I saw him do something = he did something (past simple) and I saw this. I saw the complete action from beginning to end:

C He fell off the wall. I saw this. —> I saw him fall off the wall.

The accident happened. Did you see it? -4 Did you see the accident happen?

I saw him doing something = he was doing something (past continuous) and I saw this. I saw him when he was in the middle of doing it. This does not mean that I saw the complete action: He was walking along the street.

saw this when I drove past in my car.

I saw him walking along the street.

Sometimes the difference is not important and you can use either form: O I've never seen her dance, or I've never seen her dancing.

We use these structures with see and hear, and a number of other verbs:

O I didn't hear you come in. (you came in - I didn't hear this) O Lisa suddenly felt somebody touch her on the shoulder. Did you notice anyone go out?

O I could hear it raining, (it was raining - I could hear it)

O A man was seen running away a short time after the break-in.

O Listen to the birds singing!

O Can you smell something burning?

We looked everywhere for Paul, and finally we found him sitting under a tree in the garden

and eating an apple.

Exercises

[image]

Complete the answers to the questions.

..

Did anybody go out? Has Sarah arrived yet? How do you know I took the money?

Did the doorbell ring? Can Tom play the piano? Did I lock the door when I went out?

How did the woman fall?

A.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

I don't think so. I didn't see anybody go out Yes, I think I heard her

I know because I saw you

I don't think so. I didn't hear I've never heard Yes, I saw

I don't know. I didn't see

[image]

In each of these situations you and a friend saw, heard or smelt something. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

[image]

[image]

1 We saw...Kate waiting -for a bus

2 We saw David and Helen

3 We saw in a restaurant

4 We heard

5 We could

6

Complete these sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form):

climb

run

come say

crawl

cry slam

explode sleep

ride tell

his story from beginning to end.

1 Listen to the birds \

2 I didn't hear you come join .

3 We listened to the old man

4 Listen! Can you hear a baby ?

5 I looked out of the window and saw Dan his bike along the road.

6 I thought I heard somebody 'Hi', so I looked round.

7 We watched two men across the garden and through an open window into the house.

8 Everybody heard the bomb It was a tremendous noise.

9 Oh! I can feel something up my leg! It must be an insect.

10 I heard somebody the door in the middle of the night. It woke me up.

11 When we got home, we found a cat on the kitchen table.

-ing clauses (Feeling tired, I went to bed early.)

Study these situations:

Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee. You can say:

Joe hurt his knee playing football.

You were feeling tired. So you went to bed early. You can say:

Feeling tired, I went to bed early.

Playing football' and 'feeling tired' are -ing clauses. If the -ing clause is at the beginning of the sentence (as in the second example), we write a comma (,) after it.

When two things happen at the same time, you can use an -ing clause: O Kate is in the kitchen making coffee.

(= she is in the kitchen and she is making coffee) O A man ran out of the house shouting.

(= he ran out of the house and he was shouting) O Do something! Don't just stand there doing nothing!

We also use -ing when one action happens during another action. We use -ing for the longer action: O Joe hurt his knee playing football. (= while he was playing) C Did you cut yourself shaving? (= while you were shaving)

You can also use -ing after while or when:

Joe hurt his knee while playing football. O Be careful when crossing the road. (= when you are crossing)

When one action happens before another action, we use having (done) for the first action:

□ Having found a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.

O Having finished her work, she went home. You can also say after -ing:

O After finishing her work, she went home.

If one short action follows another short action, you can use the simple -ing form (doing instead of having done) for the first action:

Taking a key out of his pocket, he opened the door.

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.

You can use an -ing clause to explain something, or to say why somebody does something.

The -ing clause usually comes at the beginning of the sentence: O Feeling tired, I went to bed early. (= because I felt tired)

O Being unemployed, he doesn't have much money. (= because he is unemployed) O Not having a car, she finds it difficult to get around. (= because she doesn't have a car)

Use having (done) for something that happened before something else: C Having already seen the film twice, I didn't want to see it again. (= because I had already seen it twice)

These structures are used more in written English than in spoken English.

-ing and -ed clauses -* Unit 97

Exercises

[image]

Choose from Box A and Box B to make sentences. Use an -ing clause

A

1 Kate was in the kitchen.

2 Amy was sitting in an armchair.

3 Sue opened the door carefully.

4 Sarah went out.

5 Lisa was in London for two years.

6 Anna walked around the town.

B

She was trying not to make a noise. She looked at the sights and took pictures. She said she would be back in an hour. She was reading a book.

/as makin

lo ffec.

She worked in a bookshop.

1

2 3 4 5 6

Kate was in the kitchen making coffee. Amy was sitting Sue

[image]

Make one sentence from two using an -ing clause.

1 Joe was playing football. He hurt his knee. Join His knee playing football.

2 I was watching TV. I fell asleep. I

3 A friend of mine slipped and fell. He was getting off a bus.

A friend of mine

4 I was walking home in the rain. I got very wet. I

5 Laura was driving to work yesterday. She had an accident.

6 Two people were overcome by smoke. They were trying to put out the fire.

[image]

Make sentences beginning Having Put the words in the correct order.

1 (went / she / work / her / home / finished) Having -finished Her work, she went home

2 (tickets / the theatre / bought / into / our / went / we)

Having ,

3 (journey / their / had / they / lunch / continued) Having ,

4 (the / coffee / shopping /1 / a cup / went / done / for / of)

Having ,

[image]

J Make one sentence from two. Begin with -ing or Not-ing (like the examples in Section D). Sometimes you need to begin with Having (done something).

1 I felt tired. So I went to bed early. Feeling tired, | went to bed early.

2 I thought they might be hungry. So I offered them something to eat.

, I offered them something to eat.

3 Robert is a vegetarian. So he doesn't eat any kind of meat.

, Robert doesn't eat any kind of meat.

4 I didn't know his email address. So I wasn't able to contact him.

, I wasn't able to contact him.

5 Sarah has travelled a lot. So she knows a lot about other countries. , Sarah knows a lot about other countries.

6 I wasn't able to speak the local language. So I had trouble communicating.

, I had trouble communicating.

7 We had spent nearly all our money. So we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel. , we couldn't afford to stay at a hotel.

Unit

69 . Countable and uncountable 1

[image]

[image]

[image]

138

A noun can be countable or uncountable:

Countable

I eat a banana every day. A I like bananas.

w

Banana is a countable noun.

■J

A countable noun can be singular (banana) or plural (bananas).

We can use numbers with countable nouns. So we can say 'one banana', 'two bananas' etc.

Examples of nouns usually countable: D Kate was singing a song.

There's a nice beach near here.

Do you have a ten-pound note?

It wasn't your fault. It was an accident.

There are no batteries in the radio.

We don't have enough cups.

You can use a/an with singular countable nouns:

a beach a student an umbrella

You cannot use singular countable nouns

alone (without a/the/my etc.):

I want a banana, (not I want banana) There's been an accident, (not There's been accident)

You can use plural countable nouns alone: O I like bananas. (= bananas in general) Accidents can be prevented.

[image]

Uncountable

I eat rice every day. I like rice.

Rice is an uncountable noun. An uncountable noun has only one form (rice).

We cannot use numbers with uncountable nouns. We cannot say 'one rice', 'two rices' etc.

Examples of nouns usually uncountable: Kate was listening to (some) music. There's sand in my shoes. Do you have any money? It wasn't your fault. It was bad luck. There is no electricity in this house. We don't have enough water.

You cannot normally use a/an with uncountable nouns. We do not say 'a sand', 'a music', 'a rice'.

But you can often use a ... of. For example: a bowl / a packet / a grain of rice

You can use uncountable nouns alone (without the/my/some etc.): O I eat rice every day.

There's blood on your shirt. Can you hear music?

J

C Countable and uncountable 2 -> Unit 70 Some and any •+ Unit 85
^Many/much/few/little -> Unit 87 Children / the children-> Unit 75

Exercises

Unit

69

[image]

Some of these sentences need a/an. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Joe goes everywhere by bike. He hasn't got car. He hasn't got a, cox.

2 Helen was listening to music when I arrived. OK

3 We went to very nice restaurant last weekend.

4 I brush my teeth with toothpaste.

5 I use toothbrush to brush my teeth.

6 Can you tell me if there's bank near here?

7 My brother works for insurance company in Frankfurt.

8 I don't like violence.

9 Can you smell paint?

10 When we were in Rome, we stayed in big hotel.

11 We need petrol. I hope we come to petrol station soon

12 I wonder if you can help me. I have problem.

13 I like your suggestion. It's very interesting idea.

14 John has interview for job tomorrow.

15 I like volleyball. It's good game.

16 Lisa doesn't usually wear jewellery.

17 Jane was wearing beautiful necklace.

[image]

Complete the sentences using the following words. Use a/an where necessary.

[image]

accident biscuit blood coat decision electricity

interview key moment music question sugar

1 It wasn't your fault. It was ~~executed~~

2 Listen! Can you hear music ?

3 I couldn't get into the house because I didn't have

4 It's very warm today. Why are you wearing ?

5 Do you take in your coffee?

6 Are you hungry? Would you like with your coffee?

7 Our lives would be very difficult without

8 'I had for a job yesterday.' 'Did you? How did it go?'

9 The heart pumps through the body.

10 Excuse me, but can I ask you ?

11 I'm not ready yet. Can you wait , please?

12 We can't delay much longer. We have to make soon.

J| Complete the sentences using the following words. Sometimes the word needs to be plural (-s), and sometimes you need to use a/an.

air day friend joke language meat

patience people picture queue space umbrella

1 I had my camera, but I didn't take any pictures

2 There are seven in a week.

3 A vegetarian is a person who doesn't eat

4 Outside the cinema there was of people waiting to see the film.

5 I'm not very good at telling

6 Last night I went out with some of mine.

7 There were very few in town today. The streets were almost empty.

8 I'm going out for a walk. I need some fresh

9 Gary always wants things quickly. He doesn't have much

10 I think it's going to rain. Do you have I could borrow?

11 Do you speak any foreign ?

12 Our flat is very small. We don't have much

Unit

70 . Countable and uncountable 2

Many nouns can be used as countable or uncountable nouns, usually with a difference in meaning. Compare:

Countable

Did you hear a noise just now?

(= a specific noise) O I bought a paper to read.

(= a newspaper) O There's a hair in my soup!

(= one single hair)

You can stay with us. There's a spare room. (= a room in a house) I had some interesting experiences while I was travelling. (= things that happened to me)

Enjoy your trip. Have a good time!

Uncountable

I can't work here. There's too much noise. (= noise in general)

I need some paper to write on.

(= material for writing on)

You've got very long hair, (not hairs)

(= all the hair on your head)

You can't sit here. There isn't room.

(= space)

They offered me the job because I had a lot of experience, [not experiences]

I can't wait. I don't have time.

Coffee/tea/juice/beer etc. (drinks) are normally uncountable:

O I don't like coffee very much. But you can say a coffee (= a cup of coffee), two coffees (= two cups) etc. Two coffees and an orange juice, please.

The following nouns are usually uncountable:

You cannot use a/an with these nouns:

O I'm going to buy some bread, or ... a loaf of bread, (not a bread)

O Enjoy your holiday! I hope you have good weather, (not a good weather)

These nouns are not usually plural (so we do not say 'breads', 'furnitures' etc.): O Where are you going to put all your furniture? (not furnitures) Q Let me know if you need more information, (not informations)

News is uncountable, not plural:

O The news was very depressing, (not The news were)

Travel (noun) means 'travelling in general' (uncountable). We do not say 'a travel' to mean a trip or a journey:

O They spend a lot of money on travel.

We had a very good trip/journey, (not a good travel)

Compare these countable and uncountable nouns:

Countable

O I'm looking for a job.

What a beautiful view! O It's a nice day today. C We had a lot of bags and cases. O These chairs are mine. O That's a good suggestion.

Uncountable

I'm looking for work, (not a work) What beautiful scenery! It's nice weather today. We had a lot of baggage/luggage. 3 This furniture is mine. O That's good advice.

Countable and uncountable 1 -> Unit 69 American English * ♦ Appendix 7

Exercises

Unit

70

[image]

Which of the underlined parts of these sentences is correct?

1 'Did you hear -noise- / a noise just now?' 'No, I didn't hear anything.' (a

noise is correct)

2 a If you want to know the news, you can read paper / a paper , b I want to print some documents, but the printer is out of paper / papers .

3 a Light / A light comes from the sun. b I thought there was somebody in the house because there was light / a light on inside.

4 a I was in a hurry this morning. I didn't have time / a time for breakfast, b 'Did you have a good holiday?' 'Yes, we had wonderful time / a wonderful time .'

5 This is nice room / a nice room . Did you decorate it yourself?

6 Sue was very helpful. She gave us some very useful advice / advices .

7 Did you have nice weather / a nice weather when you were away?

8 We were very unfortunate. We had bad luck / a bad luck .

9 Is it difficult to find a work / job at the moment?

10 Our travel / journey from Paris to Moscow by train was very tiring.

11 When the fire alarm rang, there was total chaos / a total chaos .

12 I had to buy a bread / some bread because I wanted to make some sandwiches.

13 Bad news don't / doesn't make people happy.

14 Your hair is / Your hairs are too long. You should have it / them cut.

15 The damage / The damages caused by the storm will cost a lot to repair.

) Complete the sentences using the following words. Use the plural (-s) where necessary.

advice chair experience experience furniture hair

information job Luggage permission progress work

1 I didn't have much luggage -just two small bags.

2 They'll tell you all you want to know. They'll give you plenty of

3 There is room for everybody to sit down. There are plenty of

4 We have no , not even a bed or a table.

5 'What does Alan look like?' 'He's got a long beard and very short

6 Carla's English is better than it was. She's made

7 Mike is unemployed. He can't get a

8 Mike is unemployed. He can't get

9 If you want to leave early, you have to ask for

10 I didn't know what to do. So I asked Chris for

11 I don't think Dan should get the job. He doesn't have enough

12 Nicola has done many interesting things. She could write a book about her

[image]

[image]

What do you say in these situations? Use a word from Section B (luggage, weather etc.) in each sentence.

1 Your friends have just arrived at the station. You can't see any cases or bags.

You ask them: Oo you have any luggage ?

2 You go into the tourist office. You want to know about places to see in the town.

You say: I'd like

3 You are a student. You want your teacher to advise you about which courses to do.

You say: Can you give me ?

4 You want to watch the news on TV, but you don't know when it is on.

You ask your friend: What time ?

5 You are at the top of a mountain. You can see a very long way. It's beautiful.

You say: It isn't it?

6 You look out of the window. The weather is horrible: cold, wet and windy.

You say: What !

Unit

71 .

Countable nouns with a/an and some

Countable nouns can be singular or plural:

Before singular countable nouns you can use a/an: O Bye! Have a nice evening. O Do you need an umbrella?

You cannot use singular countable nouns alone (without a/the/my etc.): C She never wears a hat. (not She never wears hat) O Be careful of the dog. (not Be careful of dog)

What a beautiful day! O I've got a headache.

We use a/an ... to say what kind of thing something is, or what kind of person somebody is:

O That's a nice table. In the plural we use the noun alone (not some ...):

O Those are nice chairs, (not some nice chairs)

Compare singular and plural:

A dog is an animal. I'm an optimist Tom's father is a doctor. J Are you a

good driver? Jane is a really nice person. What a lovely dress!

Dogs are animals. We're optimists. Most of my friends are students. Are they good students? Jane's parents are really nice people. What awful shoes!

[image]

We say that somebody has a long nose / a nice face / blue eyes / small hands etc.

J

Remember to use a/an when you say what somebody's job is: C) Sandra is a nurse, (not Sandra is nurse) O Would you like to be an English teacher?

You can use some with plural countable nouns. We use some in two ways.

(1) Some = a number of / a few of / a pair of:

I've seen some good movies recently, (not I've seen good movies) Some friends of mine are coming to stay at the weekend. O I need some new sunglasses. (= a new pair of sunglasses)

Do not use some when you are talking about things in general (see Unit 75): O I love bananas, (not some bananas) O My aunt is a writer. She writes books, (not some books)

(2) Some = some but not all:

Some children learn very quickly, (but not all children) D Tomorrow there will be rain in some places, but most of the country will be dry.

Countable and uncountable -> Units 69-70 A/an and the -> Unit 72 Some and any •+ Unit 85

Exercises

[image]

What are these things? Use a dictionary if necessary.

1 an ant? It's a\ unsect. 7 Earth, Mars, Venus and Jupiter?

2 ants and bees? They're Insects.

3 a cauliflower? 8 a tulip?

4 chess? 9 the Nile, the Rhine and the Mekong?

5 a pigeon, an eagle and a crow?

10 a violin, a trumpet and a flute?

6 a skyscraper?

Who were these people?

11 Beethoven? ...He *.MM Jk .composer, 15 Marilyn Monroe?

12 Shakespeare?

13 Albert Einstein? 16 Michael Jackson and John Lennon?

Unit

71

14 Washington, Lincoln and Kennedy?

17 Van Gogh, Renoir and Picasso?

[image]

Read about what these people do, and say what their jobs are. Choose from:

chef interpreter journalist nurse

plumber surgeon tour guide waiter

1 Sarah looks after patients in hospital. She's a nurse.

2 Gary works in a restaurant. He brings the food to the tables. He

3 Jane writes articles for a newspaper

4 Kevin works in a hospital. He operates on people

5 Jonathan cooks in a restaurant. ...

6 Dave installs and repairs water pipes.

7 Martina takes visitors round her city and tells them about it. She

8 Lisa translates what people are saying from one language into another so that they can understand each other

[image]

Put in a/an or some where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I've seen some good films recently.

2 What's wrong with you? Have you got & headache?

3 I know a lot of people. Most of them are z students.

4 When I was child, I used to be very shy.

5 Would you like to be actor?

6 Questions, questions, questions! You're always asking questions!

7 What beautiful garden!

8 birds, for example the penguin, cannot fly.

9 Do you like staying in hotels?

10 I've been walking for three hours. I've got sore feet.

11 I don't feel very well this morning. I've got sore throat.

12 Maria speaks English, but not very much.

13 It's a shame we don't have camera. I'd like to take picture of that house.

14 Those are nice shoes. Where did you get them?

15 I'm going shopping. I want to buy new shoes.

16 You need visa to visit countries, but not all of them.

17 Jane is teacher. Her parents were teachers too.

18 I don't believe him. He's liar. He's always telling lies.

Joe says 'a sandwich', 'an apple' because this is the first time he talks about them.

Joe now says 'the sandwich', 'the apple' because Karen knows which sandwich and which apple he means - the sandwich and the apple that he had for lunch.

Compare a and the in these examples:

D A man and a woman were sitting opposite me. woman was British.

When we were on holiday, we stayed at a hotel sometimes we went to a restaurant.

We use the when we are thinking of a specific thing. Compare a/an and the:

Tim sat down on a chair, (perhaps one of many chairs in the room) Tim sat down on the chair nearest the door, (a specific chair)

Paula is looking for a job. (not a specific job)

Did Paula get the job she applied for? (a specific job)

O Do you have a car? (not a specific car) I cleaned the car yesterday. (= my car)

We use the when it is clear in the situation which thing or person we mean. For example, in a room we talk about the light / the floor / the ceiling / the door / the carpet etc.:

O Can you turn off the light, please? (= the light in this room)

O I took a taxi to the station. (= the station in that town)

(in a shop) I'd like to speak to the manager, please. (= the manager of this shop)

In the same way, we say (go to) the bank / the post office:

O I have to go to the bank and then I'm going to the post office.

(The speaker is usually thinking of a specific bank or post office.)

We also say (go to) the doctor / the dentist:

O Clare isn't very well. She's gone to the doctor. (= her usual doctor) O I don't like going to the dentist.

Compare the and a:

O I have to go to the bank today. Is there a bank near here? I don't like going to the dentist. My sister is a dentist.

We say 'once a week / three times a day / £1.50 a kilo' etc.:

O 'How often do you go to the cinema?' 'About once a month.'

'How much are those potatoes?' '£1.50 a kilo.' O Helen works eight hours a day, six days a week.

^A/an -> Unit 71 The-> Units 73-78

Study this example:

I had a sandwich and an apple

for lunch.

The sandwich wasn't very good, but the apple was nice.

[image]

V

JOE

[image]

KAREN

The man was American, but I think the . Sometimes we ate at the hotel and

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put in a/an or the.

1 This morning I bought A- newspaper and magazine newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put magazine.

2 I saw accident this morning. car crashed into tree.

driver of car wasn't hurt, but car was badly damaged.

3 There are two cars parked outside: blue one and grey one. blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who owner of grey one is.

4 My friends live in old house in small village. There is beautiful garden behind house. I would like to have garden like that.

Put in a/an or the.

1 a This house is very nice. Has it got garden? b It's a beautiful day. Let's sit in garden.

c I like living in this house, but it's a shame that garden is so small.

2 a Can you recommend good restaurant?

b We had dinner in very nice restaurant.

c We had dinner in best restaurant in town.

3 a She has French name, but in fact she's English, not French, b What's

name of that man we met yesterday? c We stayed at a very nice hotel - I can't remember name now.

4 a There isn't airport near where I live nearest airport is 70 miles away.

b Our flight was delayed. We had to wait at airport for three hours.

c Excuse me, please. Can you tell me how to get to airport?

5 a 'Are you going away next week?' 'No, week after next.'

b I'm going away for week in September.

c Gary has a part-time job. He works three mornings week.

Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1 Would you like apple? Would you like ax\ apple?

2 How often do you go to dentist?

3 Could you close door, please?

4 I'm sorry. I didn't mean to do that. It was mistake.

5 Excuse me, where is bus station, please?

6 I have problem. Can you help me?

7 I'm just going to post office. I won't be long.

8 There were no chairs, so we sat on floor

9 Have you finished with book I lent you?

10 My sister has just got job in bank in Zurich.

11 We live in small apartment in city centre.

12 There's supermarket at end of street I live in.

j| Answer these questions about yourself. Where possible, use the structure in Section D (once a week / three times a day etc.).

1 How often do you go to the cinema? TViree or Jour times a, year.

2 How often do you go to the cinema?

3 How often do you go away on holiday?

4 What's the usual speed limit in towns in your country?

5 How much sleep do you need?

6 How often do you go out in the evening?

7 How much television do you watch (on average)?

8 How much does it cost to rent a small car in your country?

-* Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

We use the when there is only one of something: O Have you ever crossed the equator?

(there is only one equator)

What's the Longest river in Europe? O Our apartment is on the tenth floor. i

Buenos Aires is the capital of Argentina. THE E q UAT0R —4 D I'm going away at the end of this month.

We use the before same (the same):

Your sweater is the same colour as mine, (not is same colour) O 'Are these keys the same?' 'No, they're different.'

We say:

the sun the moon the earth the world the universe

the sky the sea the ground the environment the internet

D I love to look at the stars in the sky. (not in sky)

D The internet has changed the way we live.

D We need to do more to protect the environment. (= the natural world around us)

O The earth goes round the sun, and the moon goes round the earth.

We also use 'Earth' (without the) when we think of it as a planet in space (like Mars, Jupiter etc.). O Which planet is nearest Earth?

We say space (without the) when we mean 'space in the universe'. Compare
O There are millions of stars in space, (not in the space) O I tried to park my car, but the space was too small.

We use a/an to say what kind of thing something is (see Unit 71B).
Compare the and a: O The sun is a star. (= one of many stars) O The hotel we stayed at was a very nice hotel.

We say: (go to) the cinema, the theatre.

I go to the cinema a lot, but I haven't been to the theatre for ages.

When we say the cinema / the theatre, we do not necessarily mean a specific cinema or theatre.

We usually say the radio, but television/TV (without the). Compare: O I listen to the radio a lot. but I watch television a lot. We heard it on the radio, but We watched it on TV.

The television / the TV = the television set:

O Can you turn off the television, please?

We do not normally use the with breakfast/lunch/dinner: O What did you have for breakfast? O We had lunch in a very nice restaurant.

But we use a/an if we say 'a big lunch', 'a wonderful dinner', 'an early breakfast' etc.: We had a very nice lunch, (not We had very nice lunch)

We do not use the before noun + number. For example, we say: Q Our train leaves from Platform 5. (not the Platform 5) O (in a shop) Do you have these shoes in size 43? (not the size 43)

In the same way, we say: Room 126 (in a hotel), page 29 (of a book),

question 3 (in an exam), Gate 10 (at an airport) etc.

^A/an and the -> Unit 72 The 2-4 -> Units 74-76 Names with and without the -> Units 77-78

[image]

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put in the or a where necessary. If no word is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 a: Our apartment is on the- tenth floor. b: Is it? I hope there's % lift.

2 a: Did you have nice holiday?

b: Yes, it was best holiday I've ever had.

3 a: Where's nearest shop?

b: There's one at end of this street.

4 a: It's lovely day, isn't it?

b: Yes, there isn't cloud in sky.

5 a: I've got a problem with my computer. It isn't connecting to internet. b: That's interesting. I've got same problem with mine.

6 a: We spent all our money because we stayed at most expensive hotel in town. b: Why didn't you stay at cheaper hotel?

7 a: Would you like to travel in space? b: Yes, I'd love to go to moon.

8 a: What's Jupiter? Is it star?

b: No, it's planet. It's largest planet in solar system.

Put in the where necessary. If you don't need the, leave the space empty.

1 I haven't been to the, cinema for ages.

2 Sarah spends most of her free time watching TV.

3 Do you ever listen to radio?

4 television was on, but nobody was watching it.

5 Have you had dinner yet?

6 Lisa and I arrived at same time.

7 What's capital city of Canada?

8 What do you want for breakfast?

9 I lay down on ground and looked up at sky.

Put in the or a where necessary. (See Unit 72 for a and the if necessary.)

1 Sun is star. TVie sun is a, star.

2 I'm fed up with doing same thing every day

3 Room 25 is on second floor.

4 Moon goes round earth every 27 days

5 It was very hot day. It was hottest day of year

6 We had lunch in nice restaurant by sea.

7 What's on at cinema this week?

8 I like to eat good breakfast before I go to work.

9 We missed our train because we were waiting on wrong platform

10 Next train to London leaves from Platform 3.

11 You'll find information you need at top of page 15.

^ Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

breakfast cinema dinner gate Gate 21 question 8 sea

1 Are you going out this evening?' 'Yes, after cU>™er

2 There was no wind, so was very calm.

3 The test wasn't too difficult, but I couldn't answer

4 'I'm going to tonight.' 'Are you? What film are you going to see?'

5 I didn't have time for this morning because I was in a hurry.

6 Oh, is open. I must have forgotten to shut it.

7 (airport announcement) Flight AB123 to Rome is now boarding at

•# Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

Unit

74 The 2 (school / the school etc.)

Compare school and the school:

We use prison (or jail), hospital, university, college and church in a similar way. We do not use the

when we are thinking of the general idea of these places and what they are used for. Compare:

With most other places, you need the. For example, the station, the cinema, (see Units 72C and 73C).

We say go to bed / be in bed etc. (not the bed):

O I'm going to bed now. Goodnight.

O Do you ever have breakfast in bed? but C I sat down on the bed. (a specific piece of furniture)

go to work / be at work / start work / finish work etc. (not the work): Chris didn't go to work yesterday. O What time do you usually finish work?

go home / come home / arrive home / get home / be at home etc.: C It's late. Let's go home. O Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?

We say go to sea / be at sea (without the) when the meaning is 'go/be on a voyage':

O Keith works on ships. He's at sea most of the time. but C I'd like to live near the sea.

O It can be dangerous to swim in the sea.

The -> Units 72-73, 75-78 Prepositions (at school / in hospital etc.) Units 123-125 Home -> Unit 126C American English -> Appendix 7

Exercises

^JJP Complete each sentence using a preposition (to/at/in etc.) + one of these words:

bed home hosp i tal hospital prison school university work

1 Two people were injured in the accident and were taken to... Hospital

2 In Britain, children from the age of five have to go

3 Mark didn't go out last night. He stayed

4 There is a lot of traffic in the morning when everybody is going

5 Kate's mother has just had an operation. She is still

6 When Sophie leaves school, she wants to study economics

7 Ben never gets up before 9 o'clock. It's 8.30 now, so he is still

8 If people commit crimes, they may be sent

Complete the sentences with school or the school.

1 Why aren't your children at school today? Are they ill?

2 When he was younger, Tim hated

3 There were some parents waiting outside to meet their children.

4 usually starts at 8.30 in the morning.

5 a: How do your children get to and from ? By bus?

b: No, they walk ... isn't very far.

6 What sort of job does Emily want to do when she leaves ?

Some of these sentences need the. Correct them where necessary.

1 a 'How old is university?' 'About 200 years.' the university

b In your country do many people go to university? OK c If you want to get a degree, you normally have to study at university.

d This is a small town, but university is the biggest in the country.

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

2 a My brother has always been healthy. He's never been in hospital.

b When Ann was ill, I went to hospital to visit her. When I was

there, I met Lisa who is a nurse at hospital, c A woman was injured in the accident and was taken to hospital.

3 a John's mother is a regular churchgoer. She goes to church every Sunday.

b John himself doesn't go to church.

c John went to church to take some pictures of the building.

4 a Why is she in prison? What did she do?

b A few days ago firefighters were called to prison to put out a fire.

c Do you think too many people are sent to prison?

Which is correct?

1 How did you get home / get to home after the party? (get home is correct)

2 I like to read in bed / in the bed before I go to sleep.

3 Shall we meet after work / after the work tomorrow evening?

4 I love swimming in sea / in the sea .

5 It's nice to travel around, but there's no place like home / like the home !

6 Sam likes to go to bed / go to the bed early, and get up early.

7 I didn't sleep well in the hotel. Bed / The bed was uncomfortable.

8 How long did it take to cross the ocean? How long were you at sea / at the sea ?

9 What time do you usually start work / the work in the morning?

-> Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

Unit

75 .

The 3 (children / the children)

When we are talking about things or people in general, we do not use the:

O I'm afraid of dogs, (not the dogs)

(dogs = dogs in general, not a specific group of dogs)

O Doctors are usually paid more than teachers.

O Do you know anybody who collects stamps?

O Crime is a problem in most big cities, (not The crime) Life has changed a lot in the last thirty years, [not The life) Do you like classical music / Chinese food / fast cars?

O My favourite sport is football/skiing/athletics.

O My favourite subject at school was history/physics/English.

We say 'most people / most books / most cars' etc. (not the most...): O Most shops accept credit cards, (not The most shops)

I MIS

We use the when we mean specific things or people. Compare:

The difference between 'something in general' and 'something specific' is not always very clear. Compare:

In general (without the)

O I like working with people. (= people in general)

I like working with people who say what they think, (not all people, but 'people who say what they think' is still a general idea)

Do you like coffee? (= coffee in general)

Do you like strong black coffee?

(not all coffee, but 'strong black coffee' is still a general idea)

Specific people or things (with the)

I like the people I work with.

(= a specific group of people)

I didn't like the coffee we had after dinner.

(= specific coffee)

The 1-2 -* Units 73-74 The + adjective (the young / the English etc.) ->
Unit 76

j

Exercises

Choose four of these things and write whether you like them or not:

boxing cats crowds fast food horror movies

bananas

-h ot weather

maths opera snow supermarkets zoos

Begin each sentence with one of these:

I like ... / I don't like ... I don't mind ... I love ... / I hate ... I'm interested in

1 I don't like hot weather very much.

.. / I'm not interested in

3 4 5

[image]

Complete the sentences using the following. Use the where necessary.

(the) b a sketball (the) grass (the) patience (the) people

(the) questions (the) history

(the) meat (the) water

(the) information (the) spiders

(the) hotels (the) lies

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

without difficulty.

My favourite sport is basketball The wforwatwn W e were given wasn't correct.

Some people are afraid of

A vegetarian is somebody who doesn't eat

The test wasn't very difficult. I answered Do you know who live next door?
is the study of the past.

It's better to tell the truth. Telling usually causes problems.

We couldn't find anywhere to stay in the town were full.

in the pool didn't look very clean, so we didn't go for a swim.

Don't sit on It's wet after the rain.

You need to teach young children.

Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1 I'm afraid of do gs / the dog s . (dogs is correct)

2 Apples / The apples are good for you.

3 Look at apples / the apples on that tree! They're very big.

4 Women / The women live longer than men / the men .

5 I don't drink tea / the tea . I don't like it.

6 We had a very good meal. Vegetables / The vegetables were especially good.

7 Life / The life is strange sometimes. Some very strange things happen.

8 I enjoy holidays / the holidays by the sea.

9 How much money does the government spend on education / the

education ?

10 Who are people / the people in this picture?

11 What makes people / the people violent? What causes aggression / the aggression ?

12 All books / All the books on the top shelf belong to me.

13 Don't stay in that hotel. It's very noisy and rooms / the rooms are very small.

14 A pacifist is somebody who is against war / the war .

15 First World War/The First World War lasted from 1914 until 1918.

16 I don't like films / the films that don't have happy endings.

17 Someone gave me a book about history / the history of modern art / the modern art .

18 Rob and Louise got married, but marriage / the marriage didn't last very long.

19 Most people / The most people believe that marriage / the marriage and family life / the family life are the basis of society / the society .

-> Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

Unit The 4 (the giraffe / the telephone /the piano etc.; 76 the + adjective)

Study these sentences:

O The giraffe is the tallest of all animals.

C The bicycle is an excellent means of transport.

O When was the telephone invented?

The dollar is the currency of the United States.

In these examples, the ... does not mean one specific thing. The giraffe = a specific type of animal, not a specific giraffe. We use the in this way to talk

about a type of animal, machine etc.

In the same way we use the for musical instruments: O Can you play the guitar?

The piano is my favourite instrument.

Compare a and the:

O I'd like to have a piano. but I can't play the piano.

O We saw a giraffe at the zoo. but The giraffe is my favourite

Note that we use man (= human beings in general / the human race) wit
What do you know about the origins of man? (not the man)

The + adjective

We use the + adjective (without a noun) to talk about groups of people. For example:

The young = young people, the rich = rich people etc.: Do you think the rich should pay higher taxes? We need to do more to help the homeless.

The young / the rich / the injured etc. are plural in meaning. For example, you cannot say 'a young' or 'the injured' for one person. You must say 'a young person', 'the injured woman' etc.

Note that we say 'the poor' (not the poors), 'the young' (not the youngs) etc.
The + nationality

You can use the + nationality adjectives that end in -ch or -sh (the French / the English / the Spanish etc.). The meaning is 'the people of that country':

O The French are famous for their food. (= the people of France)

The French / the English etc. are plural in meaning. We do not say 'a French / an English'. You have to say a Frenchman / an Englishwoman etc.

We also use the + nationality words ending in -ese (the Chinese / the Sudanese / the Japanese etc.):

O The Chinese invented printing. But these words can also be singular (a

Chinese, a Japanese etc.). Note also: a Swiss (singular) and the Swiss (= the people of Switzerland)

With other nationalities, the plural noun ends in -s. For example:

an Italian -* Italians a Mexican —> Mexicans a Turk —» Turks

With these words (Italians etc.), we do not normally use the to talk about the people in general (see Unit 75).

[image]

A/an and the -> Unit 72 The 1-3 Units 73-75 Names with and without the Units 77-78

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Answer the questions. Choose the right answer from the box. Don't forget the. Use a dictionary if necessary.

currencies dollar peso euro rupee rouble yen

a Which of the animals is tallest?

b Which animal can run fastest?

c Which of these animals is found in Australia?

a Which of these birds has a long neck?

b Which of these birds cannot fly?

c Which bird flies at night?

a Which of these inventions is oldest?

b Which one is most recent?

c Which one was especially important for astronomy?

- a What is the currency of India?
- b What is the currency of Canada?
- c And the currency of your country?

the gtrci-ffe

[image]

[image]

Put in the or a.

- 1 When was the telephone invented?
- 2 Can you play musical instrument?
- 3 Jessica plays violin in an orchestra.
- 4 There was piano in the corner of the room.
- 5 Can you play piano?
- 6 Our society is based on family.
- 7 Martin comes from large family.
- 8 computer has changed the way we live.

Complete these sentences using the + the following: injured poor rich sick unemployed young

- 1 TVie young have the future in their hands.
- 2 Ambulances arrived at the scene of the accident and took
- 3 Life is all right if you have a job, but things are not so easy for
- 4 Helen has been a nurse all her life. She has spent her life caring for
- 5 In England there is an old story about a man called Robin Hood. It is said that he robbed

and gave the money to

to hospital.

What do you call the people of these countries?

one person (a/an ...)

Canada & Cox\<xAmx\

Germany

1

2 3 4 5 6 7

the people in general Conaxluuas

France

Russia

China

Brazil

England

8 and your country

Names with and without the 1

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

154

We do not use the with names of people ('Helen', 'Helen Taylor' etc.). In the

same way, we do not use the with most names of places. For example:

But we use the in names with Republic, Kingdom, States etc.: the Czech Republic the United Kingdom (the UK)

the Dominican Republic the United States of America (the USA)

Compare:

Have you been to Canada or the United States?

When we use Mr/Mrs/Captain/Doctor etc. + a name, we do not use the. So we say:

Mr Johnson / Doctor Johnson / Captain Johnson / President Johnson etc.
(not the ...) Uncle Robert / Saint Catherine / Princess Maria etc. (not the ...)

Compare:

We called the doctor.

We called Doctor Johnson, (not the Doctor Johnson)

We use Mount (= mountain) and Lake before a name in the same way
(without the):

Mount Everest (not the ...) Mount Etna Lake Superior Lake Victoria They live near the lake.

They live near Lake Superior, (not the Lake Superior)

We use the with the names of oceans, seas, rivers and canals: the Atlantic (Ocean) the Red Sea

the Indian Ocean the Channel (between

the Mediterranean (Sea) France and Britain)

We use the with the names of deserts:

the Sahara (Desert) the Gobi Desert

the Amazon

the Nile

the Suez Canal

We use the with plural names of people and places:

people countries groups of islands mountain ranges

the Taylors (= the Taylor family), the Johnsons

the Netherlands, the Philippines, the United States

the Canaries / the Canary Islands, the Bahamas

the Rocky Mountains / the Rockies, the Andes, the Alps

The highest mountain in the Andes is (Mount) Aconcagua.

We say:

the north (of Brazil) but northern Brazil (without the)

the south-east (of Spain) but south-eastern Spain Compare:

Sweden is in northern Europe; Spain is in the south.

Also the Middle East, the Far East

We also use north/south etc. (without the) in the names of some regions and countries: North America South Africa

Note that on maps, the is not usually included in the name.

Names with and without the Z Unit 78

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put in the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1 Who is Z Doctor Johnson? (the sentence is complete without the)

2 I was ill, so I went to see doctor.

3 The most powerful person in United States is president.

4 President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.

5 Do you know Wilsons? They're a very nice couple.

6 I'm looking for Professor Brown. Do you know where she is?

Some of these sentences are correct, but some need the (sometimes more than once). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Everest was first climbed in 1953.

2 Milan is in north of Italy.

3 Africa is much larger than Europe.

4 Last year I visited Mexico and United States.

5 South of England is warmer than north.

6 Portugal is in western Europe.

7 France and Britain are separated by Channel.

8 James has travelled a lot in Middle East.

9 Chicago is on Lake Michigan.

10 Next year we're going skiing in Swiss Alps.

11 UK consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

12 Seychelles are a group of islands in Indian Ocean.

13 The highest mountain in Africa is Kilimanjaro.

14 River Volga flows into Caspian Sea.

OK

In the north of Italy

Here are some geography questions. Choose the right answer from one of the boxes and write the if necessary. You do not need all the names in the boxes. Use an atlas if necessary.

10

11

12 13 14 15

What do you have to cross to travel from Europe to America? jtjHfc
Atlantic

Where is Argentina?

Which is the longest river in Africa?

Of which country is Stockholm the capital? Of which country is
Washington the capital?

What is the name of the mountain range in the west of North America?
What is the name of the sea between Africa and Europe?

8 Which is the smallest continent in the world?

9 What is the name of the ocean between North America and Asia?

What is the name of the ocean between Africa and Australia? Which river
flows through London?

Which river flows through Vienna, Budapest and Belgrade?

Of which country is Bangkok the capital?

What joins the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans? Which is the longest river in

South America?

Names with and without the 2

Names without the

We do not use the with names of most city streets/roads/squares/parks etc.:
Union Street (not the ...) Fifth Avenue Hyde Park Queens Road Broadway
Times Square

Names of important public buildings and institutions (for example, airports, stations, universities) are often two words:

Manchester Airport Harvard University The first word is the name of a place ('Manchester') or a person ('Harvard'). These names are usually without the. In the same way, we say:

Victoria Station (not the ...) Canterbury Cathedral

Buckingham Palace Cambridge University

Compare:

Buckingham Palace (not the ...) but the Royal Palace

('Royal' is an adjective - it is not a name like 'Buckingham'.)

Edinburgh Castle Sydney Harbour

Most other buildings have names with the. For example:

hotels

theatres/cinemas museums/galleries other buildings

the Sheraton Hotel, the Holiday Inn

the Palace Theatre, the Odeon (cinema)

the Guggenheim Museum, the National Gallery

the Empire State (Building), the White House, the Eiffel Tower

We often leave out the noun: the Sheraton (Hotel)

the Palace (Theatre) the Guggenheim (Museum)

Some names are only the + noun, for example:

the Acropolis the Kremlin the Pentagon

Names with of usually have the. For example:

the Bank of England the Museum of Modern Art

the Great Wall of China the Tower of London

Note that we say:

the University of Cambridge but Cambridge University (without the)

Many shops, restaurants, hotels, banks etc. are named after people. These names end in -'s or -s. We do not use the with these names:

McDonald's (not the ...) Barclays (bank)

Joe's Diner (restaurant) Macy's (department store)

Churches are often named after saints (St = Saint): St John's Church (not the St Johns Church)

St Patrick's Cathedral

Most newspapers and many organisations have names with the:

newspapers the Washington Post, the Financial Times, the Sun
organisations the European Union, the BBC, the Red Cross

Names of companies, airlines etc. are usually without the: Fiat (not the Fiat) Sony Singapore Airlines Kodak IBM Yale University Press

Names with and without the 1 H> Unit 77

Exercises

Unit

[image]

Use the map to answer the questions. Write the name of the place and the street it is in. Use the if necessary. (Remember that on maps we do not normally use the.)

,,; ft**'

[image]

<5\

1

1*1

G

[TURNER'S SUPERMAR KET

^rgTfTo

[image]

CINEMA

YOU \ 0 ;

are)m '

HERE

[image]

[image]

1

2 3 4 5 6 7 8

Is there a cinema near here? Is there a supermarket near here? Is there a

hotel near here? Is there a church near here? Is there a museum near here?
Is there a bookshop near here? Is there a restaurant near here? Is there a
park near here?

Yes the OcLeon in Market Street

Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes, Yes,

in in in in in in

at the end of

[image]

Where are the following? Use the where necessary.

1 Tunes Square is in New York.

2 is in Paris.

5 is in Moscow.

6 is in New York.

[image]

3 is in London. 7 is in Athens.

4 is in Washington. 8 is near London.

Choose the correct form, with or without the.

1 Have you ever been to B ritish Museum / the British Museum ? (the
British Museum is correct)

2 The biggest park in New York is Central Park / the Central Park .

3 My favourite park in London is St lames's Park / the St lames's Park .

4 Imperial Hotel / The Imperial Hotel is in Baker Street / the Baker Street .

5 Dublin Airport / The Dublin Airport is situated about 12 kilometres from
the city centre.

6 lack is a student at Liverpool University / the Liverpool University .

7 If you're looking for a department store, I would recommend Harrison's / the Harrison's .

8 If you're looking for a hotel, I would recommend Park Plaza / the Park Plaza .

9 Statue of Liberty / The Statue of Liberty is at the entrance to New York Harbour / the New York Harbour .

10 You should go to Science Museum / the Science Museum . It's very interesting.

11 Andy works for IBM / the IBM now. He used to work for British Telecom / the British Telecom .

12 'Which cinema are you going to this evening?' ' Classic / The Classic '

13 I'd like to go to China and see Great Wall / the Great Wall .

14 'Which newspaper do you want?' ' Times /The Times .'

15 This book is published by Cambridge University Press / the Cambridge University Press .

16 'What's that building?' 'It's College of Art / the College of Art '

-> Additional exercise 29 (page 319)

79 Singular and plural

[image]

Sometimes we use a plural noun for one thing that has two parts. For example:

[image]

[image]

[image]

trousers (two legs) pyjamas also jeans/tights/shorts/pants (top and bottom)

[image]

These words are plural, so they take a plural verb:

O My trousers are too long, (not my trousers is)

You can also use a pair of + these words:

Those are nice jeans. or That's a nice pair of jeans, (not a nice jeans) I need some new glasses, or I need a new pair of glasses.

Some nouns end in -ics, but are not usually plural. For example: athletics economics electronics gymnastics maths (= mathematics) physics politics

Gymnastics is my favourite sport, (not Gymnastics are)

News is not plural (see Unit 70B):

What time is the news on TV? (not are the news)

Some words ending in -s can be singular or plural. For example:

means a means of transport many means of transport

series a television series two television series

species a species of bird 200 species of bird

Some singular nouns are often used with a plural verb. For example:

audience committee company family firm government staff team

These nouns are all groups of people. We often think of them as a number of people (= they), not as one thing (= it). So we often use a plural verb:

The government (= they) have decided to increase taxes. D The staff at the company (= they) are not happy with their working conditions. In the same way, we often use a plural verb after the name of a sports team or a company:

Italy are playing Brazil next Sunday (in a football match).

Shell have increased the price of petrol. A singular verb (The government wants ... / Shell has ... etc.) is also possible.

We use a plural verb with police:

The police are investigating the crime, but haven't arrested anyone yet.

(not The police is ... hasn't) Note that we say a police officer / a policeman / a policewoman (not a police).

We do not often use the plural of person ('persons'). We normally use people (a plural word): He's a nice person, but They are nice people, (not nice persons) C Many people don't have enough to eat. (not Many people doesn't)

We think of a sum of money, a period of time, a distance etc. as one thing. So we use a singular verb: Fifty thousand pounds (= it) was stolen in the robbery, (not were stolen) Three years (= it) is a long time to be without a job. (not Three years are) C Two miles isn't very far to walk.

American English ■# Appendix 7

j

Exercises

Unit

79

[image]

[image]

Complete each sentence using a word from Sections A or B. Sometimes you need a or some.

1 My eyesight isn't very good. I need glasses

2 A species is a group of animals or plants that have the same characteristics.

3 Footballers don't wear trousers when they play. They wear

- 4 The bicycle is of transport.
- 5 The bicycle and the car are of transport.
- 6 I want to cut this piece of material. I need
- 7 A friend of mine is writing of articles for the local newspaper.
- 8 There are a lot of American TV shown on TV in Britain.
- 9 While we were out walking, we saw many different of bird.

In each example the words on the left are connected with an activity (for example, a sport or an academic subject). Write the name of the activity. The beginning of the word is given.

- 1 calculate algebra equation m^ewo&cs
- 2 government election minister p
- 3 finance trade employment e
- 4 running jumping throwing a
- 5 light heat gravity ph
- 6 exercises somersault parallel bars gy
- 7 processor silicon chip gigabyte el

[image]

Choose the correct form of the verb, singular or plural. In two sentences either the singular or plural verb is possible.

- 1 Gymnastics is / -afe- my favourite sport. (Js is correct)
- 2 The trousers you bought for me doesn't / don't fit me.
- 3 The police want / wants to interview two men about the robbery last week.
- 4 Physics was / were my best subject at school.

5 Can I borrow your scissors? Mine isn't / aren't sharp enough.

6 It's a nice place to visit. The people is / are very friendly.

7 Fortunately the news wasn't / weren't as bad as we expected.

8 Where does / do your family live?

9 I can't find my binoculars. Do you know where it is / they are ?

10 Does / Do the police know how the accident happened?

11 Germany is / are playing Spain tomorrow night, but it's not on TV.

12 Most people enjoy / enjoys music.

Most of these sentences are wrong. Correct them where necessary.

1 Three years are a long time to be without a job. THree ijeors is. a- long tame

2 The government have decided to increase taxes. OK (has decided is also correct)

3 Susan was wearing a black jeans.

4 I don't like hot weather. Thirty degrees is too hot for me

5 I like Martin and Jane. They're very nice persons.

6 Ten pounds aren't enough. I need more money than that

7 I'm going to buy a new pyjama.

8 The committee haven't made a decision yet.

9 There was a police directing traffic in the street.

10 What is the police going to do?

11 This scissors isn't very sharp.

12 Four days isn't enough for a good holiday.

Noun + noun (a tennis ball / a headache)

You can use two nouns together (noun + noun) to mean one thing/person/idea etc. For example: a tennis ball income tax the city centre

The first noun is like an adjective. It tells us what kind of thing/person/idea etc. For example:

a tennis ball = a ball used to play tennis a bus driver = the driver of a bus

a road accident = an accident that happens on the road income tax = tax that you pay on your income the city centre = the centre of the city a Paris hotel = a hotel in Paris my life story = the story of my life

So you can say:

a television camera a television programme a television studio a television producer (these are all different things or people to do with television)

language problems marriage problems health problems work problems (these are all different kinds of problems)

Compare:

garden vegetables (= vegetables that are grown in a garden) a vegetable garden (= a garden where vegetables are grown)

Sometimes the first word ends in -ing. Usually these are things we use for doing something: a frying pan (= a pan for frying) a washing machine a swimming pool

Sometimes there are more than two nouns together: L I waited at the hotel reception desk.

We watched the World Swimming Championships on television. O If you want to play table tennis (= a game), you need a table tennis table (= a table).

When two nouns are together like this, sometimes we write them as one word and sometimes as two separate words. For example:

a headache toothpaste a weekend a car park a road sign

There are no clear rules for this. If you are not sure, write two words.

Note the difference between:

a sugar bowl (maybe empty) and a bowl of sugar (= a bowl with sugar in it)
a shopping bag (maybe empty) and a bag of shopping (= a bag full of shopping)

When we use noun + noun, the first noun is like an adjective. It is normally singular, but the meaning is often plural. For example: a bookshop is a shop where you can buy books, an apple tree is a tree that has apples.

In the same way we say:

a three-hour journey (= a journey that takes three hours) a ten-pound note (not pounds) a four-week course (not weeks) a six-mile walk (not miles)
two 14-year-old girls (not years)

Compare:

O It was a four-week course. but The course lasted four weeks.

-s and of ... ^ Unit 81 A week's holiday / three weeks' holiday etc. -# Unit 81E

Exercises

What do we call these things and people?

1 A ticket for a concert is & concert ticket

2 Problems concerning health are health problems

3 An interview for a job is

4 Pictures taken on your holiday are your

5 Chocolate made with milk is

6 Somebody whose job is to inspect factories is

7 A horse that runs in races is

8 A race for horses is

9 Shoes for running are

10 A student studying at university is

11 The results of your exams are your

12 The carpet in the living room is

13 A scandal involving an oil company is

14 Workers at a car factory are

15 A scheme for the improvement of a road is

16 A department store in New York is

17 A course that lasts five days is

18 A question that has two parts is

19 A man who is thirty years old is

Answer the questions using two of the following words each time:

accident belt birthday card credit driver

editor forecast newspaper number party road

room seat shop truck weather window

1 This can be caused by bad driving. occultant

2 You should wear this when you're in a car. a

3 You can use this to pay for things instead of cash. a

4 If you want to know if it's going to rain, this is what you need, the

5 This person is a top journalist. a

6 You might stop to look in this when you're walking along a street.

7 If you're staying at a hotel, you need to remember this. your

8 This is a way to celebrate getting older. a

9 This person transports things by road. a

[image]

Which is correct?

1 It's quite a long book. There are 450 page - / 450 pages. (450 pages is correct)

2 I didn't have any change. I only had a twenty-pound / twenty pounds note.

3 I looked down and there were two ten-pound / ten pounds notes on the ground.

4 At work in the morning I usually have a 15-minute / 15 minutes break for coffee.

5 There are 60-minute / 60 minutes in an hour.

6 It's only a two-hour / two hours flight from London to Madrid.

7 My office is on the tenth floor of a twelve-storey / twelve storeys building.

8 I work five-day / five days a week. Saturday and Sunday are free.

9 Five-star / Five stars hotels are the most expensive.

10 Sam's daughter is six-year-old / six years old.

11 The oldest building in the city is the 500-year-old / 500 years old castle.

12 Do you use the twelve-hour / twelve hours clock or the 24-hour / 24 hours clock?

-s (your sister's name) and of... (the name of the book)

We use -s (apostrophe + s) mostly for people or animals:

Tom's computer isn't working, (not the computer of Tom) Q How old are Chris's children? (not the children of Chris)

What's (= What is) your sister's name? O What's Tom's sister's name?

Be careful. Don't step on the cat's tail.

You can use -'s without a noun after it:

O This isn't my book. It's my sister's. (= my sister's book)

We use -'s with a noun (Tom/friend/teacher etc.). We do not use -'s with a long group of words. So we say:

your friend's name but the name of the woman sitting by the door

Note that we say a woman's hat (= a hat for a woman), a boy's name (= a name for a boy), a bird's egg (= an egg laid by a bird) etc.

With a singular noun we use -'s:

my sister's room (= her room - one sister) Mr Carter's house (= his house)

With a plural noun (sisters, friends etc.) we put an apostrophe (') at the end of the word: my sisters' room (= their room - two or more sisters) the Carters' house (= their house - Mr and Mrs Carter)

If a plural noun does not end in -s (for example men/women/children/people) we use -'s: the men's changing room a children's book (= a book for children)

You can use -'s after more than one noun:

Jack and Karen's wedding Mr and Mrs Carter's house

For things, ideas etc., we normally use of (... of the water / ... of the book etc.): the temperature of the water (not the water's temperature) the name of the book the owner of the restaurant

Sometimes the structure noun + noun is possible (see Unit 80): the water temperature the restaurant owner

We say the beginning/end/middle of ... / the top/bottom of / the front/

back/side of ... the beginning of the month (not the month's beginning) the top of the hill the back of the car

You can usually use -'s or of ... for an organisation (= a group of people). So you can say: the government's decision or the decision of the government the company's success or the success of the company

It is also possible to use -'s for places. So you can say:

the city's streets the world's population Italy's prime minister

You can also use -'s with time words (yesterday / next week etc.):

D Do you still have yesterday's newspaper?

O Next week's meeting has been cancelled. In the same way, you can say today's / tomorrow's / this evening's / Monday's etc.

We also use -'s (or -s' with plural words) with periods of time: I've got a week's holiday starting on Monday. Julia has got three weeks' holiday. I live near the station - it's only about ten minutes' walk.

^The garage door (noun + noun) -> Unit 80 A three-hour journey, a ten-pound note -> Unit 80D

Exercises

[image]

[image]

In some of these sentences, it would be more natural to use -'s or -'. Change the underlined parts where necessary.

1 Who is the owner of this restaurant ? OK

2 How old are the children of Chris ? Chias's children

3 Is this the umbrella of your friend ?

4 Write your name at the top of the page .

5 I've never met the daughter of Charles .

- 6 Have you met the son of Helen and Dan ?
- 7 We don't know the cause of the problem .
- 8 Do we still have the newspaper of last Monday ?
- 9 I don't know the words of this song .
- 10 What is the cost of a new computer ?
- 11 The friends of your children are here.
- 12 The garden of our neighbours is very nice.
- 13 I work on the ground floor of the building .
- 14 The hair of David is very long.
- 15 I couldn't go to the party of Katherine .
- 16 Do you know the number of the man I need to speak to ?
- 17 Have you seen the car of the parents of Mike ?
- 18 What's the meaning of this expression ?
- 19 Do you agree with the economic policy of the government ?

[image]

What is another way of saying these things? Use -'s or -s'

- 1 a hat for a woman § woman's hoi
- 2 a name for a boy
- 3 clothes for children
- 4 a school for girls
- 5 a nest for a bird
- 6 a magazine for women

[image]

Read each sentence and write a new sentence beginning with the underlined words.

1 The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.

Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled..

2 The storm last week caused a lot of damage.

Last

3 The only cinema in the town has closed down. The

4 The weather in Bntajn is very changeable.

5 Tourism is the main industry in the region.

[image]

Use the information given to complete the sentences.

1 If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I arrive at about 11. So it's about two., hours' drive from my house to the airport, (drive)

2 If I leave my house at 8.40 and walk to the centre, I get there at 9 o'clock.
So it's from my house to the centre, (walk)

3 I'm going on holiday on the 12th. I have to be back at work on the 26th.
So I've got (holiday)

4 I went to sleep at 3 o'clock this morning and woke up an hour later. After that I couldn't sleep. So last night I only had . (sleep)

Myself/yourself/themselves etc.

(Hi, I'm Steve.)

—

STEVE

[image]

Steve introduced himself to the other guests.

We use myself/yourself/himself etc. (reflexive pronouns) when the subject and object are the same:

Steve introduced himself

subject object

J

The reflexive pronouns are:

singular: myself yourself (one person) plural: ourselves yourselves (more than one person)

I don't want you to pay for me. I'll pay for myself, (not I'll pay for me)

Amy had a great holiday. She really enjoyed herself.

Do you talk to yourself sometimes? (said to one person)

If you want more to eat, help yourselves, (said to more than one person)

Compare:

C It's not our fault. You can't blame us.

G It's our own fault. We should blame ourselves.

We do not use myself etc. after feel/relax/concentrate/meet:

O I feel nervous. I can't relax.

C You must try and concentrate, (not concentrate yourself) What time shall we meet? (not meet ourselves, not meet us)

We normally use wash/shave/dress without myself etc.:

He got up, washed, shaved and dressed, (not washed himself etc.) You can also say get dressed (He got dressed).

Compare -selves and each other:

Kate and Joe stood in front of the mirror and looked at themselves. (= Kate and Joe looked at Kate and Joe) Kate looked at Joe; Joe looked at Kate. They looked at each other.

You can use one another instead of each other:

How long have you and Ben known each other? or ...

himself/herself/itself themselves

[image]

each other

. known one another? Sue and Alice don't like each other, or ... don't like one another. Do you and Sarah live near each other? or ... near one another?

We also use myself/yourself etc. in another way. For example: C 'Who repaired your bike for you?' 'I repaired it myself

I repaired it myself = I repaired it, not anybody else. Here, myself is used to emphasise T (= it makes it stronger). Some more examples:

C I'm not going to do your work for you. You can do it yourself. (= you, not me) O Let's paint the house ourselves. It will be much cheaper. O The film itself wasn't very good, but I loved the music.

I don't think Lisa will get the job. Lisa herself doesn't think so. (or Lisa doesn't think so herself.)

164

Get dressed / get married etc. -> Unit 44D By myself / by yourself etc. Unit 83D

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using myself/yourself etc. + these verbs (in the correct form): blame burn enjoy express hurt introduce put

- 1 Steve introduced himself to the other guests at the party.
- 2 Ben fell down some steps, but fortunately he didn't
- 3 It isn't Sue's fault. She really shouldn't
- 4 Please try and understand how I feel. in my position.
- 5 The children had a great time at the beach. They really
- 6 Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don't
- 7 Sometimes I can't say exactly what I mean. I wish I could better.

Put in myself/yourself/ourselves etc. or me/you/us etc.

- 1 Amy had a great holiday. She enjoyed herself
- 2 It's not my fault. You can't blame
- 3 What I did was really bad. I'm ashamed of
- 4 We've got a problem. I hope you can help
- 5 'Can I take another biscuit?' 'Of course. Help !'
- 6 You must meet Sarah. I'll introduce to her.
- 7 Don't worry about us. We can take care of
- 8 Don't worry about the children. I'll take care of
- 9 I gave them a key to our house so that they could let in.

Complete these sentences. Use myself /yourself etc. only where necessary.
Use these verbs (in the correct form):

concentrate defend dry feel meet relax shave

1 Martin decided to grow a beard because he was fed up with shaving

2 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I much better today.

3 I climbed out of the swimming pool and with a towel.

4 I tried to study, but I couldn't

5 If somebody attacks you, you need to be able to

6 I'm going out with Chris this evening. We're at 7.30.

7 You're always rushing around. Why don't you sit down and ?

Complete the sentences with ourselves/themselves or each other.

1 How long have you and Ben known each other ?

2 If people work too hard, they can make ill.

3 I need you and you need me. We need

4 In Britain friends often give presents at Christmas.

5 Some people are very selfish. They only think of

6 Tracy and I don't see very often these days.

7 We couldn't get back into the house. We had locked out.

8 They've had an argument. They're not speaking to at the moment.

9 We'd never met before, so we introduced to

Complete the answers to the questions using myself/yourself/itself etc.

Sn rt.

Who repaired the bike for you? Who cuts Brian's hair for him?

Do you want me tell Amy about your idea? Who told you that Linda was

going away?

Can you phone John for me?

Nobody. I repaired it myself. Nobody. He cuts No, I'll Linda

Why can't you

[image]

Additional exercise 30 (page 320) 165

A friend of mine my own house on my own / by myself

[image]

[image]

[image]

166

A friend of mine / a friend of yours etc.

We say '(a friend) of mine/yours/his/hers/ours/theirs'. A friend of mine = one of my friends:

I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. A friend of mine is getting married,
[not a friend of me)

□ We went on holiday with some friends of ours, {not some friends of us)

C Mike had an argument with a neighbour of his.

O It was a good idea of yours to go to the cinema.

In the same way we say I (a friend) of my sister's / (a friend) of Tom's' etc.:

C That woman over there is a friend of my sister's. (= one of my sister's friends)
O It was a good idea of Tom's to go to the cinema.

My own ... / your own ... etc.

We use my/your/his/her/its/our/their before own:

my own house your own car her own room (not an own house, an own car etc.)

My own ... / your own ... etc. = something that is only mine/yours, not shared or borrowed: O I don't want to share a room with anybody. I want my own room. C Vicky and Gary would like to have their own house. O It's a shame that the apartment hasn't got its own parking space. O It's my own fault that I've got no money. I buy too many things I don't need.

Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you use your own? (= your own car)

You can also say 'a room of my own', 'a house of your own', 'problems of his own' etc.; D I'd like to have a room of my own.

He won't be able to help you with your problems. He has too many problems of his own.

We also use own to say that we do something ourselves instead of somebody else doing For example:

Brian usually cuts his own hair. (= he cuts it himself; he doesn't go to a barber)

I'd like to have a garden so that I could grow my own vegetables. brian (= grow them myself instead of buying them from shops)

it for us.

o

[image]

On my own / by myself

On my own and by myself both mean 'alone'. We say:

O I like living on my own / by myself.

'Did you go on holiday on your own / by yourself?' 'No, with a friend.' Jack

was sitting on his own / by himself in a corner of the cafe. Learner drivers are not allowed to drive on their own / by themselves.

Myself/yourself/themselves etc. -* Unit 82

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Write new sentences with the same meaning. Change the underlined words and use the structure in Section A (a friend of mine etc.).

1 I am meeting one of my friends tonight. I'm meeting a -friend of mine tonight.

2 We met one of your relatives . We met a

3 Jason borrowed one of my books . Jason

4 Lisa invited some of her friends to her flat. Lisa to her flat.

5 We had dinner with one of our neighbours

6 I went on holiday with two of my friends .

7 Is that man one of your friends ?

8 I met one of lane's friends at the party. at the party.

9 It's always been one of my ambitions to

travel round the world. to travel round the world.

Complete the sentences using my own / our own etc. + the following: bed room business opinions private beach words

1 I share a kitchen and bathroom, but I have my Qm bedroom

2 Gary doesn't think the same as me. He's got

3 Julia is fed up with working for other people. She wants to start

4 In the test we had to read a story, and then write it in

5 We stayed at a luxury hotel by the sea. The hotel had

[image]

Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc.

1 Why do you want to borrow my car? Why don't you your own cat ?

2 How can you blame me? It's not my fault. It's

3 She's always using my ideas. Why can't she use ?

4 Please don't worry about my problems. You've got

5 I can't make his decisions for him. He must make

Complete the sentences using my own / your own etc. Use the following verbs: bake clean -etJt make write

1 Brian never goes to a barber. He cuts his own hair

2 Helen doesn't often buy clothes.

She usually

3 We don't often buy bread.

We usually

4 I'm not going to clean your shoes.

You can

5 Paul and Joe are singers.

They sing songs written by other people, but they also

[image]

Complete the sentences using my own / myself etc.

1 Did you go on holiday on your own ?

2 I'm glad I live with other people. I wouldn't like to live on

3 The box was too heavy for me to lift by

4 'Who was Tom with when you saw him?' 'Nobody. He was by

5 Very young children should not go swimming by

6 I don't think she knows many people. When I see her, she is always by

7 I don't like strawberries with cream. I like them on

8 Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by ?

9 We had no help decorating the flat. We did it completely on

10 I went out with Sally because she didn't want to go out on

There ... and it...

[image]

168

[image]

[image]

Study this example:

[image]

f There's a new restaurant in Hill Street. J

[image]

Yes, I know. I've heard it's very good.

We use there ... when we talk about something for the first time, to say that it exists: O There's a new restaurant in Hill Street, (not A new restaurant is in Hill Street) O I'm sorry I'm late. There was a lot of traffic, (not It was a lot of traffic) O Things are more expensive now. There has been a big rise in the cost of living.

It = a specific thing, place, fact, situation etc. (but see also section C):

O We went to the new restaurant. It's very good. (It = the restaurant)

I wasn't expecting them to come. It was a complete surprise. (It = that they came)

Compare there and it:

D I don't like this town. There's nothing to do here. It's a boring place.

There also means 'to/at/in that place':

D When we got to the party, there were already a lot of people there (= at the party).

You can say there will be / there must be / there might be / there used to be etc.: Will you be busy tomorrow? Will there be much to do? O 'Is there a flight to Rome tonight?' 'There might be. I'll check the website.' O If people drove more carefully, there wouldn't be so many accidents. Also there must have been, there should have been etc.:

I could hear music coming from the house. There must have been somebody at home.

Compare there and it:

C They live on a busy road. There must be a lot of noise from the traffic.

They live on a busy road. It must be very noisy. D There used to be a cinema here, but it closed a few years ago. O That building is now a supermarket. It used to be a cinema.

You can also say there is sure / bound (= sure) / likely to be Compare there and it: O There's sure to be a flight to Rome tonight, (or There's bound to be ...) O There's a flight to Rome tonight, but it's sure to be full, (it

= the flight)

We also use it in sentences like this:

C It's dangerous to walk in the road. We do not usually say 'To walk in the road is dangerous'. Normally we begin with It... . Some more examples:

O It didn't take us long to get here.

O It's a shame (that) you can't come to the party.

3 Let's go. It's not worth waiting any longer.

We also use it to talk about distance, time and weather: C How far is it from here to the airport? O What day is it today? C It's a long time since we saw you last.

It was windy yesterday, (but There was a cold wind.)

It's worth / it's no use / there's no point There is + -ing/-ed -* Unit 97

Unit 63

Sure to / bound to ... etc. -fr Unit 65E

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put in there is/was or it is/was. Some sentences are questions (is there ... ? / is it... ? etc.) and some are negative (isn't/wasn't).

1 The journey took a longtime. There was a lot of traffic.

2 What's this restaurant like? Is \k good?

3 something wrong with the computer. Can you check it for me?

4 I wanted to visit the museum, but enough time.

5 'What's that building? a hotel?' 'No, a theatre.'

6 How do we get across the river? a bridge?

7 A few days ago... a big storm, which caused a lot of damage.

8 I can't find my phone in my bag - I just looked.

9 It's often cold here, but much snow.

10 'How was your trip?' 'a disaster. Everything went wrong.'

11 anything on television, so I turned it off.

12 'a bookshop near here?' 'Yes, one in Hudson Street.'

13 When we got to the cinema, a queue outside a very
long queue, so we decided not to wait.

14 I couldn't see anything completely dark.

15 difficult to get a job right now. a lot of unemployment.

Read the first sentence and then write a sentence beginning There

1 The roads were busy yesterday. There was a lot of traffic,

2 This soup is very salty. There in the soup.

3 The box was empty. in the box.

4 The film is very violent.

5 The shopping mall was crowded.

6 I like this town - it's lively.

Complete the sentences. Use there will be, there would be etc. Choose

from: will may would wouldn't should used to (be) going to

1 If people drove more carefully, there would be fewer accidents.

2 'Do we have any eggs?' 'I'm not sure. some in the fridge.'

3 I think everything will be OK. I don't think any problems.

4 Look at the sky. a storm.

5 'Is there a school in the village?' 'Not now one, but it closed.'

6 People drive too fast on this road. I think a speed limit.

7 If people weren't aggressive, any wars.

Are these sentences right or wrong? Change it to there where necessary.

1 They live on a busy road. It must be a lot of noise. There, must be a lot of noise,

2 It's a long way from my house to the nearest shop.

3 After the lecture it will be an opportunity to ask questions.

4 I like where I live, but it would be nicer to live by the sea

5 Why was she so unfriendly? It must have been a reason.

6 It's three years since I last went to the theatre.

7 a: Where can we park the car?

b: Don't worry. It's sure to be a car park somewhere.

8 It was Ken's birthday yesterday. We had a party.

9 The situation is still the same. It has been no change.

10 It used to be a church here, but it was knocked down.

11 I was told that it would be somebody to meet me at the station, but it wasn't anybody.

12 I don't know who'll win, but it's sure to be a good game.

In general we use some (also somebody/someone/something) in positive sentences and any (also anybody etc.) in negative sentences:

J

We use any in the following sentences because the meaning is negative:

She went out without any money, (she didn't take any money with her) O
He refused to eat anything, (he didn't eat anything)

It's a very easy exam. Hardly anybody fails. (= almost nobody fails)

We use both some and any in questions. We use some/somebody/something to talk about a person or thing that we know exists, or we think exists:

O Are you waiting for somebody? (I think you are waiting for somebody)

We use some in questions when we offer or ask for things:

O Would you like something to eat? (there is something to eat)

Can I have some sugar, please? (there is probably some sugar I can have)

But in most questions, we use any. We do not know if the thing or person exists: 'Do you have any luggage?' 'No, I don't.' I can't find my bag. Has anybody seen it?

We often use any after if:

O If anyone has any questions, I'll be pleased to answer them. Let me know if you need anything.

The following sentences have the idea of if:

I'm sorry for any trouble I've caused. (= if I have caused any trouble)

Anyone who wants to do the exam should tell me by Friday. (= if there is anyone)

We also use any with the meaning 'it doesn't matter which':

You can take any bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which bus you take) 'Sing a song.' 'Which song shall I sing?' 'Any song. I don't mind.' (= it doesn't matter which song) O Come and see me any time you want.

We use anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere in the same way: We forgot to lock the door. Anybody could have come in.

'Let's go out somewhere.' 'Where shall we go?' 'Anywhere. I just want to go out.'

Compare something and anything:

a: I'm hungry. I want something to eat. b: What would you like?

a: I don't mind. Anything. (= it doesn't matter what)

Somebody/someone/anybody/anyone are singular words:

Someone is here to see you. But we use they/them/their after these words:

O Someone has forgotten their umbrella. (= his or her umbrella)

If anybody wants to leave early, they can. (= he or she can)

Not . any Unit 86 Some of / any of . Unit 88 Hardly any -¥ Unit 101D

[image]

[image]

Put in some or any.

1 We didn't buy flowers.

2 Tonight I'm going out with friends of mine.

3 a: Have you seen good movies recently? b: No, I haven't been to the cinema for ages.

4 I didn't have money, so I had to borrow

5 Can I have milk in my coffee, please?

6 We wanted to buy grapes, but they didn't have in the shop.

7 He did everything himself-without help.

8 You can use this card to withdraw money at cash machine.

9 I'd like information about places of interest in the town.

10 With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on train you like.

11 Those apples look nice. Shall we buy ?

Complete the sentences with some- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.

1 I was too surprised to say anything ,

2 There's at the door. Can you go and see who it is?

3 Does mind if I open the window?

4 I wasn't feeling hungry, so I didn't eat

5 You must be hungry. Why don't I get you to eat?

6 Quick, let's go! There's coming and I don't want to see us.

7 Sarah was upset about and refused to talk to

8 This machine is very easy to use. can learn to use it very quickly.

9 There was hardly on the beach. It was almost deserted.

10 'Do you live near Joe?' 'No, he lives in another part of town.'

11 'Where shall we go on holiday?' 'Let's go warm and sunny.'

12 They stay at home all the time. They never seem to go

13 I'm going to a meeting now. If needs me, tell them I'll be back at 11.30.

14 Why are you looking under the bed? Have you lost ?

15 This is a no-parking area. who parks here will have to pay a fine.

16 Jonathan stood up and left the room without saying

17 'Can I ask you ?' 'Sure. What do you want to ask?'

18 Sue is very secretive. She never tells (2 words)

Complete the sentences. Use any (+ noun) or anybody/anything/anywhere.

S n /L

2 3

5 6

7 8

Which bus do I have to catch? Which day shall I come? What do you want to eat?

Where shall I sit?

What sort of job are you looking for? What time shall I call you tomorrow?

Who shall I invite to the party? Which newspaper shall I buy?

Avuj bus . They all go to the centre.

I don't mind.

have.

I don't mind. Whatever you

It's up to you. You can sit you like.

. It doesn't matter.

Leave a message if I

don't answer and I'll get back to you.

I don't mind. you like.

See what they

have in the shop.

No/none/any Nothing/nobody etc.

No and none

We use no + noun. No = not a or not any:

We had to walk home because there was no bus. (= there wasn't a bus)

C Sue will have no trouble finding a job. (= Sue won't have any trouble ...)

O There were no shops open. (= There weren't any shops open.) You can use no + noun at the beginning of a sentence:

O No reason was given for the change of plan.

We use none without a noun:

1 'How much money do you have?' 'None.' (= no money)

O All the tickets have been sold. There are none left. (= no tickets left) Or we use none of ...

This money is all yours. None of it is mine.

Compare none and any:

'How much luggage do you have?' 'None.' / 'I don't have any.'

After none of + plural (none of the students, none of them etc.) the verb can be singular or plural. A plural verb is more usual:

None of the shops were (or was) open.

Nothing nobody/no-one nowhere

You can use these words at the beginning of a sentence or alone (as answers to questions): O 'What's going to happen?' 'Nobody (or No-one) knows.' O 'What happened?' 'Nothing.'

O 'Where are you going?' 'Nowhere. I'm staying here.'

You can also use these words after a verb, especially after be and have: O The house is empty. There's nobody living there. We had nothing to eat.

Nothing/nobody etc. = not + anything/anybody etc.: I said nothing. = I didn't say anything.

O Jane told nobody about her plans. = Jane didn't tell anybody about her plans. O They have nowhere to live. = They don't have anywhere to live.

With nothing/nobody etc., do not use a negative verb (isn't, didn't etc.): C I said nothing, (not I didn't say nothing)

After nobody/no-one you can use they/them/their (see also Unit 85E): O Nobody is perfect, are they? (= is he or she perfect) C No-one did what I asked them to do. (= him or her)

Nobody in the class did their homework. (= his or her homework)

Sometimes any/anything/anybody etc. means 'it doesn't matter which/what/who' (see Unit 85D). Compare no- and any-:

C There was no bus, so we walked home.

You can take any bus. They all go to the centre. (= it doesn't matter which) 'What do you want to eat?' 'Nothing. I'm not hungry.' I'm so hungry. I could eat anything. (= it doesn't matter what) C The exam was extremely difficult. Nobody passed. (= everybody failed)

The exam was very easy. Anybody could have passed. (= it doesn't matter who)

^Some and any -> Unit 85 None of ... -> Unit 88 Any bigger / no better etc. -> Unit 106B

Exercises

^ W Complete these sentences with no, none or any.

1 It was a public holiday, so there were \$\$ shops open.

2 I haven't got any money. Can you lend me some?

3 We had to walk home because there were taxis.

4 We had to walk home because there weren't taxis.

5 'How many eggs have we got?' ' . Do you want me to get some?'

6 We took a few pictures, but of them were very good.

7 'Did you take lots of pictures?' 'No, I didn't take '

8 What a stupid thing to do! intelligent person would do such a thing.

9 There's nowhere to cross the river. There's bridge.

10 I haven't read of the books you lent me.

11 We cancelled the party because of the people we invited were able to come.

12 'Do you know when Chris will be back?' 'I'm sorry. I have idea.'

Answer these questions using none/nobody/nothing/nowhere.

[image]

[image]

3\

A.

1

2 3 4 5 6

What did you do? Who were you talking to? How much sugar do you want?

Where are you going? How many emails did you get? How much did you pay?

Now answer the same questions using complete sentences with any/ anybody/anything/ anywhere.

7 (1) I didn't do anything.

8 (2) I

9 (3)

10 (4)

11 (5)

12 (6)

[image]

3)

Complete these sentences with no- or any- + -body/-thing/-where.

1 I don't want anything to drink. I'm not thirsty.

2 The bus was completely empty. There was on it.

3 'Where did you go for your holidays?' 'I stayed at home.'

4 I went to the shops, but I didn't buy

5 'What did you buy?' 'I couldn't find I wanted.'

6 The town is still the same as it was years ago. has changed.

7 Have you seen my watch? I can't find it

8 There was complete silence in the room said

Choose the right word.

1 She didn't tell nobody / anybody about her plans, (anybody is correct)

2 The accident looked bad, but fortunately nobody / anybody was badly injured.

3 I looked out of the window, but I couldn't see no-one / anyone .

4 My job is very easy. Nobody / Anybody could do it.

5 'What's in that box?' ' Nothing / Anything . It's empty.'

6 The situation is uncertain. Nothing / Anything could happen.

7 I don't know nothing / anything about economics.

8 I'll try and answer no / any questions you ask me.

9 'Who were you talking to just now?' ' No-one / Anyone . I wasn't talking to no-one / anyone .

-> Additional exercise 30 (page 320)

Much, many, little, few, a lot, plenty

We use much and little with uncountable nouns:

much time much luck little energy little money

We use many and few with plural nouns:

many friends many people few cars few countries

We use a lot of / lots of / plenty of with both uncountable and plural nouns:
a lot of luck lots of time plenty of money

a lot of friends lots of people plenty of ideas

Plenty = more than enough:

There's no need to hurry. We've got plenty of time.

Much is unusual in positive sentences (especially in spoken English).
Compare:

D We didn't spend much money. but We spent a lot of money, (not We spent much money)

Do you see David much? but I see David a lot. (not I see David much)

We use many and a lot of in all kinds of sentences:

Many people drive too fast. or A lot of people drive too fast.

3 Do you know many people? or Do you know a lot of people? There aren't many tourists here, or There aren't a lot of tourists here.

Note that we say many years / many weeks / many days (not a lot of...):
We've lived here for many years, (not a lot of years)

Little = not much, few = not many:

Gary is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things. (= not much time, less time than he would like)

Vicky doesn't like living in London. She has few friends there. (= not many, not as many as she would like)

You can say very little and very few:

Gary has very little time for other things. Vicky has very few friends in London.

A little = some, a small amount:

Let's go and have a coffee. We have a little time before the train leaves, (a little time = some time, enough time to have a coffee) O 'Do you speak English?' 'A little.' (so we can talk a bit)

A few = some, a small number:

I enjoy my life here. I have a few friends and we meet quite often, (a few friends = not many but enough to have a good time) O 'When was the last time you saw Clare?' 'A few days ago.' (= some days ago)

Compare little and a little, few and a few:

He spoke little English, so it was difficult to communicate with him.

He spoke a little English, so we were able to communicate with him.

She's lucky. She has few problems. (= not many problems)

Things are not going so well for her. She has a few problems. (= some problems)

You can say only a little and only a few:

Hurry! We only have a little time, (not only little time)

The village was very small. There were only a few houses, (not only few houses)

Countable and uncountable -* Units 69-70

j

Exercises

Unit

[image]

In some of these sentences much is incorrect or unnatural. Change much to many or a lot (of) where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is correct.

- 1 We didn't spend much money. OK
- 2 Sue drinks much tea. & Lot of tea
- 3 Joe always puts much salt on his food.
- 4 We'll have to hurry. We don't have much time
- 5 It cost much to repair the car.
- 6 Did it cost much to repair the car?
- 7 I don't know much people in this town.
- 8 Mike travels much.
- 9 There wasn't much traffic this morning.
- 10 You need much money to travel round the world.

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using plenty or plenty of + the following: hotels
money room time to learn to see

- 1 There's no need to hurry. There's plenty of time.
- 2 He doesn't have any financial problems. He has
- 3 Come and sit with us. There's
- 4 She knows a lot, but she still has

5 It's an interesting town to visit. There

6 I'm sure we'll find somewhere to stay.

Put in much/many/little/few (one word only).

1 She isn't very popular. She has few friends.

2 Ann is very busy these days. She has free time.

3 Did you take pictures when you were on holiday?

4 I'm not very busy today. I don't have to do.

5 This is a very modern city. There are old buildings.

6 The weather has been very dry recently. We've had rain.

7 'Do you know Rome?' 'No, I haven't been there for years.'

Put in a (a few, a little) where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already complete.

1 She's lucky. She has few problem s. QK

2 Things are not going so well for her. She has few problems . problems

3 Can you lend me few dollars ?

4 There was little tra ffic, so the journey didn't take very long.

5 I can't give you a decision yet. I need little time to think.

6 It was a surprise that he won the match. Fe w people
expected him to win.

7 I don't know much Spanish - only few word s.

8 I wonder how Sam is. I haven't seen him for few months.

[image]

Put in little / a little / few / a few.

1 Gary is very busy with his job. He has time for other things.

2 Listen carefully I'm going to give you advice.

3 Do you mind if I ask you questions?

4 It's not a very interesting place to visit, so tourists come here.

5 I don't think Amy would be a good teacher. She has patience.

6 'Would you like milk in your coffee?' 'Yes,

7 This is a very boring place to live. There's to do.

8 'Have you ever been to Paris?' 'Yes, I've been there times.'

Unit

88 All / all of most / most of no / none of etc.

all some any most much/many little/few no

You can use the words in the box with a noun (some food / few books etc.):

0 All cars have wheels. O Some cars can go faster than others. O (on a notice) NO CARS. (= no cars allowed) O Many people drive too fast. O I don't go out very often. I'm at home most days.

You cannot say 'all of cars', 'some of people' etc. (see also Section B):

[image]

Some people learn languages more easily than others, (not Some of people)

Note that we say most (not the most):

Most tourists don't visit this part of the town, (not The most tourists)

all some any most much/many little/few half none

You can use these words with of (some of / most of etc.).

So you can say:

some of the people, some of those people (but not some of people) most of my time, most of the time (but not most of time)

D Some of the people I work with are not very friendly.

Q None of this money is mine.

O Have you read any of these books?

I was sick yesterday. I spent most of the day in bed.

You don't need of after all or half. So you can say:

C All my friends live in Los Angeles, or All of my friends ... C Half this money is mine, or Half of this money ...

Compare:

D All flowers are beautiful. (= all flowers in general)

All (of) the flowers in this garden are beautiful. (= a specific group of flowers) O Most problems have a solution. (= most problems in general)

We were able to solve most of the problems we had. (= a specific group of problems)

You can use all of / some of / none of etc. + it/us/you/them:

O 'How many of these people do you know?' None of them. / A few of them.'

O Do any of you want to come to a party tonight?

O 'Do you like this music?' 'Some of it. Not all of it.'

We say: all of us / all of you / half of it / half of them etc. You need of before it/us/you/them: All of us were late, (not all us) O I haven't finished the book yet. I've only read half of it. (not half it)

You can also use some/most etc. alone, without a noun: Some cars have four doors and some have two. O A few of the shops were open, but most

(of them) were closed. O Half this money is mine, and half (of it) is yours, (not the half)

All Units 75B, 90,100D Some and any-> Unit 85 No and none ■# Unit 86 Much/many/little/few -> Unit 87 All of whom / most of which etc. Unit 96B

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put in of where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

- 1 All cars have wheels, (the sentence is already complete)
- 2 None of this money is mine.
- 3 Some films are very violent.
- 4 Some the films I've seen recently have been very violent.
- 5 Joe never goes to museums. He says that all museums are boring.
- 6 I think some people watch too much TV.
- 7 'Do you want any these magazines?' 'No, I've finished with them.'
- 8 Kate has lived in London most her life.
- 9 Joe has lived in Chicago all his life. 10 Most days I get up before 7 o'clock.

Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of (some of / most of etc.) where necessary.

accidents European countries my dinner the players

birds her friends my spare time the population

cars her opinions the buildings these books

1 I haven't read many of these books .

2 All cars have wheels.

3 I spend much gardening.

4 Many are caused by bad driving.

5 It's a historic town. Many are over 400 years old.

6 When she got married, she kept it a secret. She didn't tell any

7 Not many people live in the north of the country. Most live in the south.

8 Not all can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.

9 Our team played badly and lost the game. None played well.

10 Emma and I have very different ideas. I don't agree with many

11 Sarah travels a lot in Europe. She has been to most

12 I had no appetite. I could only eat half

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 The building was damaged in the explosion. All the windows were broken.

2 We argue sometimes, but get on well most of

3 I went to the cinema by myself. None of wanted to come.

4 The test was difficult. I could only answer half

5 Some of you took at the wedding were very good.

6 'Did you spend all I gave you?' 'No, there's still some left.'

Complete the sentences. Use:

all of / some of / none of + it/them/us (all of it / some of them etc.)

1 These books are all Jane's. None of them belong to me.

2 How many of these books have you read?' Everyone.'

3 We all got wet in the rain because had an umbrella.

4 Some of this money is yours and is mine.

5 I asked some people for directions, but was able to help me.

6 She invented the whole story from beginning to end was true.

7 Not all the tourists in the group were Spanish. were French.

8 I watched most of the film, but not

Unit Both / both of neither / neither of 89 either / either of

We use both/neither/either for two things. You can use these words with a noun (both books, neither book etc.).

For example, you are going out to eat. There are two possible restaurants. You say: Both restaurants are very good, (not The both restaurants) Neither restaurant is expensive. C We can go to either restaurant. I don't mind.

(either = one or the other, it doesn't matter which one)

You can also use both/neither/either alone, without a noun:

) I couldn't decide which of the two shirts to buy. I liked both, (or I liked both of them.) Q 'Is your friend British or American?' 'Neither. She's Australian.' 0 'Do you want tea or coffee?' 'Either. I don't mind.'

Both of ... / neither of ... / either of ...

We use both of / neither of / either of + the/these/my/Tom's ... etc. So we say 'both of the restaurants', 'both of those restaurants' etc. (but not both of restaurants):

Both of these restaurants are very good.

Neither of the restaurants we went to was (or were) expensive.

I haven't been to either of those restaurants. (= I haven't been to one or the other)

You don't need of after both. So you can say:

Both my parents are from Egypt, or Both of my parents ...

You can use both of / neither of / either of + us/you/them:

(talking to two people) Can either of you speak Russian? I asked two people the way to the station, but neither of them could help me. You must say 'both of before us/you/them:

Both of us were very tired, (not Both us were ...)

After neither of ... a singular or a plural verb is possible:

Neither of the children wants (or want) to go to bed.

You can say: both ... and ...

c

neither ... nor ...

o

either ... or ...

Compare either/neither/both (two things) and any/none/all (more than two):

There are two good hotels here. You could stay at either of them.

We tried two hotels. Neither of them had any rooms. Both of them were full.

Both Chris and Paul were late. I was both tired and hungry when I arrived home.

Neither Chris nor Paul came to the party.

There was an accident in the street where we live, but we neither saw nor heard anything.

I'm not sure where Maria's from. She's either Spanish or Italian. Either you apologise, or I'll never speak to you again.

There are many good hotels here. You could stay at any of them.

We tried a lot of hotels. [None of them had any rooms. All of them were full.

Neither do I / I don't either -> Unit 51C Both of whom / neither of which -¥
Unit 96B Both -¥ Unit 110D

)

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences with both/neither/either.

1 'Do you want tea or coffee?' 1 Either . I really don't mind.'

2 'What day is it today-the 18th or the 19th?' ' It's the 20th.'

3 a: Where did you go on your trip - Korea or Japan?

b: We went to A week in Korea and a week in Japan.

4 'Shall we sit in the corner or by the window?' 1 I don't mind.'

5 'Where's Lisa? Is she at work or at home?' ' She's away on holiday.'

Complete the sentences with both/neither/either. Use of where necessary.

1 Both my parents are from London.

2 To get to the town centre, you can go along the footpath by the river or

you can go along the road. You can go way.

3 I tried twice to phone Carl, but times he was out.

4 Tom's parents is English. His father is Polish and his mother is Italian.

5 I saw an accident this morning. One car drove into the back of another.
Fortunately

driver was injured, but cars were badly damaged.

6 I've got two sisters and a brother. My brother is working, but my sisters are still at school.

Complete the sentences with both/neither/either + of us / of them.

1 I asked two people the way to the station, but neither of tHem. could help me.

2 I was invited to two parties last week, but I couldn't go to

3 There were two windows in the room. It was very warm, so I opened

4 Sarah and I play tennis together regularly, but we're not very good, can play very well.

5 I tried two bookshops for the book I wanted, but had it.

Write sentences with both ... and ... / neither ... nor ... / either ... or

1 Chris was late. So was Pat Both Chris and. Pat were Late,

2 He didn't say hello, and he didn't smile. He neither said ..Hello nor smiled.

3 Joe is on holiday and so is Sam.

4 Joe doesn't have a car. Sam doesn't have one either.

5 Brian doesn't watch TV and he doesn't read newspapers.

6 It was a boring movie. It was long too.

The movie

7 Is that man's name Richard? Or is it Robert? It's one of the two. That man's name

8 I haven't got time to go on holiday. And I don't have the money.

I have

9 We can leave today or we can leave tomorrow - whichever you prefer.
We

Complete the sentences with neither/either/none/any.

1 We tried a lot of hotels, but none of them had any rooms.

2 I took two books with me on holiday, but I didn't read of them.

3 I took five books with me on holiday, but I didn't read of them.

4 There are a few shops at the end of the street, but of them sells newspapers.

5 You can phone me at time during the evening. I'm always at home.

6 I can meet you next Monday or Friday. Would of those days suit you?

7 John and I couldn't get into the house because of us had a key.

Unit

Qn

90 All, every and whole

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

180

All and everybody/everyone

We do not normally use all to mean everybody/everyone:

Everybody had a great time at the party, (not All enjoyed)

But we say all of us / all of you / all of them:

All of us had a great time at the party, (not Everybody of us)

All and everything

Sometimes you can use all or everything:

I'll do all I can to help, or I'll do everything I can to help.

You can say 'all I can' / 'all you need' etc., but we do not normally use all alone: He thinks he knows everything, (not he knows all)

Our holiday was a disaster. Everything went wrong, (not All went wrong)
But you can say all about:

He knows all about computers.

We also use all (not everything) to mean 'the only thing(s)':

D All I've eaten today is a sandwich. (= the only thing I've eaten today)

Every / everybody / everyone / everything are singular words, so we use a singular verb: O Every seat in the theatre was taken.

Everybody has arrived, (not have arrived) But we use they/them/their after everybody/everyone:

Everybody said they enjoyed themselves. (= everybody enjoyed himself or herself)

Whole and all

Whole = complete, entire. Most often we use whole with singular nouns:

Did you read the whole book? (= all the book, not just a part of it)

Emily has lived her whole life in the same town.

I was so hungry, I ate a whole packet of biscuits. (= a complete packet)

We use the/my/her etc. before whole. Compare whole and all: her whole life but all her life

We do not normally use whole with uncountable nouns. We say:

D I've spent all the money you gave me. (not the whole money)

Every/all/whole with time words

We use every to say how often something happens (every day / every Monday / every ten minutes / every three weeks etc.):

O When we were on holiday, we went to the beach every day. (not all days)

C The bus service is excellent. There's a bus every ten minutes.

O We don't see each other very often - about every six months.

All day / the whole day = the complete day from beginning to end: O We spent all day / the whole day on the beach.

C Dan was very quiet. He didn't say a word all evening /the whole evening. Note that we say all day (not all the day), all week (not all the week) etc.

Compare all the time and every time:

They never go out. They are at home all the time. (= always, continuously)
Every time I see you, you look different. (= each time, on every occasion)

Countable and uncountable Units 69-70 Every one -> Unit 91D All (word order)

All/all of -¥ Unit 88 Unit110D

Each and every «4 Unit 91

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete these sentences with all, everything or everybody/everyone.

1 It was a good party. Everybody had a great time.

2 All I've eaten today is a sandwich.

3 has their faults. Nobody is perfect.

4 Nothing has changed. is the same as it was.

5 Kate told me about her new job. It sounds quite interesting.

6 Can write their names on a piece of paper, please?

7 Why are you always thinking about money? Money isn't

8 I didn't have much money with me. I had was ten pounds.

9 When the fire alarm rang, left the building immediately.

10 Sarah didn't say where she was going. she said was that she was going away.

11 We have completely different opinions. I disagree with she says.

12 We all did well in the exam. in our class passed.

13 We all did well in the exam. of us passed.

14 Why are you so lazy? Why do you expect me to do for you?

1 Write sentences with whole.

1 I read the book from beginning to end. I read, the whole book.

2 Everyone in the team played well. The

3 Paul opened a box of chocolates. When he finished eating, there were no chocolates left in the box. He ate

4 The police came to the house. They were looking for something. They searched everywhere, every room. They

5 Everyone in Ed and Jane's family plays tennis. Ed and Jane play, and so do all their children. The

6 Ann worked from early in the morning until late in the evening.

7 Jack and Lisa had a week's holiday by the sea. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end. It

Now write sentences 6 and 7 again using all instead of whole.

8 (6) Ann

9 (7)

Complete these sentences using every with the following: five minutes ten minutes four hours six months four years

1 The bus service is very good. There's a bus every ten minutes

2 Tom is ill. He has some medicine. He has to take it

3 The Olympic Games take place

4 We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over our house

5 Martin goes to the dentist for a check-up

[image]

Which is the correct alternative?

1 I've spent the whole money / all the money you gave me. (all the money is correct)

2 Sue works every day / all days except Sunday.

3 I'm tired. I've been working hard all the day / all day .

4 It was a terrible fire. Whole building /The whole building was destroyed.

5 I've been trying to contact her, but every time / all the time I phone there's no answer.

6 I don't like the weather here. It rains every time / all the time .

7 When I was on holiday, all my luggage / my whole luggage was stolen.

-> Additional exercise 30 (page 320)

Unit

91 .

[image]

[image]

Each and every

Each and every are similar in meaning. Often it is possible to use each or every: O Each time (or Every time) I see you, you look different.

There are computers in each classroom (or every classroom) in the school.

But each and every are not exactly the same. Study the difference:

We use each when we think of things separately, one by one.

□ Study each sentence carefully. (= study the sentences one by one)

each = X + x + X + X

Each is more usual for a small number:

There were four books on the table. Each book was a different colour. (in a card game) At the beginning of the game, each player has three cards.

We use every when we think of things as a group. The meaning is similar to all.

Every sentence must have a verb.

(= all sentences in general)

every = (X

X X

>fx x x x x x x>C^n xxx x x^xxxxx x x^ xxx x x x x x A

Every is more usual for a large number:

Kate loves reading. She has read every book in the library. (= all the books)

I'd like to visit every country in the world. (= all the countries)

Each (but not every) can be used for two things:

In football, each team has eleven players, (not every team)

We use every (not each) to say how often something happens:

D 'How often do you use your car?' 'Everyday.' (not Each day) O There's a bus every ten minutes, (not each ten minutes)

Compare the structures we use with each and every:

You can use each with a noun: each book each student

You can use each alone (without a noun): O None of the rooms was the same.

Each (= each room) was different. O you can use each one:

Each one was different.

You can say each of (the ... / these ... / them

etc.):

Read each of these sentences carefully. D Each of the books is a different

colour. Each of them is a different colour.

You can use every with a noun: every book every student

You can't use every alone, but you can say every one:

a: Have you read all these books? b: Yes, every one.

You can say every one of ... (but not 'every of):

I've read everyone of those books. (not every of those books) I've read every one of them.

J

You can also use each in the middle or at the end of a sentence. For example:

The students were each given a book. (= Each student was given a book.) C
These oranges cost 40 pence each.

Everyone and every one

Everyone (one word) is only for people (= everybody).

Every one (two words) is for things or people, and is similar to each one (see Section B). O Everyone enjoyed the party. (= Everybody ...)

D Sarah is invited to lots of parties and she goes to every one. (= to every party)

Each other -> Unit 82C All and every -* Unit 90

j

Exercises

[image]

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with each or every.

[image]

1 ... £&ek) player has three cards.

2 Kate has read book in the library.

3 side of a square is the same length.

4 seat in the theatre was taken.

5 There are six apartments in the building.

6 There's a train to London hour.

7 She was wearing four rings - one on finger.

8 Our football team is playing well. We've won

one has a balcony.

game this season.

[image]

6 7

[image]

Put in each or every.

1 There were four books on the table. £ocH book was a different colour.

2 The Olympic Games are held ...&venj,,. four years.

3 parent worries about their children.

4 In a game of tennis there are two or four players. player has a racket.

5 Nicola plays volleyball Thursday evening.

I understood most of what they said but not word.

The book is divided into five parts and of these has three sections.

8 I get paid four weeks.

9 I called the office two or three times, but time it was closed.

10 Car seat belts save lives. driver should wear one.

11 A friend of mine has three children. I always give of them a present at Christmas.

12 (from an exam) Answer all five questions. Write your answer to question on a

separate sheet of paper.

Complete the sentences using each.

1 The price of one of those oranges is 30 pence TVio.se oranges are 30 pence eacVi

2 I had ten pounds and so did Sonia. Sonia and I

3 One of those postcards costs 80 pence. Those

4 The hotel was expensive. I paid £150 and so did you. We

[image]

Put in everyone (1 word) or every one (2 words).

1 Sarah is invited to a lot of parties and she goes to every one

2 As soon as had arrived, we began the meeting.

3 I asked her lots of questions and she answered correctly.

4 Amy is very popular likes her.

5 I dropped a tray of glasses. Unfortunately broke.

92 , Relative clauses 1: clauses with who/that/which

Look at this example sentence:

The woman who lives next door is a doctor.

relative clause

A clause is a part of a sentence. A relative clause tells us which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

D The woman who lives next door ... ('who lives next door' tells us which woman)

People who live in the country ... ('who live in the country' tells us what kind of people)

We use who in a relative clause when we are talking about people (not things): the woman - she lives next door - is a doctor

► The woman who lives next door is a doctor.

we know a lot of people - they live in the country

f

► We know a lot of people who live in the country.

An architect is someone who designs buildings. What was the name of the person who phoned? Anyone who wants to apply for the job must do so by Friday.

You can also use that (instead of who), but you can't use which for people:

The woman that lives next door is a doctor, (not the woman which)

Sometimes you must use who (not that) for people - see Unit 95.

When we are talking about things, we use that or which (not who) in a relative clause: where is the cheese? - it was in the fridge

► Where is the cheese j ^Jjf^ j was in the fridge?

I don't like stories that have unhappy endings, (or stories which have ...)

Grace works for a company that makes furniture, (or a company which makes furniture) D The machine that broke down is working again now. (or

The machine which broke down)

That is more usual than which, but sometimes you must use which - see

Unit 95.

Remember that in relative clauses we use who/that/which, not he/she/they/it.

Compare:

C 'Who's that woman?' 'She lives next door to me.'

I've never spoken to the woman who lives next door, (not the woman she lives)

Where is the cheese? It was in the fridge.

Where is the cheese that was in the fridge? (not the cheese it was)

What = 'the thing(s) that'. Compare what and that:

D What happened was my fault. (= the thing that happened)

but

O Everything that happened was my fault, (not Everything what happened)

D The machine that broke down is now working again, (not The machine what broke down)

Relative clauses 2-5 -> Units 93-96

j

Exercises

[image]

In this exercise you have to explain what some words mean. Choose the right meaning from the box and then write a sentence with who. Use a dictionary if necessary.

[image]

steals from a shop designs build i ngs doesn't believe in God is not brave

he/she

buys something from a shop pays rent to live in a house or apartment
breaks into a house to steal things expects the worst to happen

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

(an architect) An architect is someone who designs buildings

(a burglar) A burglar is someone

(a customer)

(a shoplifter)

(a coward)

(an atheist)

(a pessimist)

(a tenant)

Make one sentence from two. Use who/that/which.

1 A girl was injured in the accident. She is now in hospital.

The girl who was injured in the accident is now in hospital.

2 A waitress served us. She was impolite and impatient.

The

3 A building was destroyed in the fire. It has now been rebuilt.

The

• «..... (

[image]

4 Some people were arrested. They have now been released.

The

5 A bus goes to the airport. It runs every half hour. The

Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and make a relative clause.

invented the telephone runs away from home stole my wallet were hanging
on the wall

gives you the meaning of words can support life cannot be explained

1 Helen works for a company that ...makes -furniture

2 The book is about a girl

3 What happened to the pictures

4 A mystery is something

5 The police have arrested the man

6 A dictionary is a book

7 Alexander Bell was the man

8 It seems that Earth is the only planet

[image]

Are these sentences right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

1 I don't like stories who have unhappy endings.

2 What was the name of the person who phoned?

3 Where's the nearest shop who sells bread?

4 The driver which caused the accident was fined £500.

5 Do you know the person that took these pictures?

6 We live in a world what is changing all the time.

7 Dan said some things about me that were not true.

8 What was the name of the horse it won the race?

stories that have OK

Relative clauses 2: I clauses with and without who/that/which

Look at these example sentences from Unit 92:

O The woman who lives next door is a doctor, (or The woman that lives ...)

The woman lives next door. who (= the woman) is the subject

O Where is the cheese that was in the fridge? (or the cheese which was ...)

The cheese was in the fridge, that (= the cheese) is the subject

You must use who/that/which when it is the subject of the relative clause.
So you cannot say 'The woman lives next door is a doctor' or 'Where is the cheese was in the fridge?'.

Sometimes who/that/which is the object of the verb. For example: The woman who I wanted to see was away on holiday.

who (= the woman) is the object wanted to see the woman , . . . J

I is the subject

Have you found the keys that you lost?

You lost the keys.

that (= the keys) is the object you is the subject.

When who/that/which is the object, you can leave it out. So you can say:

The woman I wanted to see was away, or The woman who I wanted to see ... O Have you found the keys you lost? or ... the keys that you lost? O The dress Lisa bought doesn't fit her very well, or The dress that Lisa bought... C Is there anything I can do? or ... anything that I can do? Note that we say:

the keys you lost (not the keys you lost them) the dress Lisa bought (not the

dress Lisa bought it)

Note the position of prepositions (in/to/for etc.) in relative clauses: Tom is talking to a woman-do you know her?

Do you know the woman (who/that) Tom is talking to ? I slept in a bed last night - it wasn't very comfortable

The bed (that/which) I slept in last night wasn't very comfortable.

Are these the books you were looking for? or ... the books that/which you were ... The woman he fell in love with left him after a month, or The woman who/that he O The man I was sitting next to on the plane talked all the time, or The man who/that I was sitting next to ... Note that we say:

the books you were looking for (not the books you were looking for them)

You cannot use what in sentences like these (see also Unit 92D):

O Everything (that) they said was true, (not Everything what they said) □ I gave her all the money (that) I had. (not all the money what I had)

What = the thing(s) that:

O Did you hear what they said? (= the things that they said)

^Relative clauses 1 -> Unit 92 Relative clauses 3-5 -> Units 94-96 Whom -> Unit 94B J

Exercises

[image]

In some of these sentences you need who or that. Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 The woman lives next door is a doctor. I^e- womcun who .lives ..next..door.

2 Have you found the keys you lost? Q.K

3 The people we met last night were very nice.

- 4 The people who work in the office are very nice.
- 5 The people I work with are very nice.
- 6 What have you done with the money I gave you?
- 7 What happened to the money that was on the table?
- 8 What's the worst film you've ever seen?
- 9 What's the best thing that has ever happened to you?

[image]

[image]

[image]

What do you say in these situations? Complete each sentence with a relative clause.

1 Your friend lost some keys. You want to know if he has found them. You say:

Have you found the keys you lost ?

2 A friend is wearing a dress. You like it. You tell her: I like the dress

3 A friend is going to see a film. You want to know the name of the film. You say:

What's the name of the film ?

4 You wanted to visit a museum. It was shut when you got there. You tell a friend:

The museum was shut when we got there.

5 You invited some people to your party. Some of them couldn't come. You tell someone: Some of the people couldn't come.

6 Your friend had to do some work. You want to know if she has finished. You say:

Have you finished the work ?

7 You rented a car. It broke down after a few miles. You tell a friend:

The car broke down after a few miles.

These sentences all have a relative clause with a preposition. Put the words in the correct order.

1 Did you find (looking / for /you / the books / were)?

Did you find the books you were- looking for ?

2 We couldn't go to (we / invited / to / were / the wedding).

We couldn't go to

3 What's the name of (the hotel / about / me / told/you)?

What's the name of ?

4 Unfortunately I didn't get (applied / I / the job / for). Unfortunately I didn't get

5 Did you enjoy (you / the concert / to / went)?

Did you enjoy ?

6 Gary is a good person to know. He's (on / rely / can / somebody/you).

Gary is a good person to know. He's

7 Who was (the man / were / with / you) in the restaurant last night?

Who was in the restaurant last night?

Put in that or what where necessary. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1 I gave her all the money z I had. (all the money that I had is also correct)

2 Did you hear what they said?

3 They give their children everything they want.

4 Tell me you want and I'll try to get it for you.

5 Why do you blame me for everything goes wrong?

6 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do lean.

7 I won't be able to do much, but I'll do the best lean.

8 I don't agree with you've just said.

9 I don't trust him. I don't believe anything he says.

[image]

Whose

We use whose in relative clauses instead of his/her/their:

we helped some people - their car had broken down

We helped some people whose car had broken down.

[image]

We use whose mostly for people:

O A widow is a woman whose husband is dead, (her husband is dead)

O What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed? (you borrowed his car)

O I met someone whose brother I went to school with. (I went to school with his/her brother)

Compare who and whose:

O I met a man who knows you. (he knows you)

C I met a man whose sister knows you. (his sister knows you)

Whom

Whom is possible instead of who when it is the object of the verb in the relative clause (like the sentences in Unit 93B):

C George is a person whom I admire very much. (I admire him)

You can also use whom with a preposition (to whom / from whom / with whom etc.): O I like the people with whom I work. (I work with them)

Whom is a formal word and we do not often use it in this way. We usually prefer who or that, or nothing (see Unit 93). So we usually say:

O ... a person who/that I admire a lot or ... a person I admire a lot

O ... the people who/that I work with or ... the people I work with

Where

You can use where in a relative clause to talk about a place:

the restaurant - we had lunch there - it was near the airport

The restaurant where we had lunch was near the airport.

J

o

o

I recently went back to the town where I grew up.

(or ... the town I grew up in or... the town that I grew up in)

I would like to live in a place where there is plenty of sunshine.

We say:

the day / the year / the time etc.

something happens or

that something happens

□ I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day (that) I'm going away. O The last time (that) I saw Anna, she looked great.

I haven't seen Jack and Helen since the year (that) they got married.

[image]

We say:

A . f something happens or

the reason I

\ that/why something happens

O The reason I'm phoning is to ask your advice.

(or The reason that I'm phoning / The reason why I'm phoning)

Relative clauses 1-2 -* Units 92-93

Relative clauses 4-5 Units 95-96

WhomUnit 96

j

Exercises

[image]

You met these people at a party:

[image]

My mother writes^ © detective stories.

[image]

My wife is an English teacher.

[image]

[image]

own a restaurant.

)

[image]

My ambition is ^ GO ^We've just g ot married.^ ^^S^k. parents used X.o\
to clim b Everest.J ^won u n a circus. J

[image]

My parents used to a circus.

[image]

[image]

The next day you tell a friend about these people. Complete the sentences using who or whose.

1 I met somebody wnose mother writes detective stories

2 I met a man

3 I met a woman

4 I met somebody

5 I met a couple

6 I met somebody

Read the situations and complete the sentences using where.

1 You grew up in a small town. You went back there recently. You tell someone this. I recently went back to t)oe small town where I grew up

2 You're thirsty and you want a drink. You ask a friend where you can get some water.

Is there a shop near here ?

3 You work in a factory. The factory is going to close down next month.
You tell a friend.

The is going to close down next month.

4 Sue is staying at a hotel. You want to know the name of the hotel. You ask a friend.

Do you know the name of ?

5 You play football in a park on Sundays. You show a friend the park. You say:

This is the on Sundays.

Complete each sentence using who/whom/whose/where.

1 What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed?

2 A cemetery is a place people are buried.

3 A pacifist is a person believes that all wars are wrong.

4 An orphan is a child parents are dead.

5 What was the name of the person to you spoke on the phone?

6 The place we spent our holidays was really beautiful.

7 This school is only for children first language is not English.

8 The woman with he fell in love left him after a month.

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. They are like the examples in Sections D and E.

1 I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day ! >m 9°^9

2 The reason was that the salary was too low.

3 I'll never forget the time

4 Do you remember the day ?

5 The reason is that they don't need one.

6 was the year

Relative clauses 4: extra information clauses (1)

There are two types of relative clause. In these examples, the relative clauses are underlined . Compare:

Type 7

The woman who lives next door is a doctor.

Grace works for a company that makes furniture .

We stayed at the hotel (that) you recommended .

In these examples, the relative clauses tell you which person or thing (or what kind of person or thing) the speaker means:

'The woman who lives next door' tells us

which woman.

'A company that makes furniture' tells us what kind of company. 'The hotel (that) you recommended' tells us which hotel.

We do not use commas (,) with these clauses: We know a lot of people who live in London.

Type 2

My brother Ben, who lives in Hong

Kong , is an architect.

Anna told me about her new job, which

she's enjoying a lot .

We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a
friend of ours recommended .

In these examples, the relative clauses do not tell you which person or thing the speaker means. We already know which thing or person is meant: 'My brother Ben', 'Anna's new job' and 'the Park Hotel'. The relative clauses in these sentences give us extra information about the person or thing.

We use commas (,) with these clauses:

My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong , is an architect.

In both types of relative clause we use who for people and which for things.
But:

Type 1

You can use that:

Do you know anyone who/that speaks French and Italian?

Grace works for a company which/that makes furniture.

You can leave out who/which/that when it is the object (see Unit 93):

We stayed at the hotel (that/which) you
recommended.

This morning I met somebody (who/ that) I hadn't seen for ages.

We do not often use whom in this type of clause (see Unit 94B).

Type 2

You cannot use that:

John, who (not that) speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide. Anna told me about her new job, which (not that) she's enjoying a lot.

You cannot leave out who or which:

We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended. This morning I met Chris, who I hadn't seen for ages.

You can use whom for people (when it is the object):

This morning I met Chris, whom I hadn't seen for ages.

J

In both types of relative clause you can use whose and where

C

We met some people whose car had broken down.

What's the name of the place where you went on holiday?

Lisa, whose car had broken down, was in a very bad mood. Kate has just been to Sweden, where her daughter lives.

Relative clauses (Type 1) •# Units 92-94 Relative clauses (Type 2) -> Unit 96

j

Exercises

Make one sentence from two. Use the sentence in brackets to make a relative clause (Type 2). You will need to use who(m)/whose/which/where.

1 Catherine is very friendly. (She lives next door.) Catherine, who lives next door, is very friendly.

2 We stayed at the Park Hotel. (A friend of ours recommended it.) We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended,

3 We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge. (It is not far from London.) We often go to visit our friends in Cambridge

4 I went to see the doctor. (She told me I needed to change my diet.) I went to see

5 Steven is one of my closest friends. (I have known him for a very long

time.) Steven

6 Lisa is away from home a lot. (Her job involves a lot of travelling.) Lisa

7 The new stadium will be finished next month. (It can hold 90,000 people.)

8 Alaska is the largest state in the USA. (My brother lives there.)

9 Our teacher was very kind. (I have forgotten her name.)

Read the information and complete each sentence. Use a relative clause of Type 1 or Type 2. Use commas where necessary.

1 There's a woman living next door to me. She's a doctor. The woman who lives next door to me is a doctor.

2 I've got a brother called Ben. He lives in Hong Kong. He's an architect. My brother Ben, who lives in Hong Kong, is an architect.

3 There was a strike at the factory. It began ten days ago. It is now over.

The strike at the factory

4 I was looking for a book this morning. I've found it now.

I've found

5 I've had my car for 15 years. It has never broken down.

My car

6 A job was advertised. A lot of people applied for it. Few of them had the necessary qualifications. Few of

7 Amy has a son. She showed me a picture of him. He's a police officer.

Amy showed me

Some of these sentences are wrong. Correct them and put in commas where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write 'OK'.

1 Anna told me about her new job that she's enjoying very much.

Anna told me about her new job, which she's enjoying very much.

2 My office that is on the second floor is very small.

3 The office I'm using at the moment is very small.

4 Mark's father that used to be in the army now works for a TV company.

5 The doctor that examined me couldn't find anything wrong.

6 The sun that is one of millions of stars in the universe provides us with heat and light.

[image]

[image]

[image]

Unit

96 .

Relative clauses 5: extra information clauses (2)

Prepositions + whom/which

You can use a preposition before whom (for people) and which (for things).
So you can say: to whom / with whom / about which / without which etc.:

O Mr Lee, to whom I spoke at the meeting, is very interested in our proposal. Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have got lost.

In informal English we often keep the preposition after the verb in the relative clause. When we do this, we normally use who (not whom) for people:

O This is my friend from Canada, who I was telling you about.

O Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.

All of / most of etc. + whom/which

Study these examples:

Helen has three brothers. All of them are married. (2 sentences) Helen has three brothers, all of whom are married. (1 sentence)

They asked me a lot of questions. I couldn't answer most of them . (2 sentences)

They asked me a lot of questions, most of which I couldn't answer. (1 sentence)

J

In the same way you can say:

none of / neither of / any of / either of some of / many of / much of / (a) few of both of / half of / each of / one of / two of etc.

+ whom (people) ' + which (things)

O Martin tried on three jackets, none of which fitted him.

C Two men, neither of whom I had seen before, came into the office.

O They have three cars, two of which they rarely use.

O Sue has a lot of friends, many of whom she was at school with.

You can also say the cause of which / the name of which etc.:

The building was destroyed in a fire, the cause of which was never established. C We stayed at a beautiful hotel, the name of which I can't remember now.

Which (not what) Study this example:

Joe got the job. This surprised everybody. (2 sentences) Joe got the job, which surprised everybody. (1 sentence)

relative clause

WHjmmmmm ^mmmmmmmmmm <* •< m|

In this example, which = 'the fact that he got the job'. You must use which (not what) in sentences like these:

C Sarah couldn't meet us, which was a shame, (not what was a shame)

□ The weather was good, which we hadn't expected, (not what we hadn't expected)

For what, see Units 92D and 93D.

All of / most of etc. -> Unit 88

Both of etc. -# Unit 89

Relative clauses 1-4 Units 92-95

j

Write the relative clauses in a more formal way using a preposition + whom/which.

1 Yesterday we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.

Yesterday we visited the City Museum, to which I'd never been before

2 My brother showed us his new car, which he's very proud of.

My brother showed us his new car,

3 This is a picture of our friends Chris and Sam, who we went on holiday with. This is a picture of our friends Chris and Sam,

4 The wedding, which only members of the family were invited to, took place on Friday.

The wedding, ,

took place on Friday.

Use the information in the first sentence to complete the second sentence.
Use all of / most of etc. or the ... of + whom/which.

1 All of Helen's brothers are married.

Helen has three brothers, ffi of whom are married

2 Most of the information we were given was useless.

We were given a lot of information,

3 None of the ten people who applied for the job was suitable.

Ten people applied for the job,

4 Kate hardly ever uses one of her computers. Kate has got two computers,

5 Mike won £100,000. He gave half of it to his parents.

Mike won £100,000,

6 Both of Julia's sisters are lawyers.

Julia has two sisters,

7 Jane replied to neither of the emails I sent her.

I sent Jane two emails,

8 I went to a party - I knew only a few of the people there.

There were a lot of people at the party,

9 The sides of the road we drove along were lined with trees.

We drove along the road, the

10 The aim of the company's new business plan is to save money.

The company has a new business plan,

Join sentences from the boxes to make new sentences. Use which.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

Laura couldn't come to the party.

Jane doesn't have a phone.

Alex has passed his exams.

Our flight was delayed.

Kate offered to let me stay at her house.

The street I live in is very noisy at night.

Our car has broken down.

This was very kind of her.

This means we can't go away tomorrow.

This makes it difficult to contact her.

This makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.

This was a shame.

This is good news.

This meant we had to wait three hours at the airport.

1

2 3 4 5 6 7

Laura couldn't come to the party, which was a shame.

Jane

[image]

A clause is a part of a sentence. Some clauses begin with -ing or -ed. For example:

TOM

Do you know the woman talking to Tom ?

-ing clause

the woman talking to Tom

[image]

[image]

The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

-ed clause

the boy injured in the accident

We use -ing clauses to say what somebody (or something) is (or was) doing at a particular time:

O Do you know the woman talking to Tom? (the woman is talking to Tom)

Police investigating the crime are looking for three men. (police are investigating the crime) O Who were those people waiting outside? (they were waiting) O I was woken up by a bell ringing, (a bell was ringing)

You can also use an -ing clause to say what happens all the time, not just at a particular time. For example:

D The road connecting the two villages is very narrow, (the road connects the two villages) O I have a large room overlooking the garden, (the room overlooks the garden) O Can you think of the name of a flower beginning with T? (the name begins with T)

-ed clauses have a passive meaning:

O The boy injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

(he was injured in the accident) O George showed me some pictures painted by his father, (they had been painted by his father)

Injured and invited are past participles. Note that many past participles are irregular and do not end in -ed (stolen/made/written etc.):

The police never found the money stolen in the robbery. O Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.

You can use left in this way, with the meaning 'not used, still there':

C We've eaten nearly all the chocolates. There are only a few left.

We often use -ing and -ed clauses after there is / there was etc.: C There were some children swimming in the river. O Is there anybody waiting? O There was a big red car parked outside the house.

See/hear somebody doing something Unit 67 -ing clauses -i Unit 68 There (is) -> Unit 84 Irregular past participles (made/stolen etc.) H> Appendix 1

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Make one sentence from two. Complete the sentences with an -ing clause.

1 A bell was ringing. I was woken up by it.

I was woken up by & bell ringing

2 A man was sitting next to me on the plane. I didn't talk much to him.

I didn't talk much to the

3 A taxi was taking us to the airport. It broke down.

The broke down

4 There's a path at the end of this street. The path leads to the river.

At the end of the street there's a

5 A factory has just opened in the town. It employs 500 people.

A has just opened in the town

6 The company sent me a brochure. It contained the information I needed.
The company sent me

Make one sentence from two, beginning as shown. Each time make an -ed clause.

1 A boy was injured in the accident. He was taken to hospital. The boy
was injured In the accident was taken to hospital.

2 A gate was damaged in the storm. It has now been repaired.

The gate has now been repaired.

3 A number of suggestions were made at the meeting. Most of them were
not very practical. Most of the were not very practical.

4 Some paintings were stolen from the museum. They haven't been found
yet.

The haven't been found yet.

5 A man was arrested by the police. What's his name?

What's the name of ?

Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form: blow
call invite live offer read ring sit study work

1 I was woken up by a bell ringing

2 Some of the people invited to the party can't come.

3 Life must be very unpleasant for people near busy airports.

4 A few days after the interview, I received an email me the job.

5 Somebody Jack phoned while you were out.

6 There was a tree down in the storm last night.

7 The waiting room was empty except for a young man by the window
a magazine.

8 Ian has a brother in a bank in London and a sister
economics at university in Manchester.

Use the words in brackets to make sentences using There is / There was etc.

1 That house is empty, (nobody / live / in it) There's nobody living . In.

2 The accident wasn't serious, (nobody / injure) There was nobody injured.

3 I can hear footsteps, (somebody / come) There

4 The train was full, (a lot of people / travel)

5 We were the only guests at the hotel, (nobody else / stay there)

6 The piece of paper was blank, (nothing / write / on it)

7 The college offers English courses in the evening, (a course / begin / next
Monday)

Adjectives ending in -ing and -ed (boring/bored etc.)

Many adjectives end in -ing and -ed, for example: boring and bored. Study
this example situation:

Jane has been doing the same job for a very long time. Every day she does
exactly the same thing again and again. She doesn't enjoy her job any more
and would like to do something different.

Jane's job is boring.

Jane is bored (with her job).

boring

[image]

Somebody is bored if something (or somebody else) is boring. Or, if
something is boring, it makes you bored. So:

O Jane is bored because her job is boring.

O Jane's job is boring, so Jane is bored, (not Jane is boring)

If a person is boring, this means that they make other people bored: O George always talks about the same things. He's really boring.

Compare adjectives ending in -ing and -ed:

Compare these examples:

interesting

Julia thinks politics is interesting.

Did you meet anyone interesting at the party?

surprising

O It was surprising that he passed the exam.

disappointing

C The movie was disappointing.

We expected it to be much better.

shocking

The news was shocking.

mm

interested

Julia is interested in politics, (nor interesting in politics) Are you interested in buying a car? I'm trying to sell mine.

surprised

Everybody was surprised that he passed the exam.

disappointed

We were disappointed with the movie. We expected it to be much better.

shocked

I was shocked when I heard the news.

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + -ing or -ed.

1 The movie wasn't as good as we had expected, (disappoint...) a The movie was disappo'wtmq .

b We were disappointed with the movie.

2 Donna teaches young children. It's a very hard job, but she enjoys it. (exhaust...) a She enjoys her job, but it's often

b At the end of a day's work, she is often

3 It's been raining all day. I hate this weather, (depress...) a This weather is

b This weather makes me

c It's silly to get because of the weather.

4 Clare is going to Mexico next month. She has never been there before, (excit...) a It will be an experience for her.

b Going to new places is always

c She is really about going to Mexico.

Choose the correct word.

1 I was disappoint i ng - / disappointed with the film. I had expected it to be

better, (disappointed is correct)

2 Are you interesting / interested in football?

3 The new project sounds exciting / excited . I'm looking forward to working on it.

4 It's embarrassing / embarrassed when you have to ask people for money.

5 Do you easily get embarrassing / embarrassed ?

6 I had never expected to get the job. I was really amazing / amazed when I was offered it.

7 She has really learnt very fast. She has made amazing / amazed progress.

8 I didn't find the situation funny. I was not amusing / amused .

9 It was a really terrifying / terrified experience. Everybody was very shocking / shocked .

10 Why do you always look so boring / bored ? Is your life really so boring / bored ?

11 He's one of the most boring / bored people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything interesting / interested .

Complete each sentence using a word from the box.

amusing/amused annoying/annoyed boring/bored

confusing/confused disgusting/disgusted exciting/excited

exhausting/exhausted interesting/interested surprising /surprised

1 He works very hard. It's not surprising that he's always tired.

2 I've got nothing to do. I'm

3 The teacher's explanation was . Most of the students didn't understand it.

- 4 The kitchen hadn't been cleaned for ages. It was really
- 5 I don't visit art galleries very often. I'm not particularly in art.
- 6 There's no need to get just because I'm a few minutes late.
- 7 The lecture was . I fell asleep.
- 8 I've been working very hard all day and now I'm
- 9 I'm starting a new job next week. I'm very about it.
- 10 Steve is good at telling funny stories. He can be very
- 11 Helen is a very person. She knows a lot, she's travelled a lot and
she's done lots of different things.

Unit

99 Adjectives: a nice new house, you look tired

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together: O My brother lives in a nice new house.

O In the kitchen there was a beautiful large round wooden table.

Adjectives like new/large/round/wooden are fact adjectives. They give us factual information about age, size, colour etc.

Adjectives like nice/beautiful are opinion adjectives. They tell us what somebody thinks of something or somebody.

Opinion adjectives usually go before fact adjectives.

opinion a nice an interesting

delicious a beautiful

fact long young hot

large round wooden

summer holiday man

vegetable soup table

Sometimes we use two or more fact adjectives together. Usually (but not always) we put fact adjectives in this order:

a tall young man (1^2) a large wooden table (1 → 5)

big blue eyes (1 → 3) an old Russian song (2 → 4)

a small black plastic bag (1 → 3 → 5) an old white cotton shirt (2-^3^5)

Adjectives of size and length (big/small/tall/short/long etc.) usually go before adjectives of shape and width (round/fat/thin/slim/wide etc.): a large round table a tall thin girl a long narrow street

When there are two or more colour adjectives, we use and: a black and white dress a red, white and green flag

This does not usually happen with other adjectives before a noun: a long black dress (not a long and black dress)

We use adjectives after be/get/become/seem: C Be careful!

O I'm tired and I'm getting hungry.

O As the film went on, it became more and more boring. O Your friend seems very nice.

We also use adjectives to say how somebody/something looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells: O You look tired. / I feel tired. / She sounds tired. O The dinner smells good. C This tea tastes a bit strange.

But to say how somebody does something you must use an adverb (see Units 100-101): C Drive carefully! (not Drive careful) □ Susan plays the piano very well, (not plays ... very good)

We say 'the first two days / the next few weeks / the last ten minutes' etc.: _ I didn't enjoy the first two days of the course, (not the two first days) O They'll be away for the next few weeks, (not the few next weeks)

f Adverbs -> Units 100-101 Comparison (cheaper etc.) -> Units 105-107
^Superlatives (cheapest etc.) -> Unit 108

Exercises

[image]

Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.

- 1 a beautiful table (wooden / round) <*- beautiful round, wooden table
- 2 an unusual ring (gold)
- 3 an old house (beautiful)
- 4 black gloves (leather)
- 5 an American film (old)
- 6 a long face (thin)
- 7 big clouds (black)
- 8 a sunny day (lovely)
- 9 an ugly dress (yellow)
- 10 a wide avenue (long)
- 11 a lovely restaurant (little)
- 12 a red car (old / little)
- 13 a new sweater (green / nice)
- 14 a metal box (black / small)
- 15 a big cat (fat / black)
- 16 longhair (black / beautiful)
- 17 an old painting (interesting / French)

18 an enormous umbrella (red/yellow)

[image]

Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the boxes.

awful fine interesting nice upset wet

feel look s ee m smell sound taste

[image]

[image]

1 Helen seemed upset this morning. Do you know what was wrong?

2 I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it

3 I wasn't very well yesterday, but I today.

4 What beautiful flowers! They too.

5 You Have you been out in the rain?

6 James was telling me about his new job. It - much better than his old job.

Put in the correct word.

1 This tea tastes a bit strange . (strange / strangely)

2 I always feel when the sun is shining, (happy / happily)

3 The children were playing in the garden, (happy / happily)

4 The man became when the manager of the restaurant asked him to leave, (violent / violently)

5 You look ! Are you all right? (terrible / terribly)

6 There's no point in doing a job if you don't do it . (proper / properly)

7 The soup tastes . (good / well)

8 Hurry up! You're always so (slow / slowly)

Write the following in another way using the first... / the next... / the last....

1 the first day and the second day of the course the first two days of the course

2 next week and the week after the next two weeks

3 yesterday and the day before yesterday

4 the first week and the second week of May

5 tomorrow and a few days after that

6 questions 1, 2 and 3 in the exam

7 next year and the year after

8 the last day of our holiday and the two days before that

-# Additional exercise 31 (page 320)

Adjectives and adverbs 1 (quick/quickly)

Look at these examples:

O Our holiday was too short - the time passed very quickly. O Two people were seriously injured in the accident.

Quickly and seriously are adverbs. Many adverbs are formed from an adjective + -ly:

adjective: quick serious careful quiet heavy bad adverb: quickly seriously carefully quietly heavily badly For spelling, see Appendix 6.

Not all words ending in -ly are adverbs. Some adjectives end in -ly too, for example: friendly lively elderly lonely silly lovely

Adjective or adverb?

Adjectives (quick/careful etc.) tell us about a noun (somebody or something). We use adjectives before nouns:

G Sam is a careful driver.

(not a carefully driver)

We didn't go out because of the heavy
rain.

Adverbs (quickly/carefully etc.) tell us about a verb (how somebody does something or how something happens):

O Sam drove carefully along the narrow road, (not drove careful) We didn't go out because it was raining heavily, (not raining heavy)

Compare:

She speaks perfect English.

adjective + noun

She speaks English perfectly.

verb + noun + adverb

m

We also use adjectives after some verbs, especially be, and also look/feel/sound etc. Compare:

We also use adverbs before adjectives and other adverbs. For example:

reasonably cheap (adverb + adjective) terribly sorry (adverb + adjective)

incredibly quickly (adverb + adverb)

O It's a reasonably cheap restaurant and the food is extremely good. O I'm terribly sorry. I didn't mean to push you. (not terrible sorry) O Maria learns languages incredibly quickly. C The exam was surprisingly easy.

You can also use an adverb before a past participle (injured/organised/written etc.): Two people were seriously injured in the accident, (not serious injured) C The meeting was badly organised.

Adjectives after be/look/feel etc. -fr Unit 99C Adjectives and adverbs 2 H> Unit 101

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete each sentence with an adverb. The first letters of the adverb are given.

1 We didn't go out because it was raining he clvUxj .

2 Our team lost the game because we played very ba

3 I didn't have any problems finding a place to live. I found a flat quite ea

4 We had to wait for a long time, but we didn't complain. We waited pat

5 Nobody knew Steve was coming to see us. He arrived unex

6 Mike keeps fit by playing tennis reg

7 I don't speak French very well, but I can understand per if people speak sL and cl

|Q Put in the correct word.

1 Two people were seriously injured in the accident, (serious / seriously)

2 The driver of the car had serious injuries, (serious / seriously)

3 I think you behaved very . (selfish / selfishly)

4 Tanya is upset about losing her job. (terrible / terribly)

5 There was a change in the weather, (sudden / suddenly)

6 Everybody at the carnival was dressed, (colourful / colourfully)

7 Linda usually wears clothes, (colourful / colourfully)

8 Liz fell and hurt herself really (bad / badly)

9 Joe says he didn't do well at school because he was taught, (bad / badly)

10 Don't go up that ladder. It doesn't look (safe / safely)

4^ J& Complete each sentence using a word from the box. Sometimes you need the adjective (careful etc.) and sometimes the adverb (carefully etc.).

careful(ly) complete(ly) continuous(ly) financial(ly) fluent(ly)

happy/happily nervous(ly) perfect(ly) qu i ck(ly) special(ly)

1 Our holiday was too short. The time passed very quickly

2 Steve doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always

3 Sue works She never seems to stop.

4 Rachel and Patrick are very married.

5 Maria's English is very although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.

6 I cooked this meal for you, so I hope you like it.

7 Everything was very quiet. There was silence.

8 I tried on the shoes and they fitted me

9 Do you usually feel before exams? 10 I'd like to buy a car, but it's impossible for me at the moment.

3 Choose two words (one from each box) to complete each sentence.

absolutely badly completely reasonably seriously slightly unnecessarily
unusually

changed cheap damaged enormous ill long planned quiet

1 I thought the restaurant would be expensive, but it was re^sonobU)

doeap. .

2 Will's mother is in hospital.

3 What a big house! It's

4 It wasn't a serious accident. The car was only

5 The children are normally very lively, but they're today.

6 When I returned home after 20 years, everything had

7 The movie was . It could have been much shorter.

8 A lot went wrong during our holiday because it was

** Additional exercise 31 (page 320)

Unit Adjectives and adverbs 2

101 (well/fast/late, hard/hardly)

Good/well

[image]

[image]

[image]

202

Good is an adjective. The adverb is well:

Your English is good. but You speak English well. O Susan is a good pianist, but Susan plays the piano well.

We use well (not good) with past participles (dressed/known etc.): well-dressed well-known well-educated well-paid

O Gary's father is a well-known writer.

But well is also an adjective with the meaning 'in good health': O 'How are

you today?' 'I'm very well, thanks.'

Fast/hard/late

These words are both adjectives and adverbs:

adverb

Darren can run very fast.

Kate works hard, (not works hardly)

I got up late this morning.

adjective D Darren is a very fast runner. Kate is a hard worker. I was late.

Lately = recently:

O Have you seen Tom lately?

Hardly

Hardly = very little, almost not. Study these examples:

O Sarah wasn't very friendly at the party. She hardly spoke to me.

(= she spoke to me very little, almost not at all) O We've only met once or twice. We hardly know each other. Hard and hardly are different. Compare:

He tried hard to find a job, but he had no luck. (= he tried a lot, with a lot of effort) I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He hardly tried. (= he tried very little)

I can hardly do something = it's very difficult for me, almost impossible:

Your writing is terrible. I can hardly read it. (= it is almost impossible to read it) O My leg was hurting. I could hardly walk.

There's hardly anything

i in the fridge

TIT

[image]

You can use hardly + any/anybody/anyone/anything/anywhere:

D a: How much money have we got?

b: Hardly any. (= very little, almost none) D These two cameras are very similar. There's hardly

any difference between them. 3 The exam results were very bad. Hardly anybody in

our class passed. (= very few students passed) Note that you can say:

She said hardly anything. or She hardly said anything. O We've got hardly any money, or We've hardly got any money.

Hardly ever = almost never:

O I'm nearly always at home in the evenings. I hardly ever go out.

Hardly also means 'certainly not'. For example:

D It's hardly surprising that you're tired. You haven't slept for three days. (= it's certainly not surprising)

The situation is serious, but it's hardly a crisis. (= it's certainly not a crisis)

Adjectives after verbs ('You look tired' etc.) -> Unit 99C Adjectives and adverbs 1 Hi Unit 100

j

Exercises

41 pi

[image]

Put in good or well.

1 I play tennis but I'm not very good

- 2 Your exam results were very
- 3 You did in your exams.
- 4 The weather was while we were away.
- 5 I didn't sleep last night.
- 6 Lucy speaks German . She's at languages.
- 7 Our new business isn't doing very at the moment.
- 8 I like your hat. It looks on you.
- 9 I've met her a few times, but I don't know her

Complete these sentences using well + the following words:

behaved dressed informed kept known paid written

- 1 The children were very good. They were well-behaved.
- 2 I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She is quite
- 3 Our neighbours' garden is neat and tidy. It is very
- 4 I enjoyed the book you lent me. It's a great story and it's very
- 5 Tanya knows a lot about many things. She is very
- 6 Mark's clothes are always smart. He is always
- 7 Jane has a lot of responsibility in her job, but she isn't very

Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.

- 1 I'm tired because I've been working hard . OK
- 2 I tried hard to remember her name, but I couldn't.
- 3 This coat is practically unused. I've hardly worn it.
- 4 Laura is a good tennis player. She hits the ball hardly

5 Don't walk so fast ! I can't keep up with you.

6 I had plenty of time, so I was walking slow .

[image]

J Complete the sentences. Use hardly + the following verbs (in the correct form): change hear know recognise say sleep speak

1 Scott and Tracy have only met once before. They Hardly know each other.

2 You're speaking very quietly, lean you.

3 I'm very tired this morning. I last night.

4 We were so shocked when we heard the news, we could

5 Kate was very quiet this evening. She a word.

6 You look the same now as you looked 15 years ago. You've

7 I met David a few days ago. I hadn't seen him for a long time and he looks very different now. I him.

Complete these sentences with hardly + any/anybody/anything/anywhere/ever.

1 I'll have to go shopping. There's Hardly anything to eat.

2 It was a very warm day and there was wind.

3 'Do you know much about computers?' 'No,

4 The hotel was almost empty. There was staying there.

5 I listen to the radio a lot, but I watch television.

6 Our new boss is not very popular likes her.

7 It was very crowded in the room. There was to sit.

8 We used to be good friends, but we see each other now.

9 It was nice driving this morning. There was traffic.

10 I hate this town. There's to do and to go.

[image]

-¥ Additional exercise 31 (page 320)

Unit

102 So and such

[image]

[image]

Compare so and such:

We use so + adjective/adverb: so stupid so quick so nice so quickly

D I didn't like the book. The story was so stupid.

I like Liz and Joe. They are so nice.

We use such + noun:

such a story such people We also use such + adjective + noun:

such a stupid story such nice people

I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story, (not a so stupid story) I like Liz and Joe. They are such nice people, (not so nice people)

We say such a ... (not a such):

such a big dog (not a such big dog)

204

Not so ... as -> Unit 107A

Such as-* Unit 117A

J

Exercises

4E 5^

s° quietly.

Put in so, such or such a.

1 It's difficult to understand him because he speaks

2 I like Liz and Joe. They're such nice people.

3 It was a great holiday. We had such a. good time.

4 I was surprised that he looked well after his recent illness.

5 Everything is expensive these days, isn't it?

6 The weather is beautiful, isn't it? I didn't expect it to be nice day.

7 I think she works too hard. She looks tired all the time.

8 He always looks good. He wears nice clothes.

9 It was boring movie that I fell asleep while I was watching it.

10 I couldn't believe the news. It was shock.

11 I have to go. I didn't realise it was late.

12 The food at the hotel was awful. I've never eaten awful food.

13 They've got much money they don't know what to do with it.

14 I didn't realise you lived long way from the city centre.

15 The party was really great. It was shame you couldn't come.

Make one sentence from two. Use so or such.

1 She worked hord.

2 It was o beaut i ful doy -

3 I was tired.

4 We had a good time on holiday.

5 She speaks English well.

6 I've got a lot to do.

7 The music was loud.

8 I had a big breakfast.

9 It was horrible weather. 10 I was surprised.

You could hear it from miles away.

You would think it was her native language.

We spent the whole day indoors.

She mode herself ill.

I couldn't keep my eyes open.

I didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.

Wg decided to go to the beach.

I didn't know what to say.

I don't know where to begin.

We didn't want to come home.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10

She worked so hard she mcuie Herself ill. It was such a beautiful clay we
dectdecl to go to the beach I was

[image]

Use your own ideas to complete these pairs of sentences.

1 a We enjoyed our holiday. It was so relaxing

b We enjoyed our holiday. We had such A 9Qod Uwe

2 a I like Catherine. She's so

b I like Catherine. She's such

3 a I like New York. It's so

b I like New York. It's such

4 a I wouldn't like to be a teacher. It's so

b I wouldn't like to be a teacher. It's such

5 a It's great to see you again! I haven't seen you for so

b It's great to see you again! I haven't seen you for such

Unit

103 l Enough and too

Enough goes after adjectives and adverbs: Q"m not fit enough

O I can't run very far. I'm not fit enough, (not enough fit) Let's go. We've waited long enough. I can let you know tomorrow. Is that soon enough?

Compare too ... and not... enough:

You never stop working. You work too hard. (= more than is necessary) O
You're lazy. You don't work hard enough. (= less than is necessary)

[image]

Enough normally goes before nouns:

I can't run very far. I don't have enough energy, (not energy enough) C Do we have enough petrol, or should we stop and get some? O We've got enough money. We don't need any more.

Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren't enough chairs.

We also use enough alone (without a noun):

We don't need to stop for petrol. We've got enough.

Compare too much/many and enough:

There's too much furniture in this room. There's not enough space. O There were too many people and not enough chairs.

We say enough/too ... for somebody/something:

Does Joe have enough experience for the job? This bag isn't big enough for all my clothes. O That shirt is too small for you. You need a larger size.

But we say enough/too ... to do something. For example:

Does Joe have enough experience to do the job? (not for doing)

O We don't have enough money to go on holiday right now.

Q She's not old enough to have a driving licence. She's too young to have a driving licence. Let's get a taxi. It's too far to walk home from here.

The following example has both for ... and to ...

The bridge is just wide enough for two cars to pass each other.

We say:

The food was very hot. We couldn't eat it. and The food was so hot that we couldn't eat it. but The food was too hot to eat. (without it)

Some more examples like this:

These boxes are too heavy to carry. (not to carry them)

The wallet was too big to put in my pocket. (not to put it) O This chair isn't strong enough to stand on.

(not to stand on it)

[image]

To ... and for ... (purpose) Unit 64 Adjective + to ... (difficult to understand etc.) -> Unit 65

j

Exercises

1 Complete the sentences using enough + the following words:

big cha ir s cups 4it- milk money room time warm

well

1 I can't run very far. I'm not M. enough

2 Some of us had to sit on the floor because there weren't enough dfi\$k&

3 I'd like to buy a car, but I don't have at the moment.

4 Do you have in your coffee or would you like some more?

5 Are you ? Or shall I switch on the heating?

6 It's only a small car. There isn't for all of us.

7 Steve didn't feel to go to work this morning.

8 I enjoyed my trip to Paris, but there wasn't to do everything I

wanted.

9 Try this jacket on and see if it's for you.

10 There weren't for everybody to have coffee at the same time.

^ JjjJ Complete the answers to the questions. Use too or enough + the word(s) in brackets.

W /!_

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

Does she have a driving licence? I need to talk to you about something.

Let's go to the cinema. Why don't we sit outside? Would you like to be a politician?

Would you like to be a teacher? Did you hear what he was saying? Can he read a newspaper in English?

No, she's not old enough to have a driving licence.

Well, I'm afraid I'm

to you now.

No, it's

to the cinema. It's not outside. No, I'm

a politician.

(patience) No, I don't have

a teacher.

(far away) No, we were

what he was saying

(English) No, he doesn't know

a newspaper.

(old)

(busy)

(late)

(warm)

(shy)

ffjJD Make one sentence from two. Complete the new sentence using too or

enough.

1 We couldn't carry the boxes. They were too heavy.

The boxes were too heavy to carry.

2 I can't drink this coffee. It's too hot.

This coffee is

3 Nobody could move the piano. It was too heavy. The piano

4 Don't eat these apples. They're not ripe enough. These apples

5 I can't explain the situation. It is too complicated. The situation

6 We couldn't climb over the wall. It was too high.

The wall

7 Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't big enough. This sofa

8 You can't see some things without a microscope. They are too small.

Some

104 Quite, pretty, rather and fairly

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

You can use quite/pretty/rather/fairly + adjectives or adverbs. So you can say:

It's quite cold. It's pretty cold. It's rather cold. It's fairly cold.

Quite/pretty/rather/fairly = less than 'very' but more than 'a little'.

Quite and pretty are similar in meaning:

I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite famous / pretty famous.
(= less than

'very famous', but more than 'a little famous') O Anna lives quite near me, so we see each other pretty often. Pretty is an informal word and is used mainly in spoken English.

Quite goes before a/an:

O We live in quite an old house, (not a quite old house) Compare:

Sarah has quite a good job.

Sarah has a pretty good job.

You can also use quite (but not pretty) in the following ways: quite a/an + noun (without an adjective):

O I didn't expect to see them. It was quite a surprise. (= quite a big surprise) quite a lot (of . . .):

O There were quite a lot of people at the meeting, quite + verb, especially like and enjoy:

C I quite like tennis, but it's not my favourite sport.

Rather is similar to quite and pretty. We often use rather for negative ideas (things we think are not good):

O The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy. C Paul is rather shy. He doesn't talk very much. Quite and pretty are also possible in these examples.

When we use rather for positive ideas (good/nice etc.), it means 'unusually' or 'surprisingly': These oranges are rather good. Where did you get them?

Fairly is weaker than quite/rather/pretty. For example, if something is fairly good, it is not very good and it could be better:

O My room is fairly big, but I'd prefer a bigger one.

O We see each other fairly often, but not as often as we used to.

Quite also means 'completely'. For example:

'Are you sure?' 'Yes, quite sure.' (= completely sure)

Quite means 'completely' with a number of adjectives, especially:

J She was quite different from what I expected. (= completely different) D
Everything they said was quite true. (= completely true)

We also use quite (= completely) with some verbs. For example: I quite agree with you. (= I completely agree)

Not quite = not completely:

They haven't quite finished eating yet. O I don't quite understand what you mean. O 'Are you ready yet?' 'Not quite.' (= not completely)

Exercises

Unit

104

Complete the sentences using quite + the following: famous good hungry
late noisy often

old surprised

1 I'm surprised you haven't heard of her. She's quite f&mous

2 I'm Is there anything to eat?

3 'How were the pictures you took?' ' Better than usual.'

4 I go to the cinema - maybe once a month.

5 We live near a very busy road, so it's often

6 I didn't expect Laura to contact me. I was when she phoned.

7 I went to bed last night, so I'm a bit tired this morning.

8 I don't know exactly when these houses were built, but they're

Put the words in the right order to complete the sentences.

1 The weather was better than we had expected.

It was quite a nice day (a / nice / quite / day).

2 Tom likes to sing.

He has (voice / quite / good/a).

3 The bus stop wasn't very near the hotel.

We had to walk (quite / way / a / long).

4 It's not so warm today.

There's (a / wind / cold / pretty).

5 The journey took longer than I expected.

There was (lot / traffic / a / of / quite).

6 I'm tired.

I've had (pretty / day / a / busy).

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use rather + adjective.

1 The weather isn't so good. It's rather cloudy

2 I enjoyed the film, but it was

3 The hotel we stayed at wasn't very good. I was

4 I think it's that Chris went away without telling anybody.

5 Lucy doesn't like having to wait. Sometimes she's

What does quite mean in these sentences? Tick (/) the right meaning.

more than a little, less than very (Section B)

1 It's quite cold . You'd better wear your coat. /.

2 'Are you sure?' 'Yes, quite sure .'

3 Anna's English is quite good .

4 I couldn't believe it. It was quite incredible .

5 My bedroom is quite big .

6 I'm quite tired . I think I'll go to bed.

7 I quite agree with you.

completely (Section E)

Complete these sentences using quite + the following: different impossible
right safe sure true

unnecessary

1 I didn't believe her at first, but in fact what she said was quite true

2 You won't fall. The ladder is

3 I'm afraid I can't do what you ask. It's

4 I couldn't agree with you more. You are

5 You can't compare the two things. They are

6 You needn't have done that. It was

7 I think I saw them go out, but I'm not

Unit

105 Comparison 1 (cheaper, more expensive etc.)

Study these examples:

How shall we travel? Shall we drive or go by train?

Let's drive. It's cheaper.

Don't go by train. It's more expensive.

Cheaper and more expensive are comparative forms.

After comparatives you can use than (see Unit 107): O It's cheaper to drive than go by train.

Going by train is more expensive than driving.

[image]

The comparative form is -er or more We use -er for short words (one syllable):

cheap —> cheaper large —> larger

fast —> faster thin —> thinner

We also use -er for two-syllable words that

end in -y (-y —> ier):

lucky —> luckier early -> earlier easy —> easier pretty —> prettier

For spelling, see Appendix 6. Compare these examples:

more often more comfortable

We use more ... for longer words (two syllables or more):

more serious

more expensive

We also use more ... for adverbs that end in -ly:

more slowly

more easily

more seriously more quietly

You can use -er or more ... with some two-syllable adjectives, especially:
clever narrow quiet shallow simple

It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter / more quiet?

A few adjectives and adverbs have irregular comparative forms:

good/well —> better

O The garden looks better since you tidied it up.

O I know him well - probably better than anybody else knows him.

bad/badly —> worse

O 'How's your headache? Better?' 'No, it's worse.' O He did very badly in the exam - worse than expected.

far —» further (or farther)

It's a long walk from here to the park - further than I thought, (or farther than)

Further (but not farther) can also mean 'more' or 'additional':

O Let me know if you hear any further news. (= any more news)

^Comparison 2-3 -» Units 106-107 Superlatives (cheapest / most expensive etc.) -# Unit 108

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using a comparative form (older / more important etc.).

1 It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere quieter ?

2 This coffee is very weak. I like it

- 3 The hotel was surprisingly big. I expected it to be
- 4 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be
- 5 The weather is too cold here. I'd like to live somewhere
- 6 My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something
- 7 It's a shame you live so far away I wish you lived
- 8 I was surprised how easy it was to get a job. I thought it would be
- 9 Your work isn't very good. I'm sure you can do
- 10 Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be
- 11 I was surprised we got here so quickly. I expected the trip to take
- 12 You're talking very loudly. Can you speak ?
- 13 You hardly ever call me. Why don't you call me ?
- 14 You're standing too near the camera. Can you move a bit away?
- 15 You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look today.

Complete the sentences. Use the comparative forms of the words in the box. Use than where necessary.

big crowded early easily high important

interested peaceful reliable serious simple thin

- 1 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed earlier than usual.
- 2 I'd like to have a more reliable car. The one I have keeps breaking down.
- 3 Unfortunately her illness was worse than we thought at first.
- 4 You look thinner. Have you lost weight?
- 5 I want a bigger apartment. We don't have enough space here.

6 He doesn't study very hard. He's in having a good time.

7 Health and happiness are money.

8 The instructions were very complicated. They could have been

9 There were a lot of people on the bus. It was usual.

10 I like living in the country. It's living in a town.

11 You'll find your way around the town if you have a good map.

12 In some parts of the country, prices are in others.

Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form (-er or more ...).

1 Yesterday the temperature was six degrees. Today it's only three degrees.
It's cooler today than it was yesterday.

2 The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.

It takes by car.

3 Dan and I went for a run. I ran ten kilometres. Dan stopped after eight kilometres.

I ran Dan.

4 Chris and Joe both did badly in the test. Chris got 30%, but Joe only got 25%.

Joe did Chris in the test.

5 I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2.30.

My friends I expected.

6 You can go by bus or by train. The buses run every 30 minutes. The trains run every hour.

The buses the trains.

7 We were very busy in the office today. We're not usually so busy.

We usual in the office today.

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Comparison 2 (much better / any better / better and better / the sooner the better)

Before comparatives you can use: much a lot far (= a lot)

a bit a little slightly (= a tittle)

o o o o o o

Let's go by car. It's much cheaper, (or a lot cheaper) 'How do you feel now?' 'Much better, thanks.'

Don't go by train. It's a lot more expensive, (or much more expensive)
Could you speak a bit more slowly? (or a little more slowly) This bag is slightly heavier than the other one.

Her illness was far more serious than we thought at first, (or much more serious / a lot more serious)

You can use any and no + comparative (any longer / no bigger etc.):

I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting any longer. (= not even a little longer) We expected their apartment to be very big, but it's no bigger than ours, or ... it isn't any bigger than ours. (= not even a little bigger) How do you feel now? Do you feel any better? □ This hotel is better than the other one, and it's no more expensive.

Better and better / more and more etc.

We repeat comparatives (better and better etc.) to say that something changes continuously: O Your English is improving. It's getting better and better. O The city has grown fast in recent years. It's got bigger and bigger.

As I listened to his story, I became more and more convinced that he was lying. These days more and more people are learning English.

The ... the ...

You can say the (sooner/bigger/more etc.) the better:

C 'What time shall we leave?' 'The sooner the better.' (= as soon as possible) □ a: What sort of box do you want? A big one?

b: Yes, the bigger the better. (= as big as possible) O When you're travelling, the less luggage you have the better.

We also use the ... the ... to say that one thing depends on another thing:

The warmer the weather, the better I feel. (= if the weather is warmer, I feel better) O The sooner we leave, the earlier we will arrive. O The younger you are, the easier it is to learn. O The more expensive the hotel, the better the service. O The more electricity you use, the higher your bill will be. O The more I thought about the plan, the less I liked it.

Older and elder

The comparative of old is older:

David looks older than he really is.

You can use elder (or older) when you talk about people in a family. You can say (my/your etc.) elder sister/brother/daughter/son:

O My elder sister is a TV producer, (or My older sister...)

We say 'my elder sister', but we do not say that 'somebody is elder': O My sister is older than me. (not elder than me)

Units 105, 107

Eldest •+ Unit 108C

Exercises

Unit

106

Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use much / a bit etc. + a comparative form. Use than where necessary.

1 Her illness was much more serious than we thought at first, (much / serious)

2 This bag is too small. I need something (much / big)

3 I liked the museum. It was I expected, (much / interesting)

4 It was very hot yesterday. Today it's . (a bit / cool)

5 I'm afraid the problem is it seems, (far / complicated)

6 You're driving too fast. Can you drive ? (a bit / slowly)

7 It's to learn a language in a country where it is spoken, (a lot / easy)

8 I thought she was younger than me, but in fact she's . (slightly / old)

Complete the sentences using any/no + comparative. Use than where necessary.

1 I've waited long enough. I'm not waiting longer

2 I'm sorry I'm a bit late, but I couldn't get here

3 This shop isn't expensive. The prices are anywhere else.

4 I need to stop for a rest. I can't walk

5 The traffic isn't particularly bad today. It's usual.

Complete the sentences using the structure in Section C (... and ...).

1 It's getting more and more difficult to find a job. (difficult)

2 That hole in your sweater is getting . (big)

3 My bags seemed to get as I carried them, (heavy)

4 As I waited for my interview, I became . (nervous)

5 As the day went on, the weather got (bad)

6 Health care is becoming (expensive)

7 Since Anna went to Canada, her English has got . (good)

8 As the conversation went on, Paul became (talkative)

Complete the sentences using the structure in Section D (the ... the ...).

1 I like warm weather.

The warmer the weather, the better I feel . (feel)

2 I didn't really like him when we first met.

But the more I got to know him, (like)

3 If you're in business, you want to make a profit.

The more goods you sell, (profit)

4 It's hard to concentrate when you're tired.

The more tired you are, . (hard)

5 Kate had to wait a very long time.

The longer she had to wait, (impatient / become)

^ Use the words on the right to complete the sentences.

1 I like to travel light. The less luggage, the better.

2 The problem is getting and more serious.

3 The more time I have, the it takes me to do things.

4 I'm walking as fast as I can. I can't walk faster.

5 The higher your income, more tax you have to pay.

6 I'm surprised Anna is only 25. I thought she was

7 Jane's sister is a nurse.

8 I was a little late. The journey took longer than I expected.

9 We have a lot to discuss. We need to start the meeting later than 9.30.

10 Don't tell him anything. The he knows, the

any better elder l o ss

less longer more no

older

slightly

the

Unit

107 Comparison 3 (as ... as / than)

Study this example situation:

[image]

Sarah, Joe and David are all very rich. Sarah has \$20 million, Joe has \$15 million and David has \$10 million. So:

Joe is rich.

He is richer than David.

But he isn't as rich as Sarah. (= Sarah is richer than he is)

SARAH

JOE

DAVID

Some more examples of not as ... (as):

C Jack isn't as old as he looks. (= he looks older than he is) O The town centre wasn't as crowded as usual. (= it is usually more crowded) O Lisa didn't do as well in the exam as she had hoped. (= she had hoped to do better) O The weather is better today. It's not as cold. (= yesterday was colder than today) I don't know as many people as you do. (= you know more people than me) 'How much did it cost? Fifty pounds?' 'No, not as much as that.' (= less than fifty pounds)

You can also say not so ... (as):

O It's not warm, but it isn't so cold as yesterday. (= it isn't as cold as ...)

Less ... than is similar to not as ... as:

O I spent less money than you. (= I didn't spend as much money as you) O The city centre was less crowded than usual. (= it wasn't as crowded as usual) I play tennis less than I used to. (= I don't play as much as I used to)

We also use as ... as (but not so ... as) in positive sentences and in questions: O I'm sorry I'm late. I got here as fast as I could. O There's plenty of food. You can have as much as you want. O Let's walk. It's just as quick as taking the bus.

Can you send me the information as soon as possible, please?

Also twice as ... as, three times as ... as etc.:

O Petrol is twice as expensive as it was a few years ago. O Their house is about three times as big as ours.

We say the same as (not the same like):

Laura's salary is the same as mine, or Laura gets the same salary as me.
David is the same age as James.

Sarah hasn't changed. She still looks the same as she did ten years ago.

Than me / than I am etc. You can say:

You're taller than me. or You're taller than I am.

(not usually You're taller than I) O He's not as clever as her. or He's not as clever as she is.

O They have more money than us. or They have more money than we have. O I can't run as fast as him. or I can't run as fast as he can.

Comparison 1-2 -* Units 105-106 As long as -> Unit 115B As and like -*
Unit 117

j

Exercises

^ jjj) Complete the sentences using as ... as.

1 I'm tall, but you are taller. I'm not toll ojs> you

2 My salary is high, but yours is higher. My salary isn't

3 You know a bit about cars, but I know more.

You don't

4 We are busy today, but we were busier yesterday.

We aren't

5 I still feel bad, but I felt a lot worse earlier.

I don't

6 Our neighbours have lived here for quite a long time, but we've lived here longer. Our neighbours haven't

7 I was a little nervous before the interview, but usually I'm a lot more nervous. I wasn't

J Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1 Jack is younger than he looks. Jack isn't M 9.(4 He looks .

2 I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent , more money than me

3 The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't

4 The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost

5 I go out less than I used to. I don't

6 Karen's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karen used to

7 I know them better than you do. You don't

8 There are fewer people at this meeting than at the last one. There aren't

Unit

107

[image]

Complete the sentences using as ... as + the following:

[image]

bad comfortable fast hard long often quietly soon well

1 I'm sorry I'm late. I got here ,.M,.£MkM:. I could.

2 It was a difficult question. I answered it I could.

3 'How long can I stay with you?' 'You can stay you like.'

4 I need the information quickly, so let me know possible.

5 I like to keep fit, so I go swimming I can.

6 I didn't want to wake anybody, so I came in I could.

In the following sentences use just as ... as.

7 I'm going to sleep on the floor. It's the bed.

8 You always say how tiring your job is, but I work you.

9 At first I thought he was nice, but really he's everybody else.

Write sentences using the same as.

1 David and James are both 22 years old. David ^a^me age. a.s James.

2 You and I both have dark brown hair. Your hair mine.

3 I arrived at 10.25 and so did you. I arrived you.

4 My birthday is 5 April. It's Tom's birthday too. My birthday Tom's.

Complete the sentences with than ... or as

1 I can't reach as high as you. You are taller.... tn<^ we

2 He doesn't know much. I know more

3 I don't work particularly hard. Most people work as hard

4 We were very surprised. Nobody was more surprised

5 She's not a very good player. I'm a better player

6 They've been very lucky. I wish we were as lucky

Unit Superlatives

108 (the longest / the most enjoyable etc.)

Study these examples:

What is the longest river in the world?

What was the most enjoyable holiday you've ever had?

Longest and most enjoyable are superlative forms.

The superlative form is -est or most.... In general, we use -est for short words and most... for longer words. The rules are the same as those for the comparative - see Unit 105.

long —> longest hot —> hottest easy —> easiest hard —» hardest but
most famous most boring most difficult most expensive

A few adjectives are irregular:

good —> best bad — > worst far —> furthest/farthest

For spelling, see Appendix 6.

We normally use the before a superlative (the longest / the most famous etc.):

Yesterday was the hottest day of the year. O The movie was really boring.
It's the most boring movie I've ever seen.

She is a really nice person - one of the nicest people I know. G Why does
he always come to see me at the worst possible time?

Compare superlative and comparative:

O This hotel is the cheapest in town, (superlative)

It's cheaper than all the others in town, (comparative)

Q He's the most patient person I've ever met. He's much more patient than I
am.

Oldest and eldest

The superlative of old is oldest:

O That church is the oldest building in the town, (not the eldest)

We use eldest (or oldest) when we are talking about people in a family: O
My eldest son is 13 years old. (or My oldest son) O Are you the eldest in
your family? (or the oldest)

After superlatives we normally use in with places:

O What's the longest river in the world? (not of the world)

O We had a nice room. It was one of the best in the hotel, (not of the hotel)

We also use in for organisations and groups of people (a class / a company etc.): O Who is the youngest student in the class? (not of the class)

For a period of time, we normally use of:

O Yesterday was the hottest day of the year. □ What was the happiest day of your life?

We often use the present perfect (I have done) after a superlative (see also Unit 8A): O What's the most important decision you've ever had to make?

O That was the best holiday I've had for a long time.

Exercises

Unit

108

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) + a preposition (of or in).

1 It's a very good room. It's the best room In the hotel.

2 It's a very cheap restaurant. It's the town.

3 It was a very happy day. It was my life.

4 She's a very intelligent student. She's the class.

5 It's a very valuable painting. It's the gallery.

6 Spring is a very busy time for me. It's the year.

In the following sentences use one of + a superlative + a preposition.

7 It's a very good room. It's g&i the best rooms m the hotel.

8 He's a very rich man. He's one the country.

9 It's a very big castle. It's Europe.

10 She's a very good player. She's the team.

11 It was a very bad experience. It was my life.

12 It's a very famous university. It's the world.

^£jj Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (-est or most ...) or a comparative (-er or more ...).

1 We stayed at the cheapest hotel in the town, (cheap)

2 Our hotel was cheaper than all the others in the town, (cheap)

3 The United States is very large, but Canada is (large)

4 What's country in the world? (small)

5 I wasn't feeling well yesterday, but I feel a bit today, (good)

6 It was an awful day. It was day of my life, (bad)

7 What is sport in your country? (popular)

8 Everest is mountain in the world. It is

than any other mountain, (high)

9 This building is over 250 metres high, but it's not in the city.

(tall)

10 I prefer this chair to the other one. It's (comfortable)

11 What's way to get to the station? (quick)

12 Which is -the bus or the train? (quick)

13 What's thing you've ever bought? (expensive)

14 Sue and Kevin have got three daughters is 14 years old. (old)

What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever. Use the words in brackets (in the correct form).

1 You've just been to the cinema. The movie was extremely boring. You tell your friend: (boring/movie / see) That's the most boring movie .I've ever seen

2 Your friend has just told you a joke, which you think is very funny. You say: (funny / joke / hear) That's

[image]

You're drinking coffee with a friend. It's really good coffee. You say: (good / coffee / taste) This

You are talking to a friend about Sarah. Sarah is very generous. You tell your friend about her: (generous / person / meet) She

5 You have just run ten kilometres. You've never run further than this. You say to your friend: (far / run) That

6 You decided to give up your job. Now you think this was a bad mistake. You say to your friend: (bad / mistake / make) It

7 Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:

(famous / person / meet?) Who ?

109 Word order 1: verb + object; place and time

Verb + object

The verb and the object normally go together. We do not usually put other words between them:

Study these examples. The verb and the object go together each time:

Do you eat meat every day? (not Do you eat every day meat?)

Everybody enjoyed the party very much, (not enjoyed very much the party)

Our guide spoke English fluently, (not spoke fluently English)

(not I lost also my passport)

(not see on your left a supermarket) Place and time

Usually the verb and the place (where?) go together: go home live in a city
walk to work etc.

If the verb has an object, the place comes after the verb + object-take
somebody home meet a friend in the street

Time (when? / how often? / how long?) usually goes after place:

Study these examples. Time goes after place:

I'm going to Paris on Monday . (not I'm going on Monday to Paris)

D They have lived in the same house for a long time .

Don't be late. Make sure you're here by 8 o'clock

) Sarah gave me a lift home after the party .

D You really shouldn't go to bed so late .

It is often possible to put time at the beginning of the sentence: O On
Monday I'm going to Paris. Every morning Ben walks to work.

Some time words (for example, always/never/usually) go with the verb in
the middle of the sentence. See Unit 110.

c

Word order in questions -> Units 49-50 Adjective order Unit 99 Word
order 2 -4 Unit 110

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Is the word order right or wrong? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Everybody enjoyed the party very much. OK

2 Ben walks every morning to work. Ben walks to work every, momuig .

3 Joe doesn't like very much football.

4 I drink three or four cups of coffee every morning.

5 I ate quickly my breakfast and went out.

6 Are you going to invite to the party a lot of people?

7 I phoned Tom immediately after hearing the news.

8 Did you go late to bed last night?

9 Did you learn a lot of things at school today? 10 I met on my way home a friend of mine.

Put the parts of the sentence in the correct order.

1 (the party / very much / everybody enjoyed) everybody enjoyed the party very much.

2 (we won / easily / the game)

3 (quietly / the door / I closed)

4 (Tanya / quite well / speaks / German)

5 (Sam/all the time/TV/watches)

6 (again / please don't ask / that question)

7 (football / every weekend / does Kevin play?)

8 (some money / I borrowed / from a friend of mine)

Complete the sentences. Put the parts in the correct order.

1 (for a long time / have lived / in the same house)

They Have lived in the same house -for a long time

2 (to the supermarket / every Friday / go)

I

3 (home / did you come / so late) Why

4 (her children / takes / every day / to school)

5 (been / recently / to the cinema)

I haven't

6 (at the top of the page / your name / write) Please

7 (her name / after a few minutes / remembered)

8 (around the town / all morning / walked) We

9 (on Saturday night / didn't see you / at the party) I

10 (some interesting books / found / in the library) We

11 (her umbrella / last night / in a restaurant / left) Laura

12 (opposite the park / a new hotel / are building) They

Unit

110

Word order 2: adverbs with the verb

Some adverbs (for example, always, also, probably) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence: C Helen always drives to work. O We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry. O The concert will probably be cancelled.

If the verb is one word (drives/fell/cooked etc.), the adverb goes before the verb:

adverb verb Helen always drives to work.

I almost fell as I was going down the stairs.

O I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner, (not cooked also) Lucy hardly ever watches television and rarely reads newspapers. O 'Shall I give you my address?' 'No, I already have it.'

Note that these adverbs (always/often/also etc.) go before have to ...

Joe never phones me. I always have to phone him. (not I have always to phone)

But adverbs go after am/is/are/was/were:

We were feeling very tired and we were also hungry. D Why are you always late? You're never on time. D The traffic isn't usually as bad as it was this morning.

If the verb is two or more words (for example, can remember / doesn't eat / will be cancelled), the

adverb usually goes after the first verb (can/doesn't/will etc.):

Clare

The concert

verb I can

doesn't Are you will

adverb

never

often

definitely

probably

verb 2

remember

eat

going

be

her name, meat.

away next week? cancelled.

You've always been very kind to me. Jack can't cook. He can't even boil an egg. O Do you still work for the same company?

O The house was only built a year ago and it's already falling down.

Note that probably goes before a negative (isn't/won't etc.). So we say:

D I probably won't see you. or I will probably not see you. (not I won't probably)

We also use all and both in these positions:

~j We all felt ill after the meal, (not we felt all ill)

My parents are both teachers, (not my parents both are teachers) Sarah and Jane have both applied for the job. G We are all going out tonight.

Sometimes we use is/will/did etc. instead of repeating part of a sentence (see Unit 51): O Tom says he isn't clever, but I think he is. (= he is clever)

When we do this, we put always/never etc. before the verb:

O He always says he won't be late, but he always is. (= he is always late) Q I've never done it and I never will. (= I will never do it)

Word order 1 -> Unit 109

j

Exercises

[image]

Are the underlined words in the right position or not? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Helen drives always to work. Helen always drives to work .

2 I cleaned the house and also cooked the dinner. OK

3 I have usually a shower in the morning.

4 We soon found the solution to the problem.

5 Steve gets hardly ever angry.

6 I did some shopping and I went also to the bank

7 lane has always to hurry in the morning.

8 I never have worked in a factory.

9 I never have enough time. I always am busy.

[image]

Rewrite the sentences to include the word in brackets.

1 Clare doesn't eat meat, (often) Clare doesn't often eat no eat.

2 Katherine is very generous, (always)

3 I don't have to work on Saturdays, (usually)

4 Do you watch TV in the evenings? (always)

5 Martin is learning Spanish and he is learning Japanese, (also) Martin is learning Spanish and he

6 a We were on holiday in Spain, (all)

b We were staying at the same hotel, (all)

c We enjoyed ourselves, (all)

7 a The new hotel is very expensive, (probably)

b It costs a lot to stay there, (probably)

8 a I can help you. (probably)

b I can't help you. (probably)

[image]

J Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets in the correct order.

1 I am never remember (remember / I / never / can) her name.

2 (take / I / usually) sugar in coffee.

3 (am / usually / I) hungry when I get home from work.

4 Mark and Amy (both / were / born) in Manchester.

5 Lisa is a good pianist. (sing / she / also / can) very well.

6 Our cat (usually / sleeps) under the bed.

7 They live in the same building as me, but

(never / I / have / spoken) to them.

8 This shop is always very busy

(have / you / always / to wait) a long time to be served.

9 My eyesight isn't very good

(I / read / can / only) with glasses.

10 (all / were / we) tired, so

(all / we / fell) asleep.

11 a: Are you tired?

b: Yes, (am / I / always) at this time of day.

12 (I / probably / leaving / will / be) early tomorrow.

13 I'm afraid (probably / I / be / won't) able to come to the party.

14 Helen is away a lot. (is / hardly ever / she) at home.

15 (we / still / are / living) in the same place. We haven't moved.

16 If we hadn't taken the same train, (never / met / we / would / have) each other.

17 Tanya (says / always) that she'll phone me, but (does / she / never).

Unit Still, yet and already

111 ^ Any more / any longer / no longer

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

222

Still

We use still to say that a situation or action is continuing. It hasn't changed or stopped: O It's 10 o'clock and Joe is still in bed. □ When I went to bed, Chris was still working. O Do you still want to go away or have you

changed your mind?

Still usually goes in the middle of the sentence with the verb (see Unit 110).

Any more / any longer / no longer

We use not... any more or not... any longer to say that a situation has changed. Any more and any longer go at the end of a sentence:

O Lucy doesn't work here any more (or any longer). She left last month.
(not Lucy doesn't still work here.)

O We used to be good friends, but we aren't any more (or any longer).

You can also use no longer. No longer goes in the middle of the sentence:

3 Lucy no longer works here. Note that we do not normally use no more in this way:

O We are no longer friends, (not We are no more friends.)

Compare still and not... any more:

O Sally still works here, but Lucy doesn't work here any more.

Yet

Yet = until now. We use yet mainly in negative sentences (He isn't here yet) and questions (Is he here yet?). Yet shows that the speaker is expecting something to happen. Yet usually goes at the end of a sentence:

3 It's 10 o'clock and Joe isn't here yet.

C Have you met your new neighbours yet?

O 'Where are you going on holiday?' 'We don't know yet.' We often use yet with the present perfect (Have you met... yet?). See Unit 7D.

Compare yet and still:

O Mike lost his job six months ago and is still unemployed.

Mike lost his job six months ago and hasn't found another job yet. O Is it still raining?

Has it stopped raining yet?

Still is also possible in negative sentences (before the negative):

O She said she would be here an hour ago and she still hasn't come. This is similar to 'she hasn't come yet'. But still... not shows a stronger feeling of surprise or impatience. Compare:

I sent him an invitation last week. He hasn't replied yet. (but I expect he will reply soon) I sent him an invitation weeks ago and he still hasn't replied, (he should have replied before now)

Already

We use already to say that something happened sooner than expected. Already usually goes in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

j 'What time is Sue leaving?' 'She has already left.' (= sooner than you expected)

C Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he already know?

O I've just had lunch and I'm already hungry.

^Present perfect + already/yet

Unit7D

Word orderUnit 110

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Compare what Paul said a few years ago with what he says now. Some things are the same as before and some things have changed. Write

sentences with still and any more.

[image]

Paul a few years ago

travel a lot. I work in a shop. I write poems. I want to be a teacher. I'm interested in politics. I'm single.

1

I go fishing a lot.

j

[image]

Paul now

travel a lot. I work in a hospital. I gave up writing poems. I want to be a teacher. I'm not interested in politics. I'm single.

I haven't been fishing for years.

1 (travel) He still travels a. lot.

2 (shop) He doesn't work in a. shop

any more.

3 (poems) He

4 (teacher)

5 (politics)

6 (single)

7 (fishing)

8 (beard)

Now write three sentences about Paul using no longer.

9 He no longer works in a shop. 11 10 12

[image]

For each sentence (with still) write a sentence with a similar meaning using not... yet + one of the following verbs:

decide find finish go stop take off wake up

1 It's still raining.

2 Gary is still here.

3 They're still repairing the road.

4 The children are still asleep.

5 Is Ann still looking for a place to live?

6 I'm still wondering what to do.

7 The plane is still waiting on the runway.

It hasn't stopped raining yet.

He

They

[image]

Put in still, yet, already or any more in the underlined sentence (or part of the sentence). Study the examples carefully.

1 Mike lost his job a year ago and he is unemployed, he is still unemployed

2 Shall I tell Joe what happened or does he know? He already knows?

3 I'm hungry. Is dinner ready? Is dinner ready yet?

4 I was hungry earlier, but I'm not hungry any more

- 5 Can we wait a few minutes? I don't want to go out.
- 6 Amy used to work at the airport, but she doesn't work there .
- 7 I used to live in Amsterdam. I have a lot of friends there.
- 8 'Shall I introduce you to Joe?' 'There's no need. We've met. '
- 9 Do you live in the same place or have you moved?
- 10 Would you like to eat with us or have you eaten ?
- 11 'Where's John?' ' He's not here. He'll be here soon.'
- 12 Tim said he'd be here at 8.30. It's 9 o'clock now and he isn't here
- 13 Do you want to join the club or are you a member ?
- 14 It happened a long time ago, but I can remember it very clearly .
- 15 I've put on weight. These trousers don't fit me.
- 16 'Have you finished with the paper?' 'No. I'm reading it.'

Unit

112

[image]

224

Even

Study this example situation:

Tina loves watching television.

She has a TV in every room of the house, even the bathroom.

We use even to say that something is unusual or surprising. It is not usual to have a TV in the bathroom.

[image]

Some more examples:

These pictures are really awful. Even I take better pictures than these, (and I'm certainly not a good photographer) O He always wears a coat, even in hot weather.

The print was very small. I couldn't read it, even with glasses. O Nobody would help her, not even her best friend. Not even her best friend would help her.

or

You can use even with the verb in the middle of a sentence (see Unit 110):

I Sue has travelled all over the world. She has even been to the Antarctic.

(It's especially unusual to go to the Antarctic, so she must have travelled a lot.) O They are very rich. They even have their own private jet.

Study these examples with even after a negative (not/can't/don't etc.):

O I can't cook. I can't even boil an egg. (and boiling an egg is very easy)

O They weren't very friendly to us. They didn't even say hello.

O Jessica is very fit. She's just run five miles and she's not even out of breath.

You can use even + comparative (cheaper / more expensive etc.): O I got up very early, but Jack got up even earlier. O I knew I didn't have much money, but I've got even less than I thought.

We were surprised to get an email from her. We were even more surprised when she came to see us a few days later.

Even though / even when / even if

We use even though / even when / even if + subject + verb:

□ Even though she can't drive, she bought a car.

subject + verb He never shouts, even when he's angry. O This river is dangerous. It's dangerous to swim in it, even if you're a strong swimmer.

You cannot use even in this way (+ subject + verb). We say:

O Even though she can't drive, she bought a car. (not Even she can't drive)

O I can't reach the shelf even if I stand on a chair, (not even I stand)

Compare even if and if:

We're going to the beach tomorrow. It doesn't matter what the weather is like. We're going even if it's raining. O We want to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if it's raining.

If and when -¥ Unit 25D Though / even though -* Unit 113E

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Amy, Kate and Lisa are three friends who went on holiday together. Use the information given about them to complete the sentences using even or not even.

Amy

is usually happy is usually on time likes getting up early is very interested in art

[image]

Kate

isn't very keen on art is usually miserable usually hates hotels hasn't got a camera

[image]

Lisa

is almost always late is a keen photographer loves staying in hotels isn't very good at getting up

[image]

1 They stayed at a hotel. Everybody liked it, MM Kate

2 They arranged to meet. They all arrived on time,

3 They went to an art gallery. Nobody enjoyed it,

4 Yesterday they had to get up early. They all managed to do this,

5 They were together yesterday. They were all in a good mood,

6 None of them took any pictures,

[image]

[image]

Make sentences with even. Use the words in brackets.

1 Sue has been all over the world, (the Antarctic) She has even been to the Antarctic.

2 We painted the whole room, (the floor) We

3 Rachel has met lots of famous people, (the prime minister) She

4 You could hear the noise from a long way away, (from the next street)

You

In the following sentences you have to use not... even.

5 They didn't say anything to us. (hello) They cUctn't even soy hello.

6 I can't remember anything about her. (her name)

7 There isn't anything to do in this town, (a cinema)

8 He didn't tell anybody where he was going, (his wife)

9 I don't know anyone in our street, (the people next door)

Complete the sentences using even + comparative.

1 It was very hot yesterday, but today it's even hotter

2 The church is 500 years old, but the house next to it is

3 That's a very good idea, but I've got an one

4 The first question was very difficult to answer. The second one was

5 I did very badly in the exam, but most of my friends did

6 Neither of us was hungry. I ate very little and my friend ate

Put in if, even, even if or even though.

1 Even though she can't drive, she has bought a car.

2 The bus leaves in five minutes, but we can still catch it we run.

3 The bus leaves in two minutes. We won't catch it now we run.

4 His Spanish isn't very good, after three years in Spain.

5 His Spanish isn't very good, he lived in Spain for three years.

6 with the heating on, it was cold in the house.

7 I couldn't sleep I was very tired.

8 I won't forgive them for what they did, they apologise.

9 I hadn't eaten anything for 24 hours, I wasn't hungry.

-t Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

Although / though / even though In spite of/despite

Study this example situation:

[image]

Last year Paul and Sarah had a holiday by the sea. It rained a lot, but they enjoyed it.

You can say:

Although it rained a lot, they enjoyed it.

(= It rained a lot, but they ...)

or

In spite of

Despite

the rain, they enjoyed it.

After although we use a subject + verb:

O Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.

I didn't get the job although I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare the meaning of although and because:

We went out although it was raining heavily. We didn't go out because it was raining heavily.

After in spite of or despite, we use a noun, a pronoun (this/that/what etc.) or -ing:

In spite of the rain, we enjoyed our holiday.

I didn't get the job in spite of having the necessary qualifications. C She wasn't well, but in spite of this she continued working. O In spite of what I said yesterday, I still love you.

Despite is the same as in spite of. We say in spite of, but despite (without of):

She wasn't well, but despite this she continued working, (not despite of

this)

You can say in spite of the fact (that) ... and despite the fact (that) ...

r~\j.j .. I in spite of the fact (that) I'

O I didn't get the job j desp . te ^ ^ ^ | I had the necessary qualifications.

Compare in spite of and because of:

C We went out in spite of the rain, (or ... despite the rain.) O We didn't go out because of the rain.

Compare although and in spite of / despite: O Although the traffic was bad, In spite of the traffic,

although I was very tired, (not despite I was tired)

we arrived on time, (not In spite of the traffic was bad)

D I couldn't sleep

despite being very tired.

Though is the same as although:

I didn't get the job though I had the necessary qualifications.

In spoken English we often use though at the end of a sentence:

O The house isn't so nice. I like the garden though. (= but I like the garden)

I see them every day. I've never spoken to them though. (= but I've never spoken to them)

Even though (but not 'even' alone) is a stronger form of although:

O Even though I was really tired, I couldn't sleep, (not Even I was really tired ...)

Even -> Unit 112

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use although + a sentence from the box.

I didn't speak the language well he has a very important job

I had never seen her before we don't like them very much

it was quite cold the heating was on

I'd met her twice before we've known each other a long time

1 Although he has a, very important Job , he isn't particularly well-paid.

2 , I recognised her from a photograph

3 She wasn't wearing a coat

4 We thought we'd better invite them to the party

5 , I managed to make myself understood

6 , the room wasn't warm

7 I didn't recognise her

8 We're not very good friends

Complete the sentences with although / in spite of / because / because of.

1 Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.

2 a all our careful plans, a lot of things went wrong.

b we'd planned everything carefully, a lot of things went wrong.

3 a I went home early I was feeling unwell.

b I went to work the next day I was still feeling unwell.

4 a She only accepted the job the salary, which was very high.

b She accepted the job the salary, which was rather low.

5 a I managed to get to sleep there was a lot of noise, b I couldn't get to sleep the noise.

Use your own ideas to complete the following sentences:

6 a He passed the exam although

b He passed the exam because

7 a I didn't eat anything although

b I didn't eat anything in spite of

[image]

Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.

1 I couldn't sleep. I was very tired, (despite)

I couldn't sleep despite being very tired.

2 They have very little money. They are happy, (in spite of)

In spite

3 My foot was injured. I managed to walk home, (although)

4 I enjoyed the film. The story was silly, (in spite of)

5 We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other, (despite)

6 I got very wet in the rain. I was only out for five minutes, (even though)

Use the words in brackets to make a sentence with though at the end.

1 The house isn't very nice, (like / garden) I like the garden though

2 It's warm today, (very windy)

3 We didn't like the food, (ate)

4 Liz is very nice, (don't like / husband) I

-* Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

In case

Study this example situation:

[image]

Your car should have a spare wheel because it is possible you will have a puncture.

Your car should have a spare wheel in case you have a puncture.

In case you have a puncture = because it is possible you will have a puncture.

■mmmm

Some more examples of in case:

I'll leave my mobile phone switched on in case Jane calls. (= because it is possible she will call)

I'll draw a map for you in case you have problems finding our house. (= because it is possible you will have problems)

I'll remind them about the meeting in case they've forgotten. (= because it is possible they have forgotten)

We use just in case for a smaller possibility:

O I don't think it will rain, but I'll take an umbrella just in case. (= just in case it rains)

Do not use will after in case. Use a present tense for the future (see Unit 25):

I'll leave my phone switched on in case Jane calls, (not in case Jane will call)

In case is not the same as if. We use in case to say why somebody does (or doesn't do) something. You do something now in case something happens later.

Compare: in case

D We'll buy some more food in case Tom comes.

(= Maybe Tom will come. We'll buy

some more food now, whether he

comes or not; then we'll already have

the food if he comes.)

I'll give you my phone number in case

you need to contact me.

You should insure your bike in case it

is stolen.

if

We'll buy some more food if Tom comes.

(= Maybe Tom will come. If he comes, we'll buy some more food; if he doesn't come, we won't buy any more food.)

O You can call me on this number if you

need to contact me. (i You should inform the police if your

bike is stolen.

You can use in case + past to say why somebody did something:

j I left my phone switched on in case Jane called. (= because it was possible

that Jane would call)

O I drew a map for Sarah in case she had problems finding the house. O
We rang the doorbell again in case they hadn't heard it the first time.

In case of is not the same as in case. In case of ... = if there is ... (especially on notices etc.): D In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire) O In case of emergency, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)

If Units 25, 38-40

j

Exercises

Unit

114

[image]

Sophie is going for a long walk in the country. You think she should take:
some chocolate a map an anorak a camera some water

You think she should take these things because:

it's possible she'll get lost she might get hungry

perhaps she'll be thirsty maybe it will rain

she might want to take some pictures

What do you say to Sophie? Write sentences with in case.

1 Take, some chocolate in case you get hungry .

2 Take

4 5

What do you say in these situations? Use in case.

1 It's possible that Jane will need to contact you, so you agree to give her your phone number. You say: I'll give you my phone number M y 01A nezd, to contact me

2 A friend of yours is going away for a long time. Maybe you won't see her again before she goes, so you decide to say goodbye now.

You say: I'll say goodbye now ,..

3 You are shopping in a supermarket with a friend. You think you have everything you need, but maybe you forgot something. Your friend has the list. You ask her to check it.

You say: Can you

4 You advise a friend about using a computer. You think he should back up (= copy) his files because maybe there will be a problem with his computer (and he could lose all his data). You say: You should back up

[image]

Complete the sentences using in case.

1 There was a possibility that Jane would call. So I left my phone switched on. I left my phone switched on in case Jane called,

2 I thought that I might forget the name of the book. So I wrote it down.

I wrote down the name of the book

3 I thought my parents might be worried about me. So I phoned them. I phoned my parents

4 I sent an email to Lisa, but she didn't reply. So I sent another email because maybe she didn't get the first one.

I sent her another email

5 I met some people when I was on holiday in France. They said they might come to London one day. I live in London, so I gave them my phone number.

I gave them my phone number

Put in in case or if.

1 I'll draw a map for you encase you have problems finding our house.

2 You should tell the police WrL you have any information about the crime.

3 I hope you'll come to Australia sometime. you come, you must visit us.

4 This book belongs to Susan. Can you give it to her you see her?

5 Write your name and phone number on your bag you lose it.

6 Go to the lost property office you lose your bag.

7 The burglar alarm will ring somebody tries to break into the house.

8 You should lock your bike to something somebody tries to steal it.

9 I was advised to get insurance I needed medical treatment while I was abroad.

-> Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

Unit

115 Unless As long as Provided/providing

Unless

Study this example situation:

The club is for members only.

You can't go in unless you are a member.

This means:

You can't go in except if you are a member. You can go in only if you are a member.

Unless = except if.

[image]

Some more examples of unless:

O I'll see you tomorrow unless I have to work late. (= except if I have to work late)
O There are no buses to the beach. Unless you have a car, it's difficult to get there. (= except if you have a car)

'Shall I tell Liz what happened?' 'Not unless she asks you.' (= only if she asks you)
Sally hates to complain. She wouldn't complain about something unless it was really bad. (= except if it was really bad)

We can take a taxi to the restaurant - unless you'd prefer to walk. (= except if you'd prefer to walk)

Instead of unless it is often possible to say if ... not:

O Unless we leave now, we'll be late, or If we don't leave now, we'll...

All these expressions mean 'if or 'on condition that'.

As long as / provided / providing

as long as or so long as provided (that) or providing (that)

For example:

O You can borrow my car j ^ ^ J you promise not to drive too fast.

(= you can borrow my car, but you must promise not to drive too fast - this is a condition)

O Travelling by car is convenient j ^^^" ^3^ | y° u ^ ave somewhere to park.

(= but only if you have somewhere to park)

O Providing (that)] . . .

• ■ j . . . \ the room is clean, I don t mind which hotel we stay at. Provided (that) J

(= the room must be clean - otherwise I don't mind)

Unless / as long as etc. for the future

When you are talking about the future, do not use will after unless / as long as / so long as /

provided / providing. Use a present tense (see Unit 25):

O I'm not going out unless it stops raining, (not unless it will stop) C

Providing the weather is good, we're going to have a picnic tomorrow. (not providing the weather will be good)

If -* Units 25, 38-40

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use unless in your sentence.

1 You must try a bit harder or you won't pass the exam.

You won't pass the exam unless you try a bit harder.

Listen carefully or you won't know what to do. You won't know what to do

3 She must apologise to me or I'll never speak to her again.

4 You have to speak very slowly or he won't be able to understand you.

5 Business must improve soon or the company will have to close.

^ jj^ Write sentences with unless.

1 The club isn't open to everyone. You're allowed in only if you're a member. You aren't allowed. br\ the club unless you Ye a member.

2 I don't want to go to the party alone. I'm going only if you go too. I'm not going

3 Don't worry about the dog. It will attack you only if you move suddenly.
The dog

[image]

4 Ben isn't very talkative. He'll speak to you only if you ask him something.

Ben

5 Today is a public holiday. The doctor will see you only if it's an emergency. The doctor

Which is correct?

1 You can borrow my car unless / as long as you promise not to drive too fast, (as long as is correct)

2 I'm playing tennis tomorrow unless / providing it rains.

3 I'm playing tennis tomorrow unless / providing it doesn't rain.

4 I don't mind if you come home late unless / as long as you come in quietly.

5 I'm going now unless / provided you want me to stay.

6 I don't watch TV unless / as long as I've got nothing else to do.

7 Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless / provided they are with an adult.

8 Unless / Provided they are with an adult, children are not allowed to use the swimming pool.

9 We can sit here in the corner unless / as long as you'd rather sit over there by the window. 10 a: Our holiday cost a lot of money.

b: Did it? Well, that doesn't matter unless / as long as you enjoyed yourselves.

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 We'll be late unless we get a taxi,

2 I like hot weather as long as

3 It takes about 20 minutes to drive to the airport provided

4 I don't mind walking home as long as

5 I like to walk to work in the morning unless

6 We can meet tomorrow unless

7 I can lend you the money providing

8 You won't achieve anything unless

-> Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

Unit As (As I walked along the street... / 116 As I was hungry ...)

As = at the same time as

You can use as when two things happen at the same time: O We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.

(We waved and she drove away at the same time) D As I walked along the street, I looked in the shop windows. O Can you turn off the light as you go out, please?

Or you can say that something happened as you were doing something else (in the middle of doing something else):

C Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus.

C We met Paul as we were leaving the hotel. For the past continuous (was getting / were going etc.), see Unit 6.

[image]

You can also use just as (= exactly at that moment): O Just as I sat down, the doorbell rang.

I had to leave just as the conversation was getting interesting.

We also use as when two things happen together in a longer period of time:

O As the day went on, the weather got worse. O I began to enjoy the job more as I got used to it.

the day went on

the weather got worse

Compare as and when:

We use as only if two things happen at the same time.

As I drove home, I listened to music.

(= at the same time)

Use when (not as) if one thing happens after another.

When I got home, I had something to eat. (not As I got home)

As = because

As also means 'because':

D As I was hungry, I decided to find somewhere to eat. (= because I was hungry) O As we have plenty of time before our flight, let's go and have a coffee. O We watched TV all evening as we didn't have anything better to do. O As I don't watch television any more, I gave my TV to a friend of mine.

You can also use since in this way:

O Since we have plenty of time, let's go and have a coffee.

Compare as (= because) and when:

I couldn't contact David as he was on holiday. (= because he was on holiday)

As they lived near us, we used to see

them quite often.

(= because they lived near us)

-www

—r-

David's passport was stolen when he was on holiday.

(= during the time he was away)

When they lived near us, we used to see them quite often. (= at the time they lived near us)

As ... as Unit 107 Like and as Unit 117 As if -* Unit 118

Exercises

[image]

[image]

(Section A) Use as to join sentences from the boxes.

1

2 3 4 5

We said goodbye to Liz

I listened

I burnt myself

The crowd cheered

A dog ran out in front of the car

we were driving along the road

I was taking a hot dish out of the oven

she drove away

she told me her story

the two teams came onto the field

1 2 3 4 5

We all waved goodbye to Liz as she drove away.

(Section B) Join sentences from the boxes. Begin each sentence with as.

1 2 3 4 5

I was hungry

today is a public holiday

I didn't want to disturb anybody

I don't know what to do

none of us had a watch

I need some advice I was very quiet

I decided to find somewhere to eat we didn't know what time it was
many of the shops are shut

1 2 3 4 5

As I was hungry, I decided to -find somewhere to eat.

48 9

because

at the same time as

7

What does as mean in these sentences?

1 As they live near us, we see them quite often.

2 Kate slipped as she was getting off the bus.

3 As I was tired, I went to bed early.

4 Unfortunately, as I was parking the car, I hit the car behind me.

5 As we climbed the hill, we got more and more tired.

6 We decided to go out to eat as we had no food at home.

7 As we don't use the car very often, we've decided to sell it.

In some of these sentences, you need when (not as). Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 Julia got married as she was 22. when she was ZZ

2 As the day went on, the weather got worse.

3 He dropped the glass as he was taking it out of the cupboard.

4 I lost my phone as I was in London.

5 As I left school, I didn't know what to do.

6 The train slowed down as it approached the station.

7 I used to live near the sea as I was a child.

OK

[image]

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I saw you as

2 It started to rain just as

3 As I didn't have enough money for a taxi,

4 Just as I took the picture,

■* Additional exercise 32 (page 321)

O 'What a beautiful house! It's like a palace, (not as a palace) C 'What does Sandra do?' 'She's a teacher, like me.' (nor as me)

Be careful! The floor has been polished. It's like walking on ice. (not as walking)

It's raining again. I hate weather like this, (not as this)

In these sentences, like is a preposition. So it is followed by a noun (like a palace), a pronoun (like me / like this) or -ing (like walking).

You can also say '... like (somebody/something) doing something': O 'What's that noise?' 'It sounds like a baby crying.'

Sometimes like = for example:

O I enjoy water sports, like surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing. You can also use such as (= for example):

O I enjoy water sports, such as surfing, scuba diving and water-skiing.

As = in the same way as, or in the same condition as. We use as before subject + verb: O I didn't move anything. I left everything as it was. O You should have done it as I showed you.

We also use like in this way:

O I left everything like it was.

Compare as and like:

O You should have done it as I showed you. or ... like I showed you. O You should have done it like this, (not as this)

Note that we say as usual / as always: j You're late as usual. Q As always, Nick was the first to complain.

Sometimes as (+ subject + verb) has other meanings. For example, after do:
O You can do as you like. (= do what you like) O They did as they promised. (= They did what they promised.)

We also say as you know / as I said / as she expected / as I thought etc..

O As you know, it's Emma's birthday next week. (= you know this already)
Andy failed his driving test, as he expected. (= he expected this before)

Like is not usual in these expressions, except with say (like I said):

As I said yesterday, I'm sure we can solve the problem, or Like I said yesterday ...

As can also be a preposition, but the meaning is different from like.
Compare:

As (preposition) = in the position of, in the form of etc.:

Many years ago I worked as a photographer, (not like a photographer)
Many words, for example 'work' and 'rain', can be used as verbs or nouns.

O London is fine as a place to visit, but I wouldn't like to live there.

O The news of the tragedy came as a great shock.

As a taxi driver, I spend most of my
working life in a car.

(I am a taxi driver, that is my job)

Everyone wants me to drive them to places. I'm like a taxi driver.

(I'm not a taxi driver, but I'm like one)

As ... as -> Unit 107 As (= at the same time as / because) -> Unit 116 As if
-> Unit 118

Exercises

In some of these sentences, you need like (not as). Correct the sentences

where necessary.

1 It's raining again. I hate weather as this. weaiH.er Uke this

2 Andy failed his driving test, as he expected. OK

3 Do you think Lisa looks as her mother?

4 Tim gets on my nerves. I can't stand people as him.

5 Why didn't you do it as I told you to do it?

6 Brian is a student, as most of his friends.

7 You never listen. Talking to you is as talking to the wall.

8 As I said before, I'm thinking of changing my job.

9 Tom's idea seems a good one. Let's do as he suggests

10 I'll phone you tomorrow as usual, OK?

11 Suddenly there was a terrible noise. It was as a bomb exploding.

12 She's a very good swimmer. She swims as a fish.

Complete the sentences using like or as + the following:

a beginner blocks of ice a palaco a birthday present a child a theatre winter
a tour guide

1 This house is beautiful. It's ..Like- a pakkcz

2 My feet are really cold. They're

3 I've been playing tennis for years, but I still play

4 Marion once had a part-time job

5 I wonder what that building is. It looks

6 My brother gave me this watch a longtime ago.

7 It's very cold for the middle of summer. It's

8 He's 22 years old, but he sometimes behaves

Put in like or as. Sometimes either word is possible.

1 We heard a noise a baby crying.

2 Your English is very fluent. I wish I could speak you.

3 Don't take my advice if you don't want to. You can do you like.

4 You waste too much time doing things sitting in cafes all day.

5 I wish I had a car yours.

6 You don't need to change clothes. You can go out you are.

7 My neighbour's house is full of interesting things. It's a museum.

8 We saw Kevin last night. He was very cheerful, always.

9 Sally has been working a waitress for the last two months.

10 In several countries in Asia, Japan, Indonesia and Thailand, traffic drives on the left.

11 You're different from the other people I know. I don't know anyone else you.

12 We don't need all the bedrooms in the house, so we use one of them a study.

13 The news that Sarah and Gary were getting married came a complete surprise to me.

14 her father, Catherine has a very good voice.

15 At the moment I've got a temporary job in a bookshop. It's not great, but it's OK a temporary job.

16 you can imagine, we were very tired after such a long journey.

17 This tea is awful. It tastes water.

18 I think I prefer this room it was, before we decorated it.

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

You can use like to say how somebody or something looks/sounds/feels O That house looks like it's going to fall down. Helen sounded like she had a cold, didn't she? I've just got back from holiday, but I feel very tired. I don't feel like I've had a holiday.

You can also use as if or as though in all these examples: 3 That house looks as if it's going to fall down. J Helen sounded as if she had a cold, didn't she? I don't feel as though I've had a holiday.

That house looks like it's going to fall down.

Compare:

O You look tired, (look + adjective)

You look like you haven't slept, (look like + subject + verb)

As if and as though are more formal than like.

[image]

You can say It looks like ... / It sounds like ...

Sarah is very late, isn't she? It looks like she isn't coming.

We took an umbrella because it looked like it was going to rain.

The noise is very loud next door. It sounds like they're having a party.

You can also use as if or as though:

O It looks as if she isn't coming, or

It looks as though she isn't coming. C It looked as if it was going to rain.

It sounds as though they're having a party.

It sounds like they're having a party next door

[image]

You can use like / as if / as though with other verbs to say how somebody does something: O He ran like he was running for his life.

After the interruption, the speaker went on talking as if nothing had happened. O When I told them my plan, they looked at me as though I was mad.

After as if (or as though), we sometimes use the past when we are talking about the present. For example:

O I don't like Tim. He talks as if he knew everything.

The meaning is not past in this sentence. We use the past (as if he knew) because the idea is not real: Tim does not know everything. We use the past in the same way in other sentences with if and wish (see Unit 39). Like is not normally used in this way.

Some more examples:

She's always asking me to do things for her - as if I didn't have enough to do already. (I do have enough to do)

Gary's only 40. Why do you talk about him as if he was an old man? (he isn't an old man)

When you use the past in this way, you can use were instead of was: O Why do you talk about him as if he were (or was) an old man? O They treat me as if I were (or was) their own son. (I'm not their son)

If I was/were -* Unit 39C Look/sound etc. + adjective -# Unit 99C Like and as -¥ Unit 117

Exercises

^ jj| What do you say in these situations? Use the words in brackets to make your sentence.

1 You meet Bill. He has a black eye and some plasters on his face, (look / like / be / a fight) You say to him: You Look; (ike youVe been a -fujht.

2 Claire comes into the room. She looks absolutely terrified, (look / like / see / a ghost)

You say to her: What's the matter? You

3 Joe is on holiday. He's talking to you on the phone and sounds happy, (sound / as if / have / a good time)

You say to him: You

4 You have just run one kilometre. You are absolutely exhausted, (feel / like / run / a marathon) You say to a friend: I

Make sentences beginning It looks like ... / It sounds like

you should see a doctor there's been an accident they're having an argument
it's going to rain she isn't coming we'll have to walk

1 Sarah said she would be here an hour ago.

You say: It Looks Like she iWt coming

2 The sky is full of black clouds. You say: It

3 You hear two people shouting at each other next door.

You say:

4 You see an ambulance, some policemen and two damaged cars at the side of the road.

You say:

5 You and a friend have just missed the last bus home.

You say:

6 Dave isn't feeling well. He tells you all about it. You say:

Complete the sentences with as if. Choose from the box, putting the verbs in the correct form.

she / enjoy / it I / go / be sick he / not / eat / for a week

he / need / a good rest she / hurt / her leg he / mean / what he / say

I/not/exist she / not / want / come

1 Mark looks very tired. He looks as if he needs a good rest

2 I don't think Paul was joking. He looked

3 What's the matter with Amanda? She's walking

4 Peter was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly. He ate

5 Tanya had a bored expression on her face during the movie. She didn't look

6 I've just eaten too many chocolates. Now I don't feel well. I feel

7 I phoned Liz and invited her to the party, but she wasn't very enthusiastic about it. She sounded

8 I went into the office, but nobody spoke to me or looked at me.

Everybody ignored me

These sentences are like the ones in Section D. Complete each sentence using as if.

1 Andy is a terrible driver. He drives as if he were the only driver on the road.

2 I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to me as if I a child.

3 Steve has never met Nicola, but he talks about her his best friend.

4 It was a long time ago that we first met, but I remember it yesterday.

[image]

For, during and while

For and during

We use for + a period of time to say how long something goes on: for two hours for a week for ages

We watched TV for two hours last night. D Jess is going away for a week in September. O Where have you been? I've been waiting for ages.

Are you going away for the weekend?

We use during + noun to say when something happens (not how long): during the movie during our holiday during the night

I fell asleep during the movie. O We met some really nice people during our holiday. O The ground is wet. It must have rained during the night.

With 'time words' (for example: the morning / the afternoon / the summer), you can usually say in or during:

G It must have rained in the night, or ... during the night.

C I'll phone you sometime during the afternoon, or ... in the afternoon.

You cannot use during to say how long something goes on:

O It rained for three days without stopping, (not during three days)

Compare during and for:

C I fell asleep during the movie. I was asleep for half an hour.

[image]

During and while

Compare:

We use during + noun:

O I fell asleep during the movie.

I— noun

We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.

O Robert suddenly began to feel ill during the exam.

We use while + subject + verb:

I fell asleep while I was watching TV.

subject+ verb

We met a lot of interesting people while we were on holiday.

Robert suddenly began to feel ill while he was doing the exam.

Some more examples of while:

C We saw Clare while we were waiting for the bus. O While you were out, there was a phone call for you. C Alex read a book while I watched TV.

When you are talking about the future, use the present (not will) after while:

□ I'm going to Singapore next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm there.(not while I will be there) What are you going to do while you're waiting? (not while you'll be waiting)

[image]

Alex read a book while I watched TV.

See also Unit 25.

For and since "4 Unit 12A While + -ing -> Unit 68B

j

Exercises

Put in for or during.

1 It rained for three days without stopping.

2 I fell asleep during the movie.

3 I went to the theatre last night. I met Sue the interval.

4 Martin hasn't lived in Britain all his life. He lived in Brazil four years.

5 Production at the factory was seriously affected the strike.

6 I felt really ill last week. I could hardly eat anything three days.

7 I waited for you half an hour and decided that you weren't coming.

8 Sarah was very angry with me. She didn't speak to me . a week.

9 We usually go out at weekends, but we don't go out the week very often.

10 Jack started a new job a few weeks ago. Before that he was out of work six months.

11 I need a break. I think I'll go away a few days.

12 The president gave a long speech. She spoke two hours.

13 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't had anything to eat the journey.

14 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't had anything to eat eight hours.

Put in during or while.

1 We met a lot of interesting people teMfc we were on holiday.

2 We met a lot of interesting people during our holiday.

3 I met Mike I was shopping.

4 I was on holiday, I didn't read any newspapers or watch TV.

5 our stay in Paris, we went to a lot of museums and galleries.

6 My phone rang we were having dinner.

7 There was a lot of noise the night. What was it?

8 I'd been away for many years. that time, many things had changed.

9 What did they say about me I was out of the room?

10 I went out for dinner last night. Unfortunately I began to feel ill the meal
and

had to go home.

11 Please don't interrupt me I'm speaking.

12 There were many interruptions the president's speech.

13 Can you hold my bag I try on this jacket?

14 We were hungry when we arrived. We hadn't had anything to eat we
were travelling.

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I fell asleep while I was watching TV,

2 I fell asleep during the movie.

3 Nobody came to see me while

4 Can you wait for me while

5 Most of the students looked bored during

6 I was asked a lot of questions during

7 Don't open the car door while

8 The lights suddenly went out while

9 It started to rain during

10 It started to rain while

11 What are you going to do while

[image]

[image]

[image]

-* Additional exercise 33 (page 321)

Unit

120

By and until By the time

[image]

By ... = not later than:

[image]

[image]

240

O

o

o

I sent the documents to them today, so they should receive them by Monday. (= on or before Monday, not later than Monday)

We'd better hurry. We have to be home by 5 o'clock. (= at or before 5 o'clock, not later than 5 o'clock)

Where's Sarah? She should be here by now. (= now or before now - so she should have already arrived)

[image]

This milk has to be used by 14 August.

We use until (or till) to say how long a situation continues:

'Shall we go now?' 'No, let's wait until it stops raining.' or till it stops raining.'

... , . f I stayed in bed until half past ten.

J I couldn t get up this morning. . , ' _

b r & [I didn t get up until half past ten.

Compare until and by:

Something continues until a time in the future:

Joe will be away until Monday, (so he'll be back on Monday) I'll be working until 11.30. (so I'll stop working at 11.30)

Something happens by a time in the future:

Joe will be back by Monday.

(= he'll be back not later than Monday)

I'll have finished my work by 11.30.

(= I'll finish my work not later than

11.30.)

You can say 'by the time something happens'. Study these examples:

O It's too late to go to the bank now. By the time we get there, it will be closed. (= the bank will close between now and the time we get there)

(from a postcard) Our holiday ends tomorrow. So by the time you receive

this postcard, I'll be back home.

(= I will arrive home between tomorrow and the time you receive this postcard)

Hurry up! By the time we get to the cinema, the film will already have started.

You can say 'by the time something happened' (for the past):

D Karen's car broke down on the way to the party last night. By the time she arrived, most of the other guests had left.

(= it took her a long time to get to the party and most of the guests left during this time)

O I had a lot of work to do yesterday evening. I was very tired by the time I finished.

(= it took me a long time to do the work, and I became more and more tired during this time)

We went to the cinema last night. It took us a long time to find somewhere to park the car. By the time we got to the cinema, the film had already started.

A/so by then or by that time:

O Karen finally got to the party at midnight, but by then, most of the other guests had left. or ... but by that time, most of the other guests had left.

Will be doing and will have done -* Unit 24 By (other uses) -* Units 42B, 60B, 128

Exercises

^jjj^ Complete the sentences with by.

1 We have to be home not later than 5 o'clock. We have to be home fey 5 o'clock .

2 I have to be at the airport not later than 8.30. I have to be at the airport

3 Let me know not later than Saturday whether you can come to the party.
whether you can come to the party.

4 Please make sure that you're here not later than 2 o'clock. Please make sure that

5 If we leave now, we should arrive not later than lunchtime. If we leave now,

^jj Put in by or until.

1 Steve has gone away. He'll be away until until Monday.

2 Sorry, but I must go. I have to be home 5 o'clock.

3 I've been offered a job. I haven't decided yet whether to accept it or not. I have to decide Friday.

4 I think I'll wait Thursday before making a decision.

5 It's too late to go shopping. The shops are open only 5.30 today. They'll be closed now.

6 I need to pay the phone bill. It has to be paid tomorrow.

7 Don't pay the bill today. Wait tomorrow.

8 a: Have you finished redecorating your house?

b: Not yet. We hope to finish the end of the week.

9 a: I'm going out now. I'll be back at about 10.30. Will you still be here? b: I don't think so. I'll probably have gone out then.

10 I'm moving into my new flat next week. I'm staying with a friend then.

11 I've got a lot of work to do. the time I finish, it will be time to go to bed.

12 If you want to take part in the competition, you have to apply 3 April.

^j. j?) Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use by or until.

1 David is away at the moment. He'll be away until Monday

2 David is away at the moment. He'll be back t>y MoncUy

3 I'm just going out. I won't be very long. Wait here

4 I'm going out to buy a few things. It's 4.30 now. I won't be long. I'll be back

5 If you want to apply for the job, your application must be received

6 Last night I watched TV

[image]

€2>

Read the situations and complete the sentences using By the time

1 I was invited to a party, but I got there much later than I intended.

By the time I got to the party , most of the other guests had left.

2 I intended to catch a train, but it took me longer than expected to get to the station.

, my train had already left.

3 I wanted to go shopping after finishing my work. But I finished much later than expected.

, it was too late to go shopping.

4 I saw two men who looked as if they were trying to steal a car. I called the police, but it was some time before they arrived.

, the two men had disappeared.

5 We climbed a mountain and it took us a very long time to get to the top. There wasn't much time to enjoy the view.

, we had to come down again.

Additional exercise 33 (page 321)

Unit

121

We use at in these expressions:

We say:

in the morning(s) in the afternoon(s) in the evening(s)

but

on Friday morning(s) on Sunday afternoon(s) on Monday evening(s)

etc.

I'll see you in the morning. O Do you work in the evenings?

I'll see you on Friday morning.

Do you work on Saturday evenings?

We do not use at/on/in before last/next/this/every: O I'll see you next Friday, (not on next Friday) They got married last March.

In spoken English we often leave out on before days (Sunday/Monday etc.). So you can say: O I'll see you on Friday, or I'll see you Friday.

C I don't work on Monday mornings, or I don't work Monday mornings.

In a few minutes / in six months etc.

3 The train will be leaving in a few minutes. (= a few minutes from now)

Andy has gone away. He'll be back in a week. (= a week from now) O They'll be here in a moment. (= a moment from now)

You can also say: in six months' time, in a week's time etc. They're getting married in six months' time, or

in six months.

We also use in ... to say how long it takes to do something:

I learnt to drive in four weeks. (= it took me four weeks to learn)

On/in time, at/in the end Unit 122 In/at/on (position) -* Units 123-125 In/at/on (other uses) -> Unit 127 American English -> Appendix 7

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Put in at, on or in.

1 Mozart was born in Salzburg 1756.

2 I've been invited to a wedding 14 February.

3 Electricity prices are going up October.

4 weekends, we often go for long walks in the country.

5 I haven't seen Kate for a few days. I last saw her Tuesday.

6 Jonathan is 63. He'll be retiring from his job two years' time.

7 I'm busy right now, but I'll be with you a moment.

8 My brother is an engineer, but he doesn't have a job the moment.

9 There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve.

10 I don't like driving night.

11 My car is being repaired at the garage. It will be ready two hours.

12 My phone and the doorbell rang the same time.

13 Mary and David always go out for dinner their wedding anniversary.

14 It was a short book and easy to read. I read it a day.

15 Saturday night I went to bed midnight.

16 We travelled overnight and arrived 5 o'clock the morning.

17 The course begins 7 January and ends sometime April.

18 I might not be at home Tuesday morning, but I'll be there the afternoon.

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use at, on or in + the following

about 20 minutes 21 July 1969 the Middle Ages

the evening the moment Saturdays

1 4 92

the 1920s 11 seconds

the same time night

1 Columbus made his first voyage from Europe to America £. 149.2.

2 If the sky is clear, you can see the stars

3 After working hard during the day, I like to relax

4 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the moon

5 It's difficult to listen if everyone is speaking

6 Jazz became popular in the United States

7 I'm just going out to the shop. I'll be back

8 'Can I speak to Dan?' 'I'm afraid he's busy

9 Many of Europe's great cathedrals were built

10 Ben is a very fast runner. He can run 100 metres

11 Liz works from Monday to Friday. Sometimes she also works

[image]

Which is correct: a, b, or both of them?

1 a I'll see you on Friday. b

2 a I'll see you on next Friday. b

3 a Paul got married in April. b

4 a They never go out on Sunday b

evenings.

5 a We often have a short holiday on b

Christmas.

6 a What are you doing the weekend? b

7 a Will you be here on Tuesday? b

8 a We were ill at the same time. b

9 a Sue got married at 18 May 2008. b 10 a He left school last June. b

I'll see you Friday.

I'll see you next Friday.

Paul got married April.

They never go out Sunday

evenings.

We often have a short holiday at Christmas.

What are you doing at the weekend?

Will you be here Tuesday? We were ill in the same time. Sue got married on 18 May 2008. He left school in last June.

both b

Additional exercise 33 (page 321)

On time and in time At the end and in the end

On time and in time

On time = punctual, not late. If something happens on time, it happens at the time that was planned:

The 11.45 train left on time. (= it left at 11.45)

Til meet you at 7.30.' 'OK, but please be on time.' (= don't be late, be there at 7.30) The conference was well-organised. Everything began and finished on time.

The opposite of on time is late: O Be on time. Don't be late.

In time (for something / to do something) = soon enough:

Will you be home in time for dinner? (= soon enough for dinner) I've sent Tracey a birthday present. I hope it arrives in time (for her birthday). (= on or before her birthday) O I'm in a hurry. I want to get home in time to see the game on TV. (= soon enough to see the game)

The opposite of in time is too late:

O I got home too late to see the game on TV.

You can say just in time (= almost too late):

We got to the station just in time for our train.

A child ran into the road in front of the car - I managed to stop just in time.

At the end and in the end

At the end (of something) = at the time when something ends. For example:

at the end of the month at the end of January at the end of the game

at the end of the film at the end of the course at the end of the concert

I'm going away at the end of January / at the end of the month. C At the end of the concert, everyone applauded. D The players shook hands at the end of the game.

We do not say 'in the end of...'. So you cannot say 'in the end of January' or 'in the end of the concert'.

The opposite of at the end (of ...) is at the beginning (of ...):

G I'm going away at the beginning of January, (not in the beginning)

In the end = finally.

We use in the end when we say what the final result of a situation was:

We had a lot of problems with our car. We sold it in the end. (= finally we sold it) O He got more and more angry. In the end he just walked out of the room.

Alan couldn't decide where to go for his holidays. He didn't go anywhere in the end. (not at the end)

The opposite of in the end is usually at first:

O At first we didn't get on very well, but in the end we became good friends.

J

V

Exercises

Unit

122

[image]

Complete the sentences with on time or in time.

1 The bus was late this morning, but it's usually on time

2 The film was supposed to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin

3 I like to get up to have a big breakfast before going to work.

4 We want to start the meeting , so please don't be late.

5 I've just washed this shirt. I want to wear it this evening, so I hope it will be dry

[image]

[image]

6 The train service isn't very good. The trains are rarely

7 I nearly missed my flight this morning. I got to the airport just

8 I almost forgot that it was Joe's birthday. Fortunately I remembered

9 Why are you never ? You always keep everybody waiting.

Read the situations and make sentences using just in time.

1 A child ran into the road in front of your car. You saw the child at the last moment, (manage / stop) I managed to stop just in time.

2 You were walking home. Just after you got home, it started to rain very heavily, (get / home) I

3 Tim was going to sit on the chair you had just painted. You said, 'Don't sit on that chair!', so he didn't, (stop / him) I

4 You and a friend went to the cinema. You were late, and you thought you would miss the beginning of the film. But the film began just as you sat down in the cinema.

(get / cinema / beginning / film)

We

Complete the sentences using at the end + the following: the course the game the interview the month

1 The players shook hands the end of the game

2 I usually get paid

3 The students had a party

4 Two of the runners collapsed

5 To my surprise, I was offered the job

the race

Write sentences with In the end. Use the verb in brackets.

1 We had a lot of problems with our car. (sell) In the end, we sold it.

2 Anna got more and more fed up with her job. (resign)

3 I tried to learn German, but I found it too difficult, (give up)

4 We couldn't decide whether to go to the party or not. (not / go)

[image]

the end.

Put in at or in.

1 I'm going away at the end of the month.

2 It took me a long time to find a job. In the end I got a job in a hotel.

3 Are you going away the beginning of August or the end?

4 I couldn't decide what to buy Laura for her birthday. I didn't buy her anything

5 We waited ages for a taxi. We gave up the end and walked home.

6 I'll be moving to a new address the end of September.

7 We had a few problems at first, but in the end everything was OK.

8 I'm going away the end of this week.

9 a: I didn't know what to do.

b: Yes, you were in a difficult position. What did you do the end?

Unit

123 In/at/on (position) 1

In

[image]

At

in a room in a building in a box

[image]

a garden

a town/country

the city centre

[image]

in a pool in the sea in a river

O There's no-one in the room / in the building / in the garden. □ What have you got in your hand / in your mouth? O When we were in Italy, we spent a few days in Venice. O I have a friend who lives in a small village in the mountains.

There were some people swimming in the pool / in the sea / in the river.

[image]

at the bus stop

\\

rH

at the door

[image]

[image]

at the roundabout

at reception

□ Who is that man standing at the bus stop / at the door / at the window?

Turn left at the traffic lights / at the church / at the roundabout / at the junction.

O We have to get off the bus at the next stop.

When you leave the hotel, please leave your key at reception. (= at the reception desk)

On

on the wa

[image]

on the ceiling

on the door on the floor

on the table

on her nose

[image]

I sat on the floor / on the ground / on the grass / on the beach / on a chair.
There's a dirty mark on the wall / on the ceiling / on your nose / on your shirt. O Have you seen the notice on the notice board / on the door?

You'll find details of TV programmes on page seven (of the newspaper). D

The hotel is on a small island in the middle of a lake.

Compare in and at:

O There were a lot of people in the shop. It was very crowded.

Go along this road, then turn left at the shop. C I'll meet you in the hotel lobby.

I'll meet you at the entrance to the hotel.

Compare in and on:

There is some water in the bottle. There is a label on the bottle.

on the bottle

[image]

in the bottle

Compare at and on:

There is somebody at the door. Shall I go and see who it is? There is a notice on the door. It says 'Do not disturb'.

In/at/on (position) 2-3 -¥ Units 124-125

Exercises

[image]

Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

0 m

[image]

[image]

Where's the label? On the ...bottle, Where's the fly? Where is the car waiting? a Where's the notice? b Where's the key?

5 Where are the shelves?

6 Where's the Eiffel Tower?

7 a Where's the man standing? b Where's the bird?

8 Where are the children playing?

Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following: the window your coffee the mountains that tree

my guitar

the river

the island

the next petrol station

1 Look at those people swimming in the river

2 One of the strings is broken.

3 There's something wrong with the car. We'd better stop

4 Would you like sugar ?

5 The leaves are a beautiful colour.

6 Last year we had a wonderful skiing holiday

7 There's nobody living . It's uninhabited.

8 He spends most of the day sitting and looking outside.

Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1 There was a long queue of people at the bus stop.

2 Nicola was wearing a silver ring on her little finger.

3 There was an accident at the crossroads this morning.

4 I wasn't sure whether! had come to the right office. There was no name the door.

5 There are some beautiful trees the park.

6 You'll find the sports results the back page of the newspaper.

7 I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting a computer.

8 My brother lives a small village the south-west of England.

9 The man the police are looking for has a scar his right cheek.

10 The headquarters of the company are Milan.

11 I like that picture hanging the wall the kitchen.

12 If you come here by bus, get off the stop after the traffic lights.

-> Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

We say that somebody/something is:

in a line / in a row / in a queue in bed

in the sky / in the world in the country / in the countryside

in an office / in a department in a picture / in a photo / in a photograph

in a book / in a paper (= newspaper) / in a magazine / in a letter

When I go to the cinema, I like to sit in the front row. 3 James isn't up yet. He's still in bed. O It was a lovely day. There wasn't a cloud in the sky.

I've just started working in the sales department.

Who is the woman in that photo?

Have you seen this picture in today's paper?

[image]

in a row

on the left / on the right on the left-hand side / on the right-hand side on the ground floor / on the first floor / on the second floor etc. on a map / on a menu / on a list on a farm

In Britain we drive on the left, or ... on the left-hand side. Our apartment is on the second floor of the building. Here's a shopping list. Don't buy anything that's not on the list. Have you ever worked on a farm?

We say that a place is on a river / on a road / on the coast: Budapest is on the (river) Danube. The town where you live - is it on the coast or inland?

Also on the way:

We stopped to buy some things in a shop on the way home.

[image]

BUDAPEST

DANUBE

at the top (of) / at the bottom (of) / at the end (of) Write your name at the top of the page. Jane's house is at the other end of the street.

at the top (of the page)

at the bottom (of the page)—

[image]

in the front / in the back of a car

I was sitting in the back (of the car) when we crashed.

at the front / at the back of a building / theatre / group of people etc. O The garden is at the back of the house. O Let's sit at the front (of the cinema). O We were at the back, so we couldn't see very well.

on the front / on the back of a letter / piece of paper etc. O I wrote the date on the back of the photo.

at the back

[image]

at the front

in the corner of a room

O The TV is in the corner of the room.

at the corner or on the corner of a street

There is a small shop at/on the corner of the street.

[image]

in the corner at/on the corner

In the world H> Unit 108D In/at/on (position) Units 123,125 American English -> Appendix 7

Exercises

^ Q| Answer the questions about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

[image]

(sales department) (second floor)

[image]

(back / car)

(front)

[image]

[image]

(top / stairs)

[image]

(farm)

■ 4

1 Where does Sue work? In the sales department.

2 Sue lives in this building. Where's her flat exactly?

3 Where is the woman standing?

4 Where is the man standing?

5 Where's the cat?

6 Where's the dog?

7 Liz is in this group of people. Where is she?

8 Where's the post office?

9 Gary is at the cinema. Where is he sitting? 10 Where does Kate work?

^£ ^ Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

the west coast the front row

the world the right

the back of the class the back of this card

the sky

the way to work

1 It was a lovely day. There wasn't a cloud sky

2 In most countries people drive

3 What is the tallest building ?

4 I usually buy a newspaper in the morning.

5 San Francisco is of the United States.

6 We went to the theatre last night. We had seats

7 I couldn't hear the teacher. She spoke quietly and I was sitting

8 I don't have your address. Could you write it ?

|J » Complete the sentences with in, at or on.

1 Write your name ...<& the top of the page.

2 Is your sister this photograph? I don't recognise her.

3 I didn't feel very well when I woke up, so I stayed bed.

4 We normally use the front entrance to the building, but there's another one the back.

5 Is there anything interesting the paper today?

6 There was a list of names, but my name wasn't the list.

7 the end of the street, there is a path leading to the river.

8 I love to look up at the stars the sky at night.

9 When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit the front.

10 I live in a very small village. You probably won't find it your map.

11 Joe works the furniture department of a large store.

12 Paris is the river Seine.

13 I don't like cities. I'd much prefer to live the country.

14 My office is the top floor. It's the left as you come out of the lift.

-+ Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

Unit

125| In/at/on (position) 3

[image]

[image]

In hospital / at work etc.

We say that somebody is in hospital / in prison / in jail: C Anna's mother is in hospital.

We say that somebody is at work / at school / at university / at college. O I'll be at work until 5.30.

Julia is studying chemistry at university.

We say that somebody is at home or is home (with or without at), but we say do something at home (with at):

I'll be at home all evening, or I'll be home all evening. O Shall we go to a restaurant or eat at home?

At a party / at a concert etc.

We say that somebody is at an event (at a party / at a conference etc.):

Were there many people at the party / at the meeting / at the wedding? I saw Steve at a conference / at a concert on Saturday.

In and at for buildings

You can often use in or at with buildings. For example, you can eat in a restaurant or at a restaurant; you can buy something in a supermarket or at a supermarket. We usually say at when we say where an event takes place (for example: a concert, a film, a party, a meeting):

We went to a concert at the National Concert Hall.

The meeting took place at the company's head office in Frankfurt. O There was a robbery at the supermarket.

We say at the station / at the airport:

O There's no need to meet me at the station. I can get a taxi.

We say at somebody's house:

O I was at Helen's house last night, or I was at Helen's last night. Also at the doctor's / at the hairdresser's etc.

We use in when we are thinking about the building itself. Compare: O We had dinner at the hotel.

All the rooms in the hotel have air conditioning, (not at the hotel) O I was at Helen's (house) last night.

It's always cold in Helen's house. The heating doesn't work well, (not at Helen's house)

In and at for towns etc.

We normally use in with cities, towns and villages:

O The Louvre is a famous art museum in Paris, (not at Paris)

Sam's parents live in a village in the south of France, (not at a village)

We use at when we think of the place as a point or station on a journey: O Does this train stop at Oxford? (= at Oxford station)

On a bus / in a car etc.

We usually say on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship but in a car / in a taxi:

The bus was very full. There were too many people on it. Laura arrived in a taxi. We say on a bike (= bicycle) / on a motorbike / on a horse: Jane passed me on her bike.

At school / in hospital etc. ~¥ Unit 74 In/at/on (position) -4 Units 123-24 To/at/in/into -» Unit 126 By car / by bike etc. -» Unit 128B

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences about the pictures. Use in, at or on with the words below the pictures.

ffi

1 .Airport car h»rF]

[image]

[image]

[image]

(the airport)

[image]

W

JUDY

(the hairdresser's)

(his bike)

(New York)

[image]

(the Savoy Theatre)

1 You can hire a car tf-t airport 5 Judy is

2 Dave is 6 I saw Gary

3 Karen is 7 We spent a few days

4 Martin is 8 We went to a show

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use in, at or on + the following:

af 3vi fU/N f4-4-j/-vy\

La AI LI IC 3 III CfwI I

prison the airport

the plane Tokyo

hospital school

the cinema

the sports centre

[image]

1 My train arrives at 11.30. Can you meet me at tVie station ?

2 We walked to the restaurant, but we went home

3 I'd like to see a film. What's on this week?

4 Some people are for crimes that they did not commit.

5 'What does your sister do? Does she have a job?' 'No, she's still

6 I play basketball on Friday evenings.

7 A friend of mine was injured in an accident a few days ago. She's still

8 Our flight was delayed. We had to wait for four hours.

9 I enjoyed the flight, but the food wasn't very nice. 10 Vicky has gone to Japan. She's living

Complete these sentences with in, at or on.

1 We went to a concert \$i the National Concert Hall.

2 It was a very slow train. It stopped every station.

- 3 My parents live a small village about 50 miles from London.
- 4 I haven't seen Kate for some time. I last saw her David's wedding.
- 5 We stayed a very comfortable hotel when we were Amsterdam.
- 6 There were about fifty rooms the hotel.
- 7 I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it the bus.
- 8 'Where were you on Monday evening?' 'I was a friend's house.'
- 9 There must be somebody the house. The lights are on.
- 10 The exhibition the Museum of Modern Art finishes on Saturday.
- 11 Shall we travel your car or mine?
- 12 I didn't expect you to be home. I thought you'd be work.
- 13 'Did you like the movie?' 'Yes, but it was too hot the cinema.'
- 14 Paul lives Birmingham. He's a student Birmingham University.

¥ Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

To/at/in/into

[image]

We say go/come/travel (etc.) to a place or event. For example:

go to China go to bed

go back to Italy go to the bank

return to London go to a concert

welcome somebody to a place

come to my house be taken to hospital be sent to prison drive to the airport

TO

When are your friends going back to Italy? (not going back in Italy) Three people were injured in the accident and taken to hospital. Welcome to our country! (not Welcome in)

In the same way we say 'a journey to / a trip to / a visit to / on my way to etc. Did you enjoy your trip to Paris / your visit to the zoo?

Compare to (for movement) and in/at (for position):

They are going to France, but They live in France. Can you come to the party? but I'll see you at the party.

We say been to a place or an event:

I've been to Italy four times, but I've never been to Rome. Amanda has never been to a football match in her life.

Get and arrive

We say get to a place:

What time did they get to London / to work / to the hotel?

But we say arrive in ... or arrive at... (not arrive to). We say arrive in a town, city or country:

C They arrived in London / in Spain a week ago.

For other places (buildings etc.) or events, we say arrive at:

O When did they arrive at the hotel / at the airport / at the party?

Home

We say go home / come home / get home / arrive home / on the way home etc. (no preposition). We do not say 'to home':

. I'm tired. Let's go home now. (not go to home) I met Lisa on my way home, (not my way to home)

Into

Go into, get into ... etc. = enter (a room / a building / a car etc.): O I opened

the door, went into the room and sat down. A bird flew into the kitchen through the window. Every month, my salary is paid directly into my bank account.

With some verbs (especially go/get/put) we often use in (instead of into):
She got in the car and drove away, (or She got into the car...) D I read the letter and put it back in the envelope.

The opposite of into is out of:

She got out of the car and went into a shop.

We usually say 'get on/off a bus / a train / a plane' (not usually into/out of):
She got on the bus and I never saw her again.

INTO

252

Been to -* Units 7-8 In/at/on (position) -Units 123-125 At home -> Unit 125A Into and in Unit 138A

Exercises

Put in to/at/in/into where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 Three people were taken to hospital after the accident.

2 I met Kate on my way ~ home, (no preposition)

3 We left our luggage the station and went to find something to eat.

4 Shall we take a taxi the station or shall we walk?

5 I have to go the bank today. What time does it open?

6 The Amazon flows the Atlantic Ocean.

7 'Do you have your camera with you?' 'No, I left it the car.'

8 Have you ever been China?

9 I had lost my key, but I managed to climb the house through a window.

10 We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way the airport.

11 We had lunch the airport while we were waiting for our plane.

12 Welcome the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.

13 We drove along the main road for about a kilometre and then turned a narrow side street.

14 Did you enjoy your visit the museum?

15 I'm tired. As soon as I get home, I'm going bed.

16 Marcel is French. He has just returned France after two years Brazil.

17 Carl was born Chicago, but his family moved New York when he was three. He still lives New York.

Have you been to these places? If so, how many times? Choose three of the places and write a sentence using been to.

Athens Australia Hong Kong Mexico Paris Rome Singapore Sweden
Tokyo the United States

1 (exampleanswers) [Ve never been to AustmUa. / fve been to Mexico once.

2

3

4

Put in to/at/in where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 What time does this train get to London?

2 We arrived Barcelona a few days ago.

3 What time did you get home last night?

4 What time do you usually arrive work in the morning?

5 When we got the cinema, there was a long queue outside.

6 I arrived home feeling very tired.

J Write sentences using got + into / out of / on / off.

1 You were walking home. A friend passed you in her car. She saw you, stopped and offered you a lift. She opened the door. What did you do? I got Into the car.

2 You were waiting for the bus. At last your bus came. The doors opened. What did you do then?

I the bus.

3 You drove home in your car. You stopped outside your house and parked the car. What did you do then?

4 You were travelling by train to Manchester. When the train got to Manchester, what did you do?

5 You needed a taxi. After a few minutes a taxi stopped for you. You opened the door. What did you do then?

6 You were travelling by air. At the end of your flight, your plane landed at the airport and stopped. The doors were opened, you took your bag and stood up. What did you do then?

[image]

[image]

[image]

-> Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

Unit

127 In/on/at (other uses)

In

in the rain / in the sun / in the shade / in the dark / in bad weather etc.

O We sat in the shade. It was too hot to sit in the sun. Don't go out in the rain. Wait until it stops.

(write) in ink / in pen / in pencil

When you do the exam, you're not allowed to write in pencil. Also (write) in words / in figures / in capital letters etc.

Please write your name in capital letters.

Write the story in your own words. (= don't copy somebody else)

(be/fall) in love (with somebody)

They're very happy together. They're in love.

in (my) opinion

In my opinion, the movie wasn't very good.

On

on TV / on television / on the radio

I didn't watch the news on television, but I heard it on the radio.

on the phone

I've never met her, but I've spoken to her on the phone a few times.

(be/go) on strike

O There are no trains today. The drivers are on strike.

(be/go) on a diet

O I've put on a lot of weight. I'll have to go on a diet.

(be) on fire

Look! That car is on fire.

on the whole (= in general)

Sometimes I have problems at work, but on the whole I enjoy my job.

on purpose (= intentionally)

I'm sorry. I didn't mean to annoy you. I didn't do it on purpose.

[image]

the shade

On holiday / on a trip etc.

We say: (be/go) on holiday / on business / on a trip / on a tour / on a cruise etc. C I'm going on holiday next week. O Emma's away on business at the moment. One day I'd like to go on a world tour.

You can also say 'go to a place for a holiday / for my holiday(s)': Steve has gone to France for a holiday.

At the age of ... etc.

We say at the age of 16 / at 120 miles an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:

Tracy left school at 16. or ... at the age of 16.

The train was travelling at 120 miles an hour.

Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

We are now flying at a speed of 800 kilometres an hour and at an altitude of 9,000 metres.

[image]

In/at/on (time) Unit 121 In/at/on (position) Units 123-125

Exercises

^ p| Complete the sentences using in + the following:

capital letters cold weather love my opinion

pencil the rain the shade

1 Don't go outM,Ai roan Wait until it stops.

2 Matt likes to keep warm, so he doesn't go out much

3 If you write and make a mistake, you can rub it out and correct it.

4 They fell almost immediately and were married in a few weeks.

5 Please write your address clearly, preferably

6 It's too hot in the sun. I'm going to sit

7 Amanda thought the restaurant was OK, but it wasn't very good.

^ Complete the sentences using on + the following:

[image]

business a diet -fee- holiday the phone

purpose strike TV a tour the whole

1 Look! That car is on fire I Somebody call the fire brigade.

2 Workers at the factory have gone for better pay and conditions.

3 Soon after we arrived, we were taken of the city.

4 I feel lazy this evening. Is there anything worth watching ?

5 I'm sorry. It was an accident. I didn't do it

6 Richard has put on a lot of weight recently. I think he should go

7 Jane's job involves a lot of travelling. She often has to go away

8 a: I'm going next week.

b: Where are you going? Somewhere nice?

9 a: Is Sarah here?

b: Yes, but she's at the moment. She won't be long.

10 a: How was your exam?

b: Well, there were some difficult questions, but it was OK.

i^J ^| Complete the sentences with in, on or at.

1 Water boils M 100 degrees Celsius.

2 When I was 14, I went on a trip to France organised by my school.

3 There was panic when people realised that the building was on fire.

4 Julia's grandmother died recently at the age of 79.

5 Can you turn the light on, please? I don't want to sit in the dark.

6 We didn't go on holiday last year. We stayed at home.

7 I hate driving in fog. You can't see anything.

8 I won't be here next week. I'll be on holiday.

9 Technology has developed at great speed.

10 Alan got married at 17, which is rather young to get married.

11 I heard an interesting programme on the radio this morning.

12 In my opinion, violent films should not be shown on television.

13 I wouldn't like to go on a cruise. I think I'd get bored.

14 I shouldn't eat too much. I'm supposed to be on a diet.

15 I wouldn't like his job. He spends most of his time talking on the phone.

16 The earth travels round the sun 107,000 kilometres an hour.

17 'Did you enjoy your holiday?' 'Not every minute, but the whole, yes.'

18 A lot of houses were damaged by the storm last week.

-> Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

We use by in many expressions to say how we do something. For example, you can: send something by post contact somebody by phone / by email do something by hand pay by credit card / by cheque

C Can I pay by credit card? O You can contact me by phone or by email. But we say pay cash or pay in cash (not usually by cash).

We also say that something happens by mistake / by accident / by chance:

O We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by chance. But we say 'do something on purpose' (=you mean to do it):

O I didn't do it on purpose. It was an accident.

Note that we say by chance, by credit card etc. (not by the chance / by a credit card). In these expressions we use by + noun without the or a.

In the same way we use by ... to say how somebody travels:

by car / by train / by plane / by boat / by ship / by bus / by bike etc. by road / by rail / by air / by sea Jess usually goes to work by bus. But we say on foot:

Did you come here by car or on foot?

You cannot use by if you say my car / the train / a taxi etc. We say: by car but in my car (not by my car) by train but on the train (not by the train)

We use in for cars and taxis:

D They didn't come in their car. They came in a taxi. We use on for bikes and public transport (buses, trains etc.):

O We travelled on the 6.45 train.

We say that 'something is done by somebody/something' (passive): O Have you ever been bitten by a dog? O The programme was watched by millions of people. Compare by and with:

The door must have been opened with a key. (not by a key) (= somebody

used a key to open it)

The door must have been opened by somebody with a key.

We say 'a play by Shakespeare' / 'a painting by Rembrandt' / 'a novel by Tolstoy' etc. C Have you read anything by Ernest Hemingway?

By also means 'next to / beside':

O Come and sit by me. (= next to me) 'Where's the light switch?' 'By the door.'

SWITCH

[image]

Note the following use of by:

Clare's salary has just gone up from £2,500 a month to £2,750. So it has increased by £250 / by ten per cent. Carl and Mike had a race over 200 metres. Carl won by about three metres.

new salary

£2,750 increased by £250 old salary £2,500

Passive + by Unit 42B By + -ing Unit 60B By myself -* Unit 83D By (time)Unit 120

Exercises

[image]

Complete the sentences using by + the following: canal chance credit card hand mistake

1 We hadn't arranged to meet. We met by cViajo.ce

2 I didn't intend to take your umbrella. I took it

3 Don't put the sweater in the washing machine. It has to be washed

4 I don't need cash. I can pay the bill

5 The town is not on the coast, but is connected to the sea

[image]

[image]

Put in by, in or on.

1 Jess usually goes to work by bus.

2 I saw Jane this morning. She was the bus.

3 How did you get here? Did you come train?

4 I decided not to go car. I went my bike instead.

5 I didn't feel like walking home, so I came home a taxi.

6 Sorry we're late. We missed the bus, so we had to come foot.

7 How long does it take to cross the Atlantic ship?

All these sentences have a mistake. Correct them.

1 Did you come here by Kate's car or yours? in Kate's car

2 I don't like travelling on bus.

3 These photographs were taken by a very good camera.

4 I know this music is from Beethoven, but I can't

remember what it's called.

5 I couldn't pay by cash - I didn't have any money on me.

6 We lost the game because of a mistake of one of our players.

Write three sentences like the examples. Write about a song, a painting, a film, a book etc.

1 War and Peace us a book by Tolstoy.

2 Romeo and. Juliet us a play by Shakespeare.

Put in by, in, on or with.

1 Have you ever been bitten by a dog?

2 The plane was badly damaged lightning.

3 We managed to put the fire out a fire extinguisher.

4 Who is that man standing the window?

5 These photographs were taken a friend of mine.

6 I don't mind going car, but I don't want to go your car.

7 There was a small table the bed a lamp and a clock it.

Complete the sentences using by.

1 Clare's salary was £2,500 a month. Now it is £2,750. Her salary Has increased by j(z50.

2 My daily newspaper used to cost 80 pence. From today it costs 90. The price has gone up

3 There was an election. Helen won. She got 25 votes and James got 23. Helen won

4 I went to Kate's house to see her, but she had gone out five minutes before I arrived.

I missed

Additional exercise 34 (page 322)

Noun + preposition (reason for, cause of etc.)

Noun + for ...

a demand / a need FOR ...

The company closed down because there wasn't enough demand for its

product. O There's no excuse for behaviour like that. There's no need for it.
a reason FOR ...

The train was late, but nobody knew the reason for the delay, (not reason of)

[image]

Noun + of ...

an advantage / a disadvantage OF ...

The advantage of living alone is that you can do what you like.

but

there is an advantage in (or to) doing something

There are many advantages in living alone, or ... many advantages to living alone.

a cause OF ...

The cause of the explosion is unknown.

a picture / a photo / a photograph / a map / a plan / a drawing (etc.) OF ... O Rachel showed me some pictures of her family. D I had a map of the town, so I was able to find my way around.

Noun+ in ...

an increase / a decrease / a rise / a fall IN (prices etc.)

There has been an increase in the number of road accidents recently. Last year was a bad one for the company. There was a big fall in sales.

Noun + to ... damage TO ...

The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage to the other car.

an invitation TO ... (a party / a wedding etc.) Did you get an invitation to the party?

a solution TO (a problem) / a key TO (a door) / an answer TO (a question) /
a reply TO (a letter) / a reaction TO ...

I hope we find a solution to the problem, (not a solution of the problem) C I
was surprised at her reaction to my suggestion.

an attitude TO ... or an attitude TOWARDS ...

His attitude to his job is very negative, or His attitude towards his job ...

.Mf.UJ.IIU.kIUU

—J

258

Noun + with ... / between ...

a relationship / a connection / contact WITH ...

O Do you have a good relationship with your parents?

D The police want to question a man in connection with the robbery.

but

a relationship / a connection / contact / a difference BETWEEN two things
or people The police believe that there is no connection between the two
crimes. There are some differences between British and American English.

—

Exercises

Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1 What caused the explosion? What was the cause ..of toe explosion

2 We're trying to solve the problem. We're trying to find a solution

3 Sue gets on well with her brother. Sue has a good relationship

4 The cost of living has gone up a lot. There has been a big increase

5 I don't know how to answer your question. I can't think of an answer

6 I don't think that a new road is necessary. I don't think there is any need

7 I think that working at home has many advantages. I think that there are many advantages

8 The number of people without jobs fell last month. Last month there was a fall

9 Nobody wants to buy shoes like these any more. There is no demand

10 In what way is your job different from mine? What is the difference

Complete the sentences using these nouns + a preposition:

cause connection contact damage invitation

key map photographs reason reply

1 On the wall there were some pictures and a map of the world.

2 Thank you for the party next week.

3 Since she left home two years ago, Sophie has had little of her family.

4 I can't open this door. Do you have another door?

5 The fire at the hotel last week is still unknown.

6 Did you get the email you sent to the company?

7 The two companies are completely independent. There is no connection between them.

8 Jane showed me some old photographs of the city as it looked 100 years ago.

9 Carol has decided to give up her job. I don't know her doing this.

10 It wasn't a bad accident. The car wasn't serious.

Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1 There are some differences between British and American English.

2 Money isn't the solution every problem.

3 There has been an increase the amount of traffic using this road.

4 The advantage having a car is that you don't have to rely on public transport.

5 There are many advantages being able to speak a foreign language.

6 Everything can be explained. There's a reason everything.

7 When Paul left home, his attitude his parents seemed to change.

8 Ben and I used to be good friends, but I don't have much contact him now.

9 There has been a sharp rise property prices in the past few years.

10 What was Sarah's reaction the news?

11 If I give you the camera, can you take a picture me?

12 The company has rejected the workers'demands arise pay.

13 What was the answer question 3 in the test?

14 The fact that Jane was offered a job has no connection the fact that she is a friend of the managing director.

?

[image]

[image]

[image]

-> Additional exercise 35 (page 322)

Unit

130 Adjective + preposition 1

[image]

[image]

260

It was nice of you to ...

nice / kind / good / generous / polite / stupid / silly etc. OF somebody (to do something) Thank you. It was very kind of you to help me. It is stupid of me to go out without a coat in such cold weather.

but

(be) nice / kind / good / generous / polite / rude / friendly / cruel etc. TO somebody O They have always been very nice to me. (not with me) Why were you so unfriendly to Lucy?

I

Adjective + about / with

angry / annoyed / furious / upset

ABOUT something

WITH somebody FOR doing something There's no point in getting angry about things that don't matter. Are you annoyed with me for being late? Lisa is upset about not being invited to the party.

excited / worried / nervous / happy etc. ABOUT a situation Are you nervous about the exam?

pleased / satisfied / happy / delighted / disappointed WITH something you receive, or the result of something

They were delighted with the present I gave them.

Were you happy with your exam results?

Adjective + at / by / with / of

surprised / shocked / amazed / astonished / upset AT or BY something

Everybody was surprised at (or by) the news. O I hope you weren't shocked by (or at) what I said.

impressed WITH or BY somebody/something

D I'm very impressed with (or by) her English. It's very good.

fed up / bored WITH something

I don't enjoy my job any more. I'm fed up with it. / I'm bored with it.

tired / sick OF something

Come on, let's go! I'm tired of waiting. / I'm sick of waiting.

Sorry about / for

sorry ABOUT a situation or something that happened L I'm sorry about the mess. I'll clear it up later.

Sorry about last night. (= Sorry about something that happened last night)

sorry FOR or ABOUT something you did

C Alex is very sorry for what he said, (or sorry about what he said) I'm sorry for shouting at you yesterday, (or sorry about shouting) You can also say 'I'm sorry I (did something)':

J I'm sorry I shouted at you yesterday.

feel / be sorry FOR somebody who is in a bad situation

I feel sorry for Matt. He's had a lot of bad luck, (not I feel sorry about Matt)

1

C Preposition + -ing -* Unit 60 Adjective + to ... Unit 65 ^Adjective + preposition 2 -> Unit 131

Sorry to ... / sorry for

Unit 66C

Exercises

^£ Complete the sentences using nice of ... , kind of ... etc.

3\

1 2 3 4 5

I went out in the cold without a coat.

Tom offered to drive me to the airport.

I needed money and Sue gave me some.

They didn't invite us to their party.

Can I help you with your luggage?

Kevin never says 'thank you'.

They've had an argument and now they refuse to speak to each other.

(silly) That was silly of you.

A.

(nice)

That was him. (generous)

That

(not very nice)

That wasn't

(very kind)

(not very polite)

(a bit childish)

^ JjJ Complete the sentences using these adjectives + a preposition:

amazed angry bored careless excited impressed kind nervous

1 Are you ... nervous about the exam?

2 Thank you for all you've done. You've been very me.

3 What have I done wrong? Why are you me?

4 You must be very your trip next week. It sounds really great.

5 I wasn't the service in the restaurant. We had to wait ages before our food arrived.

6 Ben isn't very happy at college. He says he's the course he's doing.

7 I'd never seen so many people before. I was the crowds.

8 It was you to leave the door unlocked when you went out.

ijP^J) Put in the correct preposition.

1 They were delighted the present I gave them.

2 It was nice you to come and see me when I was ill.

3 Why are you so rude people? Why can't you be more polite?

4 We always have the same food every day. I'm fed up it.

5 We enjoyed our holiday, but we were a bit disappointed the hotel.

6 I can't understand people who are cruel animals.

7 I was surprised the way he behaved. It was completely out of character.

8 I've been trying to learn Spanish, but I'm not very satisfied my progress.

9 Tanya doesn't look very well. I'm worried her.

10 They told me they were sorry the situation, but there was nothing they could do.

11 I wouldn't like to be in her position. I feel sorry her.

12 Are you still upset what I said to you yesterday?

13 Some people say Kate is unfriendly, but she's always been very nice me.

14 I'm tired doing the same thing every day. I need a change.

15 The man we interviewed for the job was intelligent and we were impressed the way he answered our questions.

16 I'm sorry the smell of paint in this room. I've just finished redecorating it.

17 I was shocked what I saw. I'd never seen anything like it before.

18 Our neighbours were very angry the noise we made.

19 Our neighbours were furious us making so much noise.

20 I'm sorry what I did. I hope you're not angry me.

Additional exercise 35 (page 322)

Unit

131

Adjective + preposition 2

[image]

[image]

262

Adjective + of (1)

afraid / frightened / terrified / scared OF ...

O 'Are you afraid of spiders?' 'Yes, I'm terrified of them.'

fond / proud / ashamed / jealous / envious OF ...

Why are you always so jealous of other people?

suspicious / critical / tolerant OF ...

He didn't trust me. He was suspicious of my motives.

Adjective + of (2)

aware / conscious OF ...

'Did you know he was married?' 'No, I wasn't aware of that.'

capable / incapable OF ...

I'm sure you are capable of passing the examination.

full/short OF ...

Amy is a very active person. She's always full of energy. I'm short of money. Can you lend me some?

typical OF ...

He's late again. It's typical of him to keep everybody waiting.

certain / sure OF or ABOUT . ..

Do I think she's arriving this evening, but I'm not sure of that, or

i

J

... not sure about that.

Adjective + at / to / from / in / on / with / for

good / bad / brilliant / better / hopeless etc AT ...

I'm not very good at repairing things, (not good in repairing things)

married / engaged TO ...

Louise is married to an American, (not married with) but Louise is married with three children. (= she is married and has three children)

similar TO ...

Your writing is similar to mine.

different FROM or different TO . . .

The film was different from what I'd expected, or ... different to what I'd expected.

interested IN ...

Are you interested in art?

keen ON ...

O We stayed at home because Chris wasn't very keen on going out.

dependent ON ... (but independent OF ...)

Q I don't want to be dependent on anybody.

crowded WITH (people etc.)

The streets were crowded with tourists, (but ... full of tourists)

famous FOR ...

The Italian city of Florence is famous for its art treasures.

responsible FOR ...

Who was responsible for all that noise last night?

c

Preposition + -ing H> Unit 60 Afraid of/to ... Unit 66A Adjective +
preposition 1 -> Unit 130 American English Appendix 7

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using these adjectives + the correct preposition:
afraid capable different interested proud responsible similar -swe

[image]

1 I think she's arriving this evening, but I'm not sure of that.

2 Your camera is mine, but it isn't exactly the same.

3 Don't worry. I'll look after you. There's nothing to be

4 I never watch the news on TV. I'm not ... the news.

5 The editor is the person who is what appears in a newspaper.

6 Sarah is a keen gardener. She's very keen on her garden and loves
showing it to visitors.

7 I was surprised when I met Lisa for the first time. She was what I
expected.

8 He could become world champion one day. He's fit.

Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 There were lots of tourists in the streets. The streets were crowded with
tourists

2 There was a lot of furniture in the room. The room was full

3 I don't like sport very much. I'm not very keen

4 We don't have enough time. We're short

5 I'm not a very good tennis player. I'm not very good

6 Catherine's husband is Russian. Catherine is married

7 I don't trust Robert. I'm suspicious

8 My problem is not the same as yours. My problem is different

[image]

Put in the correct preposition.

1 Amy is always full °f energy.

2 My home town is not a very interesting place. It's not famous anything.

3 Kate is very fond her younger brother.

4 I don't like going up ladders. I'm scared heights.

5 You look bored. You don't seem interested what I'm saying.

6 'Our flight departs at 10.35.' 'Are you sure that?'

7 I'm not ashamed what I did. In fact I'm quite proud it.

8 I wanted to go out for a meal, but nobody else was keen the idea.

9 These days everybody is aware the dangers of smoking.

10 The station platform was crowded people waiting for the train.

11 Sue is much more successful than I am. Sometimes I feel a bit jealous her.

12 Do you know anyone who might be interested buying an old car?

13 We've got plenty to eat. The fridge is full food.

14 She's very honest. I don't think she is capable telling a lie.

15 Helen works hard and she's extremely good her job.

16 It's typical him to change his mind at the last minute.

17 Mark has no money of his own. He's totally dependent his parents.

18 We're short staff in our office at the moment. We need more people to do the work.

Write sentences about yourself. Are you good at these things or not? Use

the following: good pretty good not very good hopeless

1 (repairing things) I'm not very good at repairing things.

2 (telling jokes)

3 (maths)

4 (remembering names)

5 (sport)

Additional exercise 35 (page 322)

Unit

132 Verb + preposition 1 to and at

Verb + to

[image]

[image]

264

talk / speak TO somebody (with is also possible but less usual) O Who was that man you were talking to?

listen TO ...

We spent the evening listening to music, (not listening music)

apologise TO somebody (for...)

They apologised to me for what happened, (not They apologised me)

explain something TO somebody

Can you explain this word to me? (not explain me this word)

explain / describe (to somebody) what/how/why ...

□ I explained to them why I was worried, (not I explained them) Let me describe to you what I saw. (not Let me describe you)

We do not use to with these verbs:

phone / call / email / text somebody

I called the airline to cancel my flight, (not called to the airline) but write (a letter) to somebody

answer somebody/something

He refused to answer my question, (not answer to my question) but reply to an email / a letter etc.

ask somebody

Can I ask you a question? (not ask to you)

thank somebody (for something)

O He thanked me for helping him. (not He thanked to me)

Verb + at

look / stare / glance AT ... , have a look / take a look AT ... O Why are you looking at me like that?

laugh AT ...

D I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will laugh at me.

aim / point (something) AT ... , shoot/ fire (a gun) AT ... O Don't point that knife at me. It's dangerous.

We saw someone with a gun shooting at birds, but he didn't hit any.

Some verbs can be followed by at or to, with a difference in meaning. For example:

shout AT somebody (when you are angry)

He got very angry and started shouting at me.

shout TO somebody (so that they can hear you)

O He shouted to me from the other side of the street.

throw something AT somebody/something (in order to hit them) Somebody threw an egg at the minister.

throw something TO somebody (for somebody to catch)

Lisa shouted 'Catch!' and threw the keys to me from the window.

f Verb + preposition 2-5 -* Units 133-136 Ask for Unit 133B

^Apologise for / thank somebody for -> Unit 135B Other verbs + to 4 Unit 136D

Exercises

[image]

[image]

Which is correct?

1 a Can you explain this word to me? b Can you explain me this word? d

2 a I got angry with Mark. Afterwards, I apologised to him.

b I got angry with Mark. Afterwards I apologised him. Lj

3 a Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking to her LJ

b Amy won't be able to help you. There's no point in asking her. LJ

4 a I need somebody to explain me what I have to do. □ b I need somebody to explain to me what I have to do. □

5 a They didn't understand the system, so I explained it to them. n

b They didn't understand the system, so I explained it them. □

6 a I like to sit on the beach and listen to the sound of the sea LJ

b I like to sit on the beach and listen the sound of the sea.

7 a I asked them to describe me exactly what happened. □ b I asked them to describe to me exactly what happened. □

8 a We'd better phone the restaurant to reserve a table. □ b We'd better phone to the restaurant to reserve a table. O

9 a It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer to it. [Z b It was a difficult question. I couldn't answer it. D

10 a I explained everybody the reasons for my decision.

b I explained to everybody the reasons for my decision. O

11 a I thanked everybody for all the help they had given me. □

b I thanked to everybody for all the help they had given me. d

12 a My friend texted to me to let me know she was going to be late. D b My friend texted me to let me know she was going to be late. IZI

^jj Complete the sentences. Use these verbs + the correct preposition:

explain laugh listen look point reply speak throw throw

[image]

1 I look stupid with this haircut. Everybody will ta&gh (\$1 me.

2 I don't understand this. Can you explain it to me ?

3 Sue and Kevin had an argument and now they're refusing to each other.

4 Be careful with those scissors! Don't them me!

5 I'm not sure where we are. I'll have to the map.

6 Please me! I've got something important to tell you.

7 Don't stones the birds! It's cruel.

8 If you don't want that sandwich, it the birds. They'll eat it.

9 I tried to contact Tina, but she didn't my emails.

Put in to or at.

1 They apologised to me for what happened.

2 I glanced my watch to see what time it was.

3 Please don't shout me! Try to calm down.

4 I saw Sue as I was cycling along the road. I shouted her, but she didn't hear me.

5 Don't listen what he says. He doesn't know what he's talking about.

6 What's so funny? What are you laughing ?

7 Could I have a look your magazine, please?

8 I'm lonely. I need somebody to talk

9 She was so angry she threw a book the wall.

10 The woman sitting opposite me on the train kept staring me.

11 Can I speak you a moment? There's something I want to ask you.

-> Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Unit

133 Verb + preposition 2 a bout/for/of/after

Verb + about

talk / read / know ABOUT ..., tell somebody ABOUT .. O We talked about a lot of things at the meeting.

have a discussion ABOUT something, but discuss something (no preposition) We had a discussion about what we should do. We discussed a lot of things at the meeting, (not discussed about)

do something ABOUT something = do something to improve a bad

situation D If you're worried about the problem, you should do something about it.

Verb + for

ask (somebody) FOR ...

I sent an email to the company asking them for more information about the job. but 'I asked him the way to 'She asked me my name' (no preposition)

apply (TO a person, a company etc.) FOR a job etc.

O I think you'd be good at this job. Why don't you apply for it?

wait FOR ...

Don't wait for me. I'll join you later.

I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting for the rain to stop.

search (a person / a place / a bag etc.) FOR ...

Q I've searched the house for my keys, but I still can't find them.

leave (a place) FOR another place

D I haven't seen her since she left (home) for the office this morning. (not left to the office)

Care about, care for and take care of

care ABOUT somebody/something = think that somebody/something is important

He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people. We say 'care what/where/how ...' etc. (without about):

You can do what you like. I don't care what you do.

care FOR somebody/something

(1) = like something (usually negative sentences)

O I don't care for very hot weather. (= I don't like ...)

(2) = look after somebody

O Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to care for him.

take care OF ... = look after, keep safe, take responsibility for Don't worry about me. I can take care of myself. I'll take care of the travel arrangements. You don't need to do anything.

Look for and look after

look FOR ... = search for, try to find

O I've lost my keys. Can you help me to look for them?

look AFTER ... = take care of keep safe or in good condition

Alan is 85 and lives alone. He needs somebody to look after him. (not look for) O You can borrow this book, but you must promise to look after it.

r

^Verbs + about/of (think/hear etc.) -> Unit 134 Other verbs + forUnit 135B

Exercises

^ PI Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I'm not going out yet. I'm waiting for the rain to stop.

2 Don't ask me money. I don't have any.

3 I've applied a job at the factory. I don't know if I'll get it.

4 I've applied three colleges. I hope one of them accepts me.

5 I've searched everywhere Joe, but I haven't been able to find him.

6 I don't want to talk what happened last night. Let's forget it.

7 I don't want to discuss what happened last night. Let's forget it.

8 We had an interesting discussion the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.

9 We discussed the problem, but we didn't reach a decision.

10 I sent her an email. Now I'm waiting ... her to reply.

11 Ken and Sonia are travelling in Italy. They're in Rome right now, and tomorrow they leave

Venice.

12 The roof of the house is in very bad condition. I think we ought to do something it.

13 We waited Steve for half an hour, but he never came.

14 Tomorrow morning I have to catch a plane. I'm leaving my house the airport at 7.30.

^ Jj^ Put in the correct preposition after care. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 He's very selfish. He doesn't care about other people.

2 Who's going to take care you when you are old?

3 She doesn't care the exam. She doesn't care whether she passes or fails.

4 'Do you like this coat?' 'Not really. I don't care the colour.'

5 Don't worry about the shopping. I'll take care that.

6 He gave up his job to care his elderly father.

7 I want to have a good holiday. I don't care the cost.

8 I want to have a good holiday. I don't care how much it costs.

^jj^ Complete the sentences with look for or look after. Use the correct form of look (looks/ looked/looking).

1 | looked -for my keys, but I couldn't find them anywhere.

2 Kate is a job. I hope she finds one soon.

3 Who you when you were ill?

4 I'm Liz. I need to ask her something. Have you seen her?

5 The car park was full, so we had to somewhere else to park.

6 A babysitter is somebody who other people's children.

Complete the sentences with these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition: apply ask do leave look search talk wait

1 Police are se^rctog -for the man who escaped from prison.

2 Sarah wasn't ready. We had to her.

3 I think Ben likes his job, but he doesn't it much.

4 When I'd finished my meal, I the waiter the bill.

5 Cathy is unemployed. She has several jobs, but she hasn't had any luck.

6 If something is wrong, why don't you something it?

7 Helen's car is very old, but it's in excellent condition. She it very well.

8 Diane is from Boston, but now she lives in Paris. She Boston Paris when she was 19.

[image]

Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Verb + preposition 3 about and of

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

hear ABOUT ... = be told about something

Did you hear about the fire at the hotel yesterday?

hear OF ... = know that somebody/something exists

'Who is Tom Hart?' 'I have no idea. I've never heard of him.' (not heard from him)

hear FROM ... = be in contact with somebody

O 'Have you heard from Jane recently?' 'Yes, she called me a few days ago.'

thinkABOUT ... andthinkOF ...

When you think ABOUT something, you consider it, you concentrate your mind on it: O I've thought about what you said and I've decided to take your advice. 'Will you lend me the money?' 'I'll think about it.'

When you think OF something, the idea comes to your mind:

It was my idea. I thought of it first, (not thought about it)

I felt embarrassed. I couldn't think of anything to say. (not think about anything)

We also use think of when we ask or give an opinion:

'What did you think of the movie?' 'I didn't think much of it.' (= I didn't like it much)

The difference is sometimes very small and you can use of or about: When I'm alone, I often think of (or about) you.

You can say think of or think about doing something (for possible future actions): My sister is thinking of (or about) going to Canada. (= she is considering it)

dream ABOUT ... (when you are asleep) O I dreamt about you last night.

dream OF or ABOUT being something / doing something = imagine O Do you dream of (or about) being rich and famous?

I wouldn't dream OF doing something = / would never do it

3 'Don't tell anyone what I said.' 'No, I wouldn't dream of it.' (= I would never do it)

complain (TO somebody) ABOUT ... = say that you are not satisfied

We complained to the manager of the restaurant about the food.

complain OF a pain, an illness etc. = say that you have a pain etc.

We called the doctor because George was complaining of a pain in his stomach.

remind somebody ABOUT ... = tell somebody not to forget

I'm glad you reminded me about the meeting. I'd completely forgotten about it.

remind somebody OF ... = cause somebody to remember

O This house reminds me of the one I lived in when I was a child. Look at this photograph of Richard. Who does he remind you of?

■ iiiWHliLiim i ■naiiiiiii ■■■! ii

warn somebody ABOUT a person or thing which is bad, dangerous, unusual etc.

O I knew he was a strange person. I had been warned about him. (not warned of him) Vicky warned me about the traffic. She said it would be bad.

warn somebody ABOUT or OF a danger, something bad which might happen later Scientists have warned us about (or of) the effects of climate change.

J

Remind/warn somebody to ... -* Unit 55B

Exercises

4j| £} Complete the sentences using hear or heard + a preposition (about/of/ from).

1 I've never heard of Tom Hart. Who is he?

2 'Did you the accident last night?' 'Yes, Vicky told me.'

3 Jane used to call me quite often, but I haven't her for a long time now.

4 a: Have you a writer called William Hudson? b: No, I don't think so.
What sort of writer is he?

5 Thanks for your email. It was good to you.

6 'Do you want to our holiday?' 'Not now. Tell me later'

7 I live in a small town in the north of England. You've probably never it.

^^ Complete the sentences using think about or think of. Sometimes both about and of are possible. Use the correct form of think (think/thinking/ thought).

1 You look serious. What are you thinking about ?

2 I need time to make decisions. I like to things carefully.

3 That's a good idea. Why didn't I that?

4 a: I've finished reading the book you lent me.

b: What did you it? Did you think it was good?

5 We're going out to eat this evening. Would you like to come?

6 I don't really want to go out with Tom tonight. I'll have to an excuse.

7 When I was offered the job, I didn't accept immediately. I went away and it for a while. In the end I decided to take the job.

8 I don't much this coffee. It's like water.

9 Katherine is homesick. She's always her family back home.

10 a: Do you think I should apply to do the course?

b: I can't any reason why not.

^ Jj) Put in the correct preposition.

1 Did you hear OMk the fire at the hotel yesterday?

2 'I had a strange dream last night' 'Did you? What did you dream ?'

3 Our neighbours complained us the noise we made last night.

4 Kevin was complaining pains in his chest, so he went to the doctor.

5 I love this music. It reminds me a warm day in spring.

6 He loves his job. He thinks his work all the time, he dreams it, he talks it and I'm fed up with hearing it.

7 'We've got no money. What can we do?' 'Don't worry. I'll think something.'

8 Jackie warned me the water. She said it wasn't safe to drink.

9 We warned our children the dangers of playing in the street.

{jjjj) Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition:

complain dream hear remind remind think think warn

1 It was my idea. I thought of it first.

2 Ben is never satisfied. He's always something.

3 I can't make a decision yet. I need time to your proposal.

4 Before you go into the house, I must you the dog. He's bitten people before, so be careful.

5 She's not a well-known singer. Not many people have her.

6 a: You wouldn't go away without telling me, would you?

b: Of course not. I wouldn't it.

7 I would have forgotten my appointment if Jane hadn't me it.

8 Do you see that man over there? Does he you anybody you know?

[image]

-» Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Unit

135 Verb + preposition 4 of/for/from/on

Verb + of

accuse / suspect somebody OF ... O Sue accused me of being selfish.

Some students were suspected of cheating in the exam.

approve / disapprove OF ...

His parents don't approve of what he does, but they can't stop him.

die OF or FROM an illness etc.

'What did he die of?' 'A heart attack.'

consist OF ...

O We had an enormous meal. It consisted of seven courses.

Verb + for

pay (somebody) FOR ...

I didn't have enough money to pay for the meal, (not pay the meal) but pay a bill / a fine / a fee / tax / rent / a sum of money etc. (no preposition) C I didn't have enough money to pay the rent.

thank / forgive somebody FOR ...

I'll never forgive them for what they did.

apologise (TO somebody) FOR ...

When I realised I was wrong, I apologised (to them) for my mistake.

blame somebody/something FOR ... , somebody is to blame FOR ...

Everybody blamed me for the accident.

O Everybody said that I was to blame for the accident, blame (a problem etc.) ON ...

O The accident wasn't my fault. Don't blame it on me.

Verb + from

suffer FROM an illness etc.

There's been an increase in the number of people suffering from heart disease.

protect somebody/something FROM

Sun block protects the skin from the sun.

Verb + on

depend / rely ON ...

'What time will you be home?' 'I don't know. It depends on the traffic' You can rely on Anna. She always keeps her promises. You can use depend + when/where/how etc. with or without on:

'Are you going to buy it?' 'It depends how much it is.' (or It depends on how much)

live ON money/food

O Michael's salary is very low. It isn't enough to live on.

congratulate / compliment somebody ON ...

I congratulated her on doing so well in her exams. O The meal was really good. I complimented Mark on his cooking skills.

Exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

- 1 Some students were suspected of cheating in the exam.
- 2 Are you going to apologise what you did?
- 3 The apartment consists three rooms, a kitchen and bathroom.
- 4 I was accused lying, but I was telling the truth.
- 5 We finished our meal, paid the bill, and left the restaurant.
- 6 The accident was my fault, so I had to pay the repairs.
- 7 Some people are dying hunger, while others eat too much.
- 8 I called Helen to thank her the present she sent me.
- 9 The government is popular. Most people approve what they're doing.
- 10 Do you blame the government the economic situation?
- 11 When something goes wrong, you always blame it other people.

Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

- 1 Sue said that I was selfish.

Sue accused me ... M being seLfsh

- 2 The misunderstanding was my fault, so I apologised.

I apologised

3 Jane won the tournament, so I congratulated her. I congratulated

4 He has enemies, and he has a bodyguard to protect him.

He has a bodyguard to protect

5 There are eleven players in a football team.

A football team consists

6 Sandra eats only bread and eggs. Sandra lives

7 You can't say that your problems are my fault.

You can't blame

Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition: accuse apologise approve congratulate depend live pay suffer

1 His parents don't approve o-f what he does, but they can't stop him.

2 When you went to the theatre with Paul, who the tickets?

3 It's not pleasant when you are something you didn't do.

4 We hope to go to the beach tomorrow, but it the weather.

5 Things are cheap there. You can very little money.

6 You were rude to Lisa. I think you should her.

7 Alex back pain. He spends too much time working at his desk.

8 When I saw David, I him passing his driving test.

jj Put in the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 I'll never forgive them for what they did.

2 They wore warm clothes to protect themselves the cold.

3 You know you can always rely me if you need any help.

4 Sophie doesn't have enough money to pay her college fees.

5 She's often unwell. She suffers very bad headaches.

6 I don't know whether I'll go out tonight. It depends how I feel.

7 She hasn't got a job. She depends her parents for money.

8 My usual breakfast consists fruit, cereal and coffee.

9 I complimented her her English. She spoke really well.

■* Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Verb + preposition 5 in/into/with/to/on

Verb + in

believe IN ...

O Do you believe in God? (= Do you believe that God exists?) □ I believe in saying what I think. (= I believe it is right to say what I think) but believe something (= believe it is true), believe somebody (= believe they are telling the truth) The story can't be true. I don't believe it. (not believe in it)

specialise IN ...

O Helen is a lawyer. She specialises in company law.

succeed IN ...

D I hope you succeed in finding the job you want.

Verb + into break INTO ...

D Our house was broken into a few days ago, but nothing was stolen.

crash / drive / bump / run INTO ...

D He lost control of the car and crashed into a wall.

divide / cut / split something INTO two or more parts The book is divided into three parts.

translate a book etc. FROM one language INTO another

She's a famous writer. Her books have been translated into many languages.

Verb + with

collide WITH ...

There was an accident this morning. A bus collided with a car.

fill something WITH ... (but Mi of ... - see Unit 131B) Take this saucepan and fill it with water.

provide / supply somebody WITH ...

The school provides all its students with books.

Verb + to happen TO ...

What happened to that gold watch you used to have? (= where is it now?)

invite somebody TO a party / a wedding etc.

They only invited a few people to their wedding.

prefer one thing/person TO another I prefer tea to coffee.

Verb + on

concentrate ON ...

I tried to concentrate on my work, but I kept thinking about other things.

insist ON

I wanted to go alone, but some friends of mine insisted on coming with me.

spend (money) ON ...

How much do you spend on food each week?

Exercises

Unit

136

Complete the sentences using these verbs (in the correct form) + a preposition: believe concentrate divide drive fill happen insist invite

succeed

[image]

1 I wanted to go alone, but my friends Insisted on coming with me.

2 I haven't seen Mike for ages. I wonder what has him.

3 We've been the party, but unfortunately we can't go.

4 It's a very large house. It's four apartments.

5 I don't ghosts. I think people imagine that they see them.

6 Steve gave me an empty bucket and told me to it water.

7 I was driving along when the car in front stopped suddenly. I couldn't stop in time and

the back of it.

8 Don't try and do two things together. one thing at a time.

9 It wasn't easy, but in the end we finding a solution to the problem.

Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1 There was a collision between a bus and a car. A bus collided a. car

2 I don't mind big cities, but I prefer small towns.

I prefer

3 I got all the information I needed from Jane.

Jane provided me

4 This morning I bought a pair of shoes which cost £70.

This morning I spent

5 There are ten districts in the city.

The city is divided

Put in the correct preposition. If the sentence is already complete, leave the space empty.

1 The school provides all its students with 1 books.

2 A strange thing happened to me a few days ago.

3 Mark decided to give up sport to concentrate his studies.

4 Money should be used well. I don't believe wasting it.

5 My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it to what I did before.

6 I hope you succeed in getting what you want.

7 As I was coming out of the room, I collided with somebody who was coming in.

8 There was an awful noise as the car crashed into a tree.

9 Patrick is a photographer. He specialises in sports photography.

10 Do you spend a lot of money on clothes?

11 I was amazed when Joe walked into the room. I couldn't believe it.

12 Somebody broke my car and stole the radio.

13 I was quite cold, but Tom insisted having the window open.

14 The teacher decided to split the class into four groups.

15 I filled the tank, but unfortunately I filled it the wrong kind of petrol.

16 Some words are difficult to translate one language another.

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences. Use a preposition.

1 I wanted to go out alone, but my friend insisted on coming with me

2 I spend a lot of money

3 I saw the accident. The car crashed

4 Chris prefers basketball

5 The restaurant we went to specialises

6 Shakespeare's plays have been translated

-* Additional exercise 36 (page 323)

Phrasal verbs 1 General points

We often use verbs with the following words:

in on up away by about over round or around

out off down back through along forward

So you can say look out / get on / take off / run away etc. These are phrasal verbs.

We often use on/off/out etc. with verbs of movement. For example:

get on D The bus was full. We couldn't get on.

drive off □ A woman got into the car and drove off.

come back Sarah is leaving tomorrow and coming back on Saturday.

turn round When I touched him on the shoulder, he turned round.

But often the second word (on/off/out etc.) gives a special meaning to the verb. For example:

break down Sorry I'm late. The car broke down. (= the engine stopped working) look out Look out! There's a car coming. (= be careful)

takeoff It was my first flight. I was nervous as the plane took off. (= went into the air)

get on C How was the exam? How did you get on? (= How did you do?)

get by O My French isn't very good, but it's enough to get by. (= manage)

For more phrasal verbs, see Units 138-145.

Sometimes a phrasal verb is followed by a preposition. For example:
phrasal verb preposition

run away from O Why did you run away from me?

keep up with You're walking too fast. I can't keep up with you.

look up at We looked up at the plane as it flew above us.

look forward to Are you looking forward to your trip?

Sometimes a phrasal verb has an object. Usually there are two possible positions for the object. So you can say:

I turned on the light, or I turned the light on.

object object

If the object is a pronoun (it/them/me/him etc.), only one position is possible:

I turned it on. (not I turned on it)

Some more examples:

^ ^ (fill in this form?

L, Can you {

J | fill this form in?

but They gave me a form and told me to fill it in. (not fill in it)

r~ , ^ , f throw away this box. Don't +u , . I

\ throw this box away.

but I want to keep this box, so don't throw it away, (not throw away it)

I take off my shoes. □ I m going to { . . ' , ,

to to | take my shoes off.

but These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to take them off. (not take off them) r-Y ~ * f wake up the baby.

D ° n * L Z k k

[wake the baby up. but The baby is asleep. Don't wake her up. (not wake up her)

Phrasal verbs 2-9 ■* Units 138-145 American English -> Appendix 7

Exercises

J| Complete each sentence using a verb from A (in the correct form) + a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

[image]

fly get go B away by down on

look sit speak out round up

1 The bus was full. We couldn't get on .

2 I've been standing for the last two hours. I'm going to for a bit.

3 A cat tried to catch the bird, but it just in time.

4 We were trapped in the building. We couldn't

5 I can't hear you very well. Can you a little?

6 'Do you speak German?' 'Not very well, but I can

7 Everything has got so expensive. Prices have a lot.

8 I thought there was somebody behind me, but when I , there was nobody there.

y Complete the sentences using a word from A and a word from B. You can use a word more than once.

A away back forward in up B at through to with

1 You're walking too fast. I can't keep wp...with. you.

2 My holidays are nearly over. Next week I'll be work.

3 We went the top floor of the building to admire the view.

4 The meeting tomorrow is going to be difficult. I'm not looking it.

5 There was a bank robbery last week. The robbers got £50,000.

6 I love to look the stars in the sky at night.

7 I was sitting in the kitchen when a bird flew the open window.

^ jp| Complete the sentences using these phrasal verbs + it/them/me:

fill in get out give back switch on take off wake up

1 They gave me a form and told me to ,j6ft & HQ .

2 I'm going to bed now. Can you at 6.30?

3 I've got something in my eye and I can't

4 I don't like it when people borrow things and don't

5 I want to use the hair dryer. How do I ?

6 My shoes are dirty. I'd better before going into the house.

^JjJ Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. Use a noun (this box

etc.) or a pronoun (it/them etc.) + the word in brackets (away/up etc.).

1 Don't throw M&M box . | want to keep it. (away)

2 I don't want this newspaper. You can throw ,M&M' (away)

3 I borrowed these books from the library. I have to take tomorrow, (back)

4 We can turn Nobody is watching it. (off)

5 a: How did the vase get broken?

b: I'm afraid I knocked while I was cleaning, (over)

6 Shh! My mother is asleep. I don't want to wake . (up)

7 It's cold today. You should put if you're going out. (on)

8 It was only a small fire. I was able to put easily, (out)

9 a: Is this hotel more expensive than when we stayed here last year? b:
Yes, they've put . (up)

10 It's a bit dark in this room. Shall I turn ? (on)

■* Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

Unit 13ft

1381 Ph rasal verbs 2 in/out

Compare in and out:

in = into a room, a building, a car etc. How did the thieves get in? Here's a key, so you can let yourself in. Lisa walked up to the edge of the pool and dived in. (= into the water) I've got a new apartment. I'm moving in on Friday.

As soon as I got to the airport, I checked in.

In the same way you can say go in, come in, walk in, break in etc

Compare in and into:

I'm moving in next week.

I'm moving into my new flat on Friday.

out = out of a room, building, a car etc. He just stood up and walked out. I had no key, so I was locked out. She swam up and down the pool, and then climbed out.

Andy opened the window and looked out.

(at a hotel) What time do we have to check out?

In the same way you can say go out, get out, move out, let somebody out etc.

Compare out and out of: He walked out. He walked out of the room.

PLUG IN

Other verbs + in

drop in = visit somebody for a short time without arranging to do this I dropped in to see Chris on my way home.

join in = take part in an activity that is already going on They were playing cards, so I joined in.

plug in an electrical machine = connect it to the electricity supply The fridge isn't working because you haven't plugged it in.

fill in a form, a questionnaire etc. = write the necessary information on a form

Please fill in the application form and send it to us by 28 February. You can also say fill out a form.

take somebody in = deceive somebody

The man said he was a policeman and I believed him. I was completely taken in.

[image]

Other verbs + out

eat out = eat at a restaurant, not at home

J There wasn't anything to eat at home, so we decided to eat out.

drop out of college, university, a course, a race = stop before you have completely finished a course/race etc.

D Gary went to university but dropped out after a year.

get out of something that you arranged to do = avoid doing it

I promised I'd go to the wedding. I don't want to go, but I can't get out of it now.

cut something out (of a newspaper etc.)

There was a beautiful picture in the magazine, so I cut it out and kept it.

leave something out = omit it, not include it

In the sentence 'She said that she was ill', you can leave out the word 'that'.

cross something out / rub something out

Some of the names on the list had been crossed out.]\$2q-ecEl cross out

Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) Unit 137 More verbs + out Unit 139

Exercises

^ Complete the sentences using a verb in the correct form.

1 Here's a key so that you can .Letyourself in.

2 Liz doesn't like cooking, so she out a lot.

3 Amy isn't living in this apartment any more. She out a few weeks ago.

4 If you're in our part of town, you should in and say hello.

5 When I in at the airport, I was told my flight would be delayed.

6 There was an article in the paper that I wanted to keep, so I it out.

7 I wanted to iron some clothes, but there was nowhere to the iron in.

8 I hate in questionnaires.

9 Steve was upset because he'd been out of the team.

10 Be careful! The water's not very deep here, so don't in.

11 If you write in pencil and you make a mistake, you can it out.

12 Paul started doing a Spanish course, but he out after a few weeks.

^jg) Complete the sentences with in, into, out or out of.

1 I've got a new flat. I'm moving M on Friday.

2 We checked the hotel as soon as we arrived.

3 As soon as we arrived at the hotel, we checked

4 The car stopped and the driver got

5 Thieves broke the house while we were away.

6 Why did Sarah drop college? Did she fail her exams?

Complete the sentences using a verb + in or out (of).

1 Lisa walked to the edge of the pool, (Lv/eA w and swam to the other end.

2 Not all the runners finished the race. Three of them

3 I went to see Joe and Sophie in their new house. They last week.

4 I've told you everything you need to know. I don't think I've anything.

5 Some people in the crowd started singing. Then a few more people
and soon everybody was singing.

6 We go to restaurants a lot. We like

7 Don't be by him. If I were you, I wouldn't believe anything he says.

8 I to see Laura a few days ago. She was fine.

9 a: Can we meet tomorrow morning at 10?

b: Probably. I'm supposed to go to another meeting, but I think I can

Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets in the correct form.

1 a: The fridge isn't working.

b: That's because you haven't plugged it w . (plug)

2 a: What do I have to do with these forms?

b: and send them to this address, (fill)

3 a: I've made a mistake on this form.

b: That's all right. Just and correct it. (cross)

4 a: Did you believe the story they told you?

b: Yes, I'm afraid they completely (take)

5 a: Have you been to that new club in Bridge Street?

b: We wanted to go there a few nights ago, but they wouldn't

because we weren't members, (let)

-> Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

Unit

139 Phrasal verbs 3 out

[image]

[image]

out = not burning, not shining go out

put out a fire / a cigarette / a light turn out a light blow out a candle

Suddenly all the lights in the building went out.

We managed to put the fire out.

I turned the lights out before leaving.

We don't need the candle. You can blow it out.

work out

work out = do physical exercises

O Rachel works out at the gym three times a week.

work out = develop, progress

O Good luck for the future. I hope everything works out well for you. a: Why did James leave the company? b: Things didn't work out. (= things didn't work out well)

work out (for mathematical calculations)

The total bill for three people is £84.60. That works out at £28.20 each,
work something out = calculate, think about a problem and find the answer

345 x 76? I need to do this on paper. I can't work it out in my head.

Other verbs + out

carry out an order, an experiment, a survey, an investigation, a plan etc.
Soldiers are expected to carry out orders. 3 An investigation into the
accident will be carried out as soon as possible, fall out (with somebody)
=stop being friends

Q They used to be very good friends. I'm surprised to hear that they have
fallen out. O David fell out with his father and left home, find out that/
what/when ... etc., find out about something = get information O The police
never found out who committed the murder. C I just found out that it's
Helen's birthday today.

I checked a few websites to find out about hotels in the town, give/hand things out = give to each person

At the end of the lecture, the speaker gave out information sheets to the audience, point something out (to somebody) = draw attention to something

As we drove through the city, our guide pointed out all the sights. O I didn't realise I'd made a mistake until somebody pointed it out to me. run out (of something)

We ran out of petrol on the motorway. (= we used all our petrol) sort something out = find a solution to, put in order O There are a few problems we need to sort out.

All these papers are mixed up. I'll have to sort them out. turn out to be ... , turn out good/nice etc., turn out that ...

Nobody believed Paul at first, but he turned out to be right. (= it became clear in the that he was right)

O The weather wasn't so good in the morning, but it turned out nice later. I thought they knew each other, but it turned out that they'd never met. try out a machine, a system, a new idea etc. = test it to see if it is OK

The company is trying out a new computer system at the moment.

end

J

Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) H> Unit 137 More verbs + out -f Unit 138

Exercises

Which words can go together? Choose from the list, a candle a cigarette - a4ight a mess a mistake a new product an order

1 turn out A

2 point out 5 put out

3 blowout 6 try out

4 carry out 7 sort out

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences using a verb + out.

1 The company is ou ^ a new computer system at the moment.

2 Steve is very fit. He does a lot of sport and regularly.

3 The road will be closed for two days next week while building work is

4 We didn't manage to discuss everything at the meeting. We of time.

5 You have to the problem yourself. I can't do it for you.

6 I don't know what happened exactly. I need to

7 The new drug will be on a small group of patients.

8 I thought the two books were the same until a friend of mine the difference.

9 They got married a few years ago, but it didn't and they separated.

10 There was a power cut and all the lights

11 We thought she was American at first, but she to be Swedish.

12 Sometimes it cheaper to eat in a restaurant than to cook at home.

13 I haven't applied for the job yet. I want to more about the company first.

14 It took the fire brigade two hours to the fire.

For each picture, complete the sentence using a verb + out.

m

now

[image]

[image]

[image]

They've ,M Mk of The man with the beard is

Patrol . leaflets.

The weather has

®

SALLY

[image]

[image]

LISA

[image]

Sally and Kim are They've . Lisa is trying to at the gym. how

J

^j^jj) Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + out.

1 a: Was the fire serious?

b: No, we were able to pwt It out

2 a: This recipe looks interesting.

b: Yes, let's

3 a: How much money do I owe you exactly? b: Just a moment. I'll have to

...

4 a: What happened about your problem with your bank? b: It's OK now. I went to see them and we

Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

On and off for lights, machines etc.

We say: the light is on / put the light on / leave the light on etc. turn the light on/off or switch the light on/off

Shall I leave the lights on or turn them off? 'Is the heating on?' 'No, I switched it off

We need some boiling water, so I'll put the kettle on.

Also put on some music / a CD etc.

I haven't listened to this CD yet. Shall I put it on? (= shall I play it)

On and off for events etc.

go on = happen

What's all that noise? What's going on? (= what's happening)

call something off = cancel it

The open air concert had to be called off because of the weather.

put something off, put off doing something = delay it The wedding has been put off until January. We can't put off making a decision. We have to decide now.

On and off for clothes etc.

put on clothes, glasses, make-up, a seat belt etc. My hands were cold, so I put my gloves on.

Also put on weight = get heavier

I've put on two kilograms in the last month.

try on clothes (to see if they fit)

I tried on a jacket in the shop, but it didn't fit me very well.

take off clothes, glasses etc.

It was warm, so I took off my jacket.

Off = away from a person or place

be off (to a place)

Tomorrow I'm off to Paris / I'm off on holiday. (= I'm going to Paris / I'm going on holiday)

walk off / run off / drive off / ride off / go off (similar to walk away / run away etc.) Diane got on her bike and rode off. D Mark left home at the age of 18 and went off to Canada.

set off = start a journey

We set off very early to avoid the traffic. (= We left early)

take off = leave the ground (for planes)

O After a long delay the plane finally took off.

see somebody off = go with them to the airport/station to say goodbye

Helen was going away. We went to the station with her to see her off.

Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) -* Unit 137 More verbs + on/off -* Unit 141

Exercises

[image]

Complete the sentences using put on + the following: a CD the heating the kettle the light the oven

1 It was getting dark, so I..... put the light on

2 It was getting cold, so I

3 I wanted to bake a cake, so I

4 I wanted to make some tea, so I

5 I wanted to listen to some music, so I

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences. Each time use a verb + on or off.

1 It was warm, so I took off my jacket.

2 What are all these people doing? What's ?

3 The weather was too bad for the plane to , so the flight was delayed.

4 I didn't want to be disturbed, so I my phone.

5 Rachel got into her car and at high speed.

6 Tim has weight since I last saw him. He used to be quite thin.

7 a: What time are you leaving tomorrow?

b: I'm not sure yet, but I'd like to as early as possible.

8 Don't until tomorrow what you can do today.

9 There was going to be a strike by bus drivers, but now they have been offered more money and the strike has been

10 Are you cold? Shall I get you a sweater to ?

11 When I go away, I prefer to be alone at the station or airport. I don't like it when people come to

me

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

0

[image]

Her hands were cold, so she put her gloves on

MARIA

[image]

[image]

The plane at 10.55.

0

[image]

Maria , The match

but it was too big for her. because of the weather.

[image]

Mark's parents went to the airport to

[image]

He took his sunglasses out of his pocket

and

Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

Unit

it 1

282

Phrasal verbs 5 on/off (2)

Verb + on = continue doing something

drive on / walk on / play on = continue driving/walking/playing etc.

Shall we stop at this petrol station or shall we drive on to the next one?

go on = continue

The party went on until 4 o'clock in the morning.

go on / carry on doing something = continue doing something

D We can't go on spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon. I don't want to carry on working here. I'm going to look for another job.

Also go on with / carry on with something

Don't let me disturb you. Please carry on with what you're doing.

keep on doing something = do it continuously or repeatedly He keeps on criticising me. I'm fed up with it!

[image]

Get on

get on = progress

O How are you getting on in your new job? (= How is it going?)

get on (with somebody) = have a good relationship

Joanne and Karen don't get on. They're always arguing.

Richard gets on well with his neighbours. They're all very friendly.

get on with something = continue doing something you have to do, usually after an interruption I must get on with my work. I have a lot to do.

[image]

Verb + off

doze off / drop off / nod off = fall asleep

The lecture wasn't very interesting. In fact I dozed off in the middle of it.

finish something off = do the last part of something a: Have you finished painting the kitchen? b: Nearly. I'll finish it off tomorrow.

go off = explode

O A bomb went off in the city centre, but fortunately nobody was hurt. Also an alarm can go off = ring

Did you hear the alarm go off?

put somebody off (doing something) = cause somebody not to want something or to do something We wanted to go to the exhibition, but we were put off by the long queue. O What put you off applying for the job? Was the salary too low?

rip somebody off = cheat somebody (informal)

□ Did you really pay £2,000 for that painting? I think you were ripped off. (=you paid too much)

show off = try to impress people with your ability, your knowledge etc.

Look at that boy on the bike riding with no hands. He's just showing off.

tell somebody off = speak angrily to somebody because they did something wrong Clare's mother told her off for wearing dirty shoes in the house.

G

Go on / carry on / keep on -fr Unit 53B Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) -* Unit 137 More verbs + on/off ■# Unit 140 American English -* Appendix

j

Exercises

Unit

141

[image]

[image]

[image]

Change the underlined words. Keep the same meaning, but use a verb + on or off.

1 Did you hear the bomb explode ? Did you hear the bomb go off ?

2 The meeting continued longer than I expected.

The meeting longer than I expected.

3 We didn't stop to rest. We c ontinued walkin g.

We didn't stop to rest. We

4 I fell asleep while I was watching TV.

I while I was watching TV.

5 Gary doesn't want to retire. He wants to continue working.

Gary doesn't want to retire. He wants to working.

6 The fire alarm rang in the middle of the night.

The fire alarm in the middle of the night.

7 Martin phones m e continuously . It's very annoying.

Martin . It's very annoying.

Complete each sentence using a verb + on or off.

1 We can't go on spending money like this. We'll have nothing left soon.

2 I was standing by the car when suddenly the alarm

3 I'm not ready to go home yet. I have a few things to

4 'Shall I stop the car here?' 'No, '

5 Bill paid too much for the car he bought. I think he was

6 'Is Emma enjoying her course at university?' 'Yes, she's very well.'

7 I was very tired at work today. I nearly at my desk a couple of times.

8 Ben was by his boss for being late for work repeatedly.

9 I really like working with my colleagues. We all really well together.

10 There was a very loud noise. It sounded like a bomb

11 I making the same mistake. It's very frustrating.

12 I've just had a coffee break, and now I must with my work.

13 Peter is always trying to impress people. He's always

14 We decided not to go to the concert. We were by the cost of tickets.

Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + on or off. Sometimes you will need other words as well:

carry finish -get- get get go rip tell

1 a: How are you getting on in your new job? b: Fine, thanks. It's going very well.

2 a: Have you written the letter you had to write?

b: I've started it. I'll in the morning.

3 a: We took a taxi to the airport. It cost £40. b: £40! Normally it costs

about £20. You

4 a: Why were you late for work this morning?

b: I overslept. My alarm clock didn't

5 a: How in your interview? Do you think you'll get the job?

b: I hope so. The interview was OK.

6 a: Did you stop playing tennis when it started to rain?

b: No, we . The rain wasn't very heavy.

7 a: Some children at the next table in the restaurant were behaving very badly. b: Why didn't their parents ?

8 a: Why does Paul want to leave his job?

b: He his boss.

-> Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

Unit

142 Ph rasal verbs 6 up/down

Compare up and down:

put something up (on a wall etc.)

I put a picture up on the wall.

pick something up

There was a letter on the floor. I picked it up and looked at it.

stand up

Alan stood up and walked out.

turn something up

I can't hear the TV. Can you turn it up a bit?

take something down (from a wall etc.) I didn't like the picture, so I took it down.

put something down

I stopped writing and put down my pen.

sit down / bend down / lie down

I bent down to tie my shoelace.

turn something down

The oven is too hot. Turn it down to 150 degrees.

Knock down, cut down etc.

knock down a building, blow something down, cut something down etc.

Some old houses were knocked down to make way for the new shopping centre. O Why did you cut down the tree in your garden?

be knocked down (by a car etc.)

O A man was knocked down by a car and taken to hospital.

burn down = be destroyed by fire

O They were able to put out the fire before the house burnt down.

Down = getting less

slow down = go more slowly

O You're driving too fast. Slowdown.

calm (somebody) down = become calmer, make somebody calmer O Calm down. There's no point in getting angry.

cut down (on something) = eat, drink or do something less often O I'm trying to cut down on coffee. I drink too much of it.

Other verbs + down

break down = stop working (for machines, cars, relationships etc.) O The car broke down and I had to phone for help. □ Their marriage broke down after only a few months.

close down / shut down = stop doing business

There used to be a shop at the end of the street; it closed down a few years ago.

let somebody down = disappoint them because you didn't do what they hoped O You can always rely on Paul. He'll never let you down.

turn somebody/something down = refuse an application, an offer etc. O I applied for several jobs, but I was turned down for all of them. Rachel was offered the job, but she decided to turn it down.

write something down = write something on paper because you may need the information later O I can't remember Tim's address. I wrote it down, but I can't find it.

Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) *4 Unit 137 More verbs + up -t Units 143-144

j

Exercises

[image]

[image]

For each picture, complete the sentences using a verb + up or down. In most sentences you will need other words as well.

[image]

1 There used to be a tree next to the house, but we cut it down

2 There used to be some shelves on the wall, but I

3 The ceiling was so low, he couldn't straight.

4 She couldn't hear the radio very well, so she

5 While they were waiting for the bus, they on the ground.

6 A few trees in the storm last week.

7 We've got some new curtains, but we haven't yet.

8 Lisa dropped her keys, so she and

Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) +
down: calm let take turn turn write

1 I don't like this picture on the wall. I'm going to take it down

2 The music is too loud. Can you

3 David was very angry. I tried to

4 Sarah gave me her phone number. I

5 I promised I would help Anna. I don't want to

6 I was offered the job, but I decided I didn't want it. So I
on a piece of paper

[image]

Complete each sentence using a verb (in the correct form) + down.

1 I stopped writing and put down my pen.

2 I was really angry. It took me a long time to

3 The train as it approached the station.

4 Sarah applied to study medicine at university, but she

5 Our car is very reliable. It has never

6 I need to spend less money. I'm going to get rid of things I don't really need.

7 I didn't play very well. I felt that I had the other players in the team.

8 The shop because it was losing money.

9 This is a very ugly building. Many people would like it to

10 I can't understand why you the chance of working abroad for a year. It would have been a great experience for you.

11 a: Did you see the accident? What happened exactly?

b: A man by a car as he was crossing the road.

12 Peter got married when he was 20, but unfortunately the marriage a few years later.

Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

Unit

143 . Phrasal verbs 7 up (1)

go up / come up / walk up (to ...) = approach

O A man came up to me in the street and asked me for money.

catch up (with somebody), catch somebody up = move faster than somebody in front of you so that you reach them

O I'm not ready to go yet. You go on and I'll catch up with you / I'll catch you up.

keep up (with somebody) = continue at the same speed or level O You're walking too fast. I can't keep up (with you). O You're doing well. Keep it up!

set up an organisation, a company, a business, a system, a website etc. = start it The government has set up a committee to investigate the problem.

take up a hobby, a sport, an activity etc. = start doing it

Laura took up photography a few years ago. She takes really good pictures.

fix up a meeting etc. = arrange it

O We've fixed up a meeting for next Monday.

grow up = become an adult

Ann was born in Hong Kong but grew up in Australia.

bring up a child = raise, look after a child

Her parents died when she was a child and she was brought up by her grandparents.

clean up / clear up / tidy up something = make it clean, tidy etc. Look at this mess! Who's going to tidy up? (ortidyitup)

wash up = wash the plates, dishes etc. after a meal

I hate washing up. (or I hate doing the washing-up.)

end up somewhere, end up doing something etc.

There was a fight in the street and three men ended up in hospital. (= that's what happened to these men in the end)

I couldn't find a hotel and ended up sleeping on a bench at the station. (= that's what happened to me in the end)

give up = stop trying, give something up = stop doing it Don't give up. Keep trying!

Sue got bored with her job and decided to give it up. (= stop doing it)

make up something, be made up of something

Children under 16 make up half the population of the city. (= half the population are children under 16)

D Air is made up mainly of nitrogen and oxygen. (= Air consists of...)

take up space or time = use space or time

O Most of the space in the room was taken up by a large table.

turn up / show up = arrive, appear

3 We arranged to meet David last night, but he didn't turn up.

use something up = use all of it so that nothing is left

I'm going to make some soup. We have a lot of vegetables and I want to use them up.

^Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) -> Unit 137 More verbs + up4 Units
142,144

Exercises

Unit

143

[image]

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use three words each time, including a verb from Section A.

(Coor\ Ljou tell me ... ?^

[image]

A man came up to me in the street and asked me the way to the station.

[image]

Tom was a long way behind the other runners, but he managed to them.
tom

[image]

Sue the front door

of the house and rang the doorbell.

®

TANYA

[image]

Tanya was running too fast for Paul. He couldn't her.

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs (in the correct form) + up:
end end give give grow make take take turn

use

wash

[image]

1 I couldn't find a hotel and ended, up sleeping on a bench at the station.

2 I'm feeling very tired now. I've all my energy.

3 After dinner I and put the dishes away.

4 People often ask children what they want to be when they

5 We invited Tom to the party, but he didn't

6 Two years ago James his studies to be a professional footballer.

7 a: Do you do any sports?

b: Not at the moment, but I'm thinking of tennis.

8 You don't have enough determination. You too easily.

9 Karen travelled a lot for a few years and in Canada, where she still lives.

10 I do a lot of gardening. It most of my free time.

11 There are two universities in the city, and students 20 per cent of the population.

Complete the sentences. Use the following verbs + up (with any other necessary words):

go keep keep make set tidy

bring catch

fix

-give-

1 Sue got bored with her job and decided to give it up

2 I'm not ready yet. You go on and I'll catch up with you.

3 The room is in a mess. I'd better

4 We expect to go away on holiday sometime in July, but we haven't yet.

5 Stephen is having problems at school. He can't the rest of the class.

6 Although I in the country, I have always preferred cities.

7 Our team started the game well, but we couldn't and in the end we lost.

8 I saw Mike at the party, so I him and said hello.

9 When I was on holiday, I joined a tour group. The group
two Americans, three Germans, five Italians and myself.

10 Helen has her own internet website. A friend of hers helped her to

-> Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

Phrasal verbs 8 up (2)

bring up a topic etc. = introduce it in a conversation

D I don't want to hear any more about this matter. Please don't bring it up again.

come up = be introduced in a conversation

O Some interesting points came up in our discussion yesterday.

come up with an idea, a suggestion etc. = produce an idea

Sarah is very creative. She's always coming up with new ideas.

make something up = invent something that is not true

What Kevin told you about himself wasn't true. He made it all up.

cheer up = be happier, cheer somebody up = make somebody feel happier

You look so sad! Cheer up!

Helen is depressed at the moment. What can we do to cheer her up?

save up for something / to do something = save money to buy something

Dan is saving up for a trip round the world.

clear up = become bright (for weather)

It was raining when I got up, but it cleared up later.

J

blow up = explode, blow something up = destroy it with a bomb etc. The engine caught fire and blew up. O The bridge was blown up during the war.

tear something up = tear it into pieces

I didn't read the letter. I just tore it up and threw it away.

beat somebody up = hit someone repeatedly so that they are badly hurt

A friend of mine was attacked and beaten up a few days ago. He was badly hurt and had to go to hospital.

break up / split up (with somebody) = separate

I'm surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have split up. They seemed very happy together.

do up a coat, a shoelace, buttons etc. = fasten, tie etc. D It's quite cold. Do up your coat before you go out.

do up a building, a room etc. = repair and improve it

The kitchen looks great now that it has been done up.

look something up in a dictionary, encyclopaedia etc.

O If you don't know the meaning of a word, you can look it up in a dictionary.

put up with something = tolerate it

O We live on a busy road, so we have to put up with a lot of noise from the traffic.

hold up a person, a plan etc. = delay

Don't wait for me. I don't want to hold you up.

Plans to build a new factory have been held up because of the company's financial problems.

mix up people/things, get people/things mixed up = you think one is the other

The two brothers look very similar. Many people mix them up. (or ... get them mixed up)

Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) -fr Unit 137 American English Appendix 7

More verbs + up -> Units 142-143

j

Exercises

[image]

Which goes with which?

1

2 3 4 5 6

I'm going to tear up

Jane came up with

Paul is always making up

I think you should do up

I don't think you should bring up

I'm saving up for

7 We had to put up with

a a new camera

b a lot of bad weather

c your jacket

d an interesting suggestion

e excuses

f the letter

g that subject

1

2 3 4 5 6 7

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. You will need two or three words each time

cd ~ \L 7, — ~ — —,

(Sorry I ro Late, j

[image]

this morning

The weather was horrible this morning, but it's cleared up now.

Amy was late because she was

in the traffic

[image]

Come out -for a, meal with us! j

[image]

They bought an old house and Joe was really depressed. We took him out
It's really nice now. for a meal to

Complete the sentences using a verb (in the correct form) + up. Sometimes
you will need other words as well.

1 Some interesting matters come up in our discussion yesterday.

2 The ship and sank. The cause of the explosion was never discovered.

3 Two men have been arrested after a man was outside a restaurant
last night. The injured man was taken to hospital.

4 'Is Robert still going out with Tina?' 'No, they've

5 My hands were so cold, I found it hard to my shoelaces.

6 I wish it would stop raining! I hope it soon.

7 I wanted to phone Chris, but I dialled Laura's number by mistake. I got
their phone numbers

Complete the sentences using a verb + up. You will need other words as
well.

1 Don't wait for me. I don't want to hold, you up

2 I don't know what this word means. I'll have to

3 There's nothing we can do about the problem. We'll just have to it.

4 'Was that story true?' 'No, I

5 I think we should follow Tom's suggestion. Nobody has a better plan.

6 I hate this photo. I'm going to

7 I'm trying to spend less money at the moment. I'm a trip to Australia.

Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

145 Phrasal verbs 9 away/back

Compare away and back:

Other verbs + away

get away = escape, leave with difficulty

C We tried to catch the thief, but she managed to get away.

get away with something = do something wrong without being caught

O I parked in a no-parking zone, but I got away with it. I didn't have to pay a fine.

keep away (from ...) = don't go near

G Keep away from the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

give something away = give it to somebody else because you don't want it any more
O 'Did you sell your old computer?' 'No, I gave it away.'

put something away = put it in the place where it is kept, usually out of sight

C When the children had finished playing with their toys, they put them away.

throw something away = put it in the rubbish

O I kept the letter, but I threw away the envelope.

Other verbs + back

wave back / smile back / shout back / write back / hit somebody back O I waved to her and she waved back.

call/phone/ring (somebody) back = return a phone call

~ I can't talk to you now. I'll call you back in ten minutes.

get back to somebody = reply to them by phone etc. O I sent him an email, but he never got back to me.

look back (on something) = think about what happened in the past

O My first job was in a travel agency. I didn't like it very much at the time but, looking back on it, I learnt a lot and it was a very useful experience.

pay back money, pay somebody back

□ If you borrow money, you have to pay it back.

O Thanks for lending me the money. I'll pay you back next week.

Phrasal verbs 1 (General points) ■* Unit 137

)

Exercises

[image]

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

[image]

She waved to him and he waved back

It was windy. I dropped a twenty-pound note and it

[image]

SUE

[image]

Sue opened the letter, read it
and in
the envelope.

[image]

[image]

[image]

Complete the sentences. Use a verb + away or back.

- 1 I was away all day yesterday. I got back very late.
- 2 I haven't seen our neighbours for a while. I think they must
- 3 I'm going out now. 'OK. What time will you ?'
- 4 A man was trying to break into a car. When he saw me, he
- 5 I smiled at him, but he didn't
- 6 If you cheat in the exam, you might with it. But you might
get caught.
- 7 Be careful! That's an electric fence. from it.

Complete the sentences using a verb in the correct form.

- 1 The woman got into her car, started the engine and drove, away.
- 2 Here's the money you need me back when you can.
- 3 Don't that box away. It could be useful.
- 4 Jane doesn't do anything at work. I don't know how she away with it.
- 5 I'm going out now. I'll back in about an hour.

6 You should think more about the future; don't back all the time.

7 Gary is very generous. He won some money in the lottery and it all away.

8 I'll back to you as soon as I have the information you need.

4^ P Complete the sentences. Use the verb in brackets + away or back.

1 a: Do you still have my keys?

b: No. Don't you remember? I ga,ye them back to you yesterday, (give)

2 a: Do you want this magazine?

b: No, I've finished with it. You can (throw)

3 a: How are your new jeans? Do they fit you OK?

b: No, I'm going to to the shop, (take)

4 a: Here's the money you asked me to lend you.

b: Thanks. I'll as soon as I can. (pay)

5 a: What happened to all the books you used to have?

b: I didn't want them any more, so I (give)

6 a: Did you phone Sarah?

b: She wasn't there. I left a message asking her to (call)

-> Additional exercises 37-41 (pages 323-25)

Appendix 1

Regular and irregular verbs

[image]

Regular verbs

If a verb is regular, the past simple and past participle end in -ed. For

example:

infinitive past simple past participle f

For spelling rules, see Appendix 6.

clean cleaned

finish finished

use used

paint painted

stop stopped

carry carry

For the past simple (I cleaned / they finished / she carried etc.), see Unit 5.

We use the past participle to make the perfect tenses and all the passive forms.

Perfect tenses (have/has/had cleaned):

O I have cleaned the windows, (presentperfect - see Units 7-8)

O They were still working. They hadn't finished, {pastperfect - see Unit 15)

Passive (is cleaned / was cleaned etc.):

He was carried out of the room, (past simple passive)

This gate has just been painted, (present perfect passive)

see Units 42-44

Irregular verbs

When the past simple and past participle do not end in -ed (for example, I saw / I have seen), the verb is irregular.

With some irregular verbs, all three forms (infinitive, past simple and past

participle) are the same. For example, hit:

O Don't hit me. (infinitive)

O Somebody hit me as i came into the room, (past simple) O I've never hit anybody in my life, (past participle - present perfect) George was hit on the head by a stone, (pastparticiple-passive)

With other irregular verbs, the past simple is the same as the past participle (but different from the infinitive). For example, tell —> told:

O Can you tell me what to do? (infinitive)

O She told me to come back the next day. (past simple)

O Have you told anybody about your new job? (past participle - present perfect) O I was told to come back the next day. (pastparticiple-passive)

With other irregular verbs, all three forms are different. For example, wake —> woke/woken: O I'll wake you u p. (infinitive) □ I woke up in the middle of the night, (past simple) O The baby has woken up. (past participle - present perfect) O I was woken up by a loud noise, (past participle - passive)

The following verbs can be regular or irregular:

burn dream lean learn

—>

—> —>

burned or burnt dreamed or dreamt [dremt] : leaned or leant [lent]* learned or learnt

smell —> smelled or smelt

spell spelled or spelt

spill -> spilled or spilt

spoil —> spoiled or spoilt

pronunciation

So you can say:

I leant out of the window, or I leaned out of the window. O The dinner has been spoiled, or The dinner has been spoilt. In British English the irregular form (burnt/learnt etc.) is more usual. For American English, see Appendix 7.

Append

ix1

List of irregular verbs

* pronunciation

Appendix 2

Present and past tenses

• £ S E " " !

present

present perfect

For the passive, see Units 42-44.

Future actions

We use the present continuous (I'm doing) for arrangements:

O I'm leaving tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket, (already planned and arranged) i. i 'When are they getting married?' 'On 24 July.'

We use the present simple (I leave / it leaves etc.) for timetables, programmes etc.: O My train leaves at 11.30. (according to the timetable)
O What time does the film begin?

We use (be) going to ... to say what somebody has already decided to do:

I've decided not to stay here any longer. I'm going to leave tomorrow, (or

I'm leaving

tomorrow.)

'Your shoes are dirty.' 'Yes, I know. I'm going to clean them.'

We use will ('11) when we decide or agree to do something at the time of speaking: O a: I don't want you to stay here any longer.

b: OK. I'll leave tomorrow. (B decides this at the time of speaking) O That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.

O I won't tell anybody what happened. I promise, (won't = will not)

Future happenings and situations

Most often we use will to talk about future happenings ('something will happen') or situations ('something will be'):

O I don't think John is happy at work. I think he'll leave soon.

O This time next year I'll be in Japan. Where will you be?

We use (be) going to when the situation now shows what is going to happen in the future: O Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain, (you can see the clouds now)

Future continuous and future perfect

Will be (do)ing = will be in the middle of (doing something):

O This time next week I'll be on holiday. I'll be lying on a beach or swimming in the sea. We also use will be -ing for future actions (see Unit 24C):

O What time will you be leaving tomorrow?

We use will have (done) to say that something will already be complete before a time in the future:

O I won't be here this time tomorrow. I'll have already left.

We use the present (not will) after when/if/while/before etc. (see Unit 25): I

hope to see you before I leave tomorrow, (not before I will leave) O When you are in London again, come and see us. (not When you will be) O If we don't hurry, we'll be late.

295

Appendix 4

Modal verbs (can/could/will/would etc.)

This appendix is a summary of modal verbs. For more information, see Units 21-41. Compare can/could etc. for actions:

can

could

[image]

I can go out tonight. (= there is nothing to stop me) O I can't go out tonight.

I could go out tonight, but I'm not very keen. I couldn't go out last night. (= I wasn't able)

go out tonight? (= do you allow me?)

will/won't I think I'll go out tonight.

I promise I won't go out. would I would go out tonight, but I have too much to do.

I promised I wouldn't go out.

shall

[image]

Shall I go out tonight? (do you think it is a good idea?) should

oughtto [^° out ton '& nt - (= '* wou ^ be a good thing to do)

must O I must go out tonight. (= it is necessary)

O I mustn't go out tonight. (= it is necessary that I do not go out) needn't I
needn't go out tonight. (= it is not necessary)

Compare could have ... / would have ... etc.

could I could have gone out last night, but I decided to stay at home,

would I would have gone out last night, but I had too much to do.

should or f should

have gone out last night. I'm sorry I didn't.

I

[image]

oughtto | oughtto

needn't C I needn't have gone out last night. (= I went out, but it was not necessary)

We use will/would/may etc. to say whether something is possible, impossible, probable, certain etc. Compare:

Compare would have ... / should have ... etc.:

will would

She will have arrived by now. (= before now)

She would have arrived earlier, but she was delayed.

Appendix 5

Short forms (I'm / you've / didn't etc.)

[image]

[image]

In spoken English we usually say I'm / you've / didn't etc. (shortforms or contractions) rather than I am / you have / did not etc. We also use these short forms in informal writing (for example, a letter or message to a friend).

When we write short forms, we use an apostrophe (') for the missing letter(s): I'm = I am you've = you have didn't = did not

List of short forms:

[image]

's can be is or has:

O She's ill. (= She is ill.)

O She's gone away. (= She has gone) but let's = let us:

Let's go now. (= Let us go)

'd can be would or had:

O I'd see a doctor if I were you. (= I would see) j I'd never seen her before.
(= I had never seen)

We use some of these short forms (especially's) after question words (who/ what etc.) and after that/there/here:

who's what's where's how's that's there's here's who'll there'll who'd

Who's that woman over there? (= who is) O What's happened? (= what has)

□ Do you think there'll be many people at the party? (= there will)

We also use short forms (especially's) after a noun:

Katherine's going out tonight. (= Katherine is)

My best friend's just got married. (= My best friend has)

You cannot use 'm /'s / 're /'ve / 'll /'d at the end of a sentence (because the verb is stressed in this position):

'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' [not Yes, I'm.] O Do you know where she is?
(not Do you know where she's?)

Negative short forms

Negative short forms for is and are can be:

he isn't / she isn't / it isn't or he's not / she's not / it's not

you aren't / we aren't / they aren't or you're not / we're not / they're not

Appendix 6 Spelling

[image]

Nouns, verbs and adjectives can have the following endings:

[image]

When we use these endings, there are sometimes changes in spelling. These

changes are listed below.

Nouns and verbs + -s/-es

The ending is -es when the word ends in -s/-ss/-sh/-ch/-x:

bus/buses miss/misses wash/washes

search/searches

match/matches

Note also:

potato/potatoes

box/boxes

tomato/tomatoes go/goes

[image]

do/does

Words ending in -y (baby, carry, easy etc.)

If a word ends in a consonant* + y (-by/-ry/-sy/-vy etc.)

y changes to ie before the ending -s:

baby/babies story/stories hurry/hurries study/studies

y changes to i before the ending -ed:

hurry/hurried study/studied

y changes to i before the endings -er and -est:

easy/easier/easiest heavy/heavier/heaviest lucky/luckier/luckiest

y changes to i before the ending -ly:

easy/easily heavy/heavily temporary/temporarily

country/countries apply/applies

apply/applied

secretary/secretaries try/tries

try/tried

[image]

y does not change before -ing:

hurrying studying applying trying

y does not change if the word ends in a vowel* + y (-ay/-ey/-oy/-uy):

play/plays/played monkey/monkeys enjoy/enjoys/enjoyed

An exception is: day/daily

Note also: pay/paid lay/laid say/said

Verbs ending in -ie (die, lie, tie)

If a verb ends in -ie, ie changes to y before the ending -ing: die/dying lie/lying tie/tying

buy/buys

* a e i o u are vowel letters.

The other letters (b c d f g etc.) are consonant letters.

Appendix 6

Words ending in -e (hope, dance, wide etc.) Verbs

If a verb ends in -e, we leave out e before the ending -ing.

hope/hoping smile/smiling dance/dancing confuse/confusing

Exceptions are be/being

and verbs ending in -ee: see/seeing agree/agreeing

If a verb ends in -e, we add -d for the past (of regular verbs):

hope/hoped smile/smiled dance/danced confuse/confused

Adjectives and adverbs

If an adjective ends in -e, we add -r and -st for the comparative and superlative: wide/wider/widest late/later/latest large/larger/largest

If an adjective ends in -e, we keep e before -ly in the adverb:

polite/politely extreme/extremely absolute/absolutely

If an adjective ends in -le (simple, terrible etc.), the adverb ending is -ply, -bly etc.: simple/simply terrible/terribly reasonable/reasonably

Doubling consonants (stop/stopping/stopped, wet/wetter/wettest etc.)

Sometimes a word ends in vowel + consonant. For example:

stop plan rub big wet thin prefer regret

Before the endings -ing/-ed/-er/-est, we double the consonant at the end. So p → pp, n → nn etc. For example:

If the word has more than one syllable (prefer, begin etc.), we double the consonant at the end only if the final syllable is stressed:

preFER / preferring / preferred perMIT / permitting / permitted

reGRET / regretting / regretted beGIN / beginning

If the final syllable is not stressed, we do not double the final consonant:

VISit / visiting / visited deVELop / developing / developed

HAPpen / happening / happened reMEMber / remembering / remembered

In British English, verbs ending in -l have -ll- before -ing and -ed whether the final syllable is stressed or not:

travel / travelling / travelled cancel / cancelling / cancelled

For American spelling, see Appendix 7.

Note that

we do not double the final consonant if the word ends in two consonants (-rt, -lp, -ng etc.): start / starting / started help / helping / helped long / longer / longest

we do not double the final consonant if there are two vowel letters before it (-oil, -eed etc.):

boil / boiling / boiled need / needing / needed explain / explaining / explained

cheap / cheaper / cheapest loud / louder / loudest quiet / quieter / quietest

we do not double y or w at the end of words. (At the end of words y and w are not consonants.) stay / staying / stayed grow / growing new / newer / newest

Appendix 7 American English

There are a few grammatical differences between British English and American English:

* Many verbs ending in -ise in British English (apologise/organise/specialise etc.) are spelt with -ize (apologize/organize/specialize etc.) in American English.

Appendix 7

Additional exercises

These exercises are divided into the following sections:

Present and past

Units 1-6, Appendix 2

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form: present simple (I do), present continuous (I am doing), past simple (I did) or past continuous (I was doing).

1 We can go out now. II Isn't nunlng (it / not / rain) any more.

2 Katherine w<u&rig (wait) for me when \ arruvelL (I / arrive).

3 0 / § et) hungry. Let's go and have something to eat.

4 What (you / do) in your spare time? Do you have any hobbies?

5 The weather was horrible when (we/arrive). It was cold and
(it / rain) hard.

6 Louise usually (phone) me on Fridays, but
(she / not / phone) last Friday.

7 a: When I last saw you, (you / think) of moving to a new flat.

B: That's right, but in the end (I / decide) to stay where I was.

8 Why (you / look) at me like that? What's the matter?

9 It's usually dry here at this time of the year (it / not / rain) much.

10 Sorry I'm late. My phone (ring) three times while
(I / get) ready to go out.

11 Lisa was busy when (we / go) to see her yesterday. She had an exam
today and (she / prepare) for it
(we / not / want) to disturb her, so (we / not / stay) very long.

12 When I first (tell) Tom what happened, (he / not / believe) me. (he /
think) that (I/joke).

Additional exercises

Present and past

Units 1-14, Appendix 2

[image]

[image]

Which is correct?

1 Everything is going well. We d i dn't hav e-/ haven't had any problems so far. (haven't had is correct)

2 Lisa didn't go / hasn't gone to work yesterday. She wasn't feeling well.

3 Look! That man over there wears / is wearing the same sweater as you.

4 I went / have been to New Zealand last year.

5 I didn't hear / haven't heard from Jess recently. I hope she's OK.

6 I wonder why James is / is being so nice to me today. He isn't usually like that.

7 Jane had a book open in front of her, but she didn't read / wasn't reading it.

8 I wasn't very busy. I didn't have / wasn't having much to do.

9 It begins / It's beginning to get dark. Shall I turn on the light?

10 After finishing school, Tim got / has g ot a job in a factory.

11 When Sue heard the news, she wasn't / hasn't been very pleased.

12 This is a nice restaurant, isn't it? Is this the first time you are / you've been here?

13 I need a new job. I'm doing / I've been doing the same job for too long.

14 'Anna has gone out.' 'Oh, has she? What time did she go / has she gone ?'

15 'You look tired.' 'Yes. I've played / I've been playing basketball.'

16 Where are you coming / do you come from? Are you American?

17 I'd like to see Tina again. It's a long time since I saw her / that I didn't see her .

18 Robert and Maria have been married since 20 years / for 20 years .

Complete each question using a suitable verb.

1 a: I'm looking for Paul. Have you seen him? b: Yes, he was here a moment ago.

2 a: Why yow go to bed so early last night? b: I was feeling very tired.

3 a: Where ?

b: Just to the shop at the end of the street. I'll be back in a few minutes.

4 a: TV every evening? b: No, only if there's something special on.

5 a: Your house is very beautiful. How long here?

b: Nearly ten years.

6 a: How was your holiday? a nice time? b: Yes, thanks. It was great.

7 a: Sarah recently? b: Yes, we had lunch together a few days ago.

8 a: Can you describe the woman you saw? What ? b: A red sweater and black jeans.

9 a: I'm sorry to keep you waiting. long? b: No, only about ten minutes.

10 a: How long you to get to work in the morning? b: Usually about 45 minutes. It depends on the traffic.

11 a: a horse before? b: No, this is the first time. I'm a little nervous.

12 a: to the United States?

b: No, never, but I went to Canada a few years ago.

Additional exercises

[image]

Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1 a: What's the new restaurant like? Is it good?

b: I've no idea. I've never been there.

2 a: How well do you know Ben?

b: Very well. We since we were children.

3 a: Did you enjoy your holiday?

b: Yes, it was really good. It's the best holiday

4 a: Is David still here?

b: No, I'm afraid he isn't. about ten minutes ago.

5 a: I like your suit. I haven't seen it before.

b: It's new. It's the first time

6 a: How did you cut your knee?

b: I slipped and fell when tennis.

7 a: Do you ever go swimming?

b: Not these days. I haven't a long time.

8 a: How often do you go to the cinema?

b: Very rarely. It's nearly a year to the cinema.

9 a: I've bought some new shoes. Do you like them?

b: Yes, they're very nice. Where them?

Present and past

Units 1-17, 110, Appendix 2

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form: past simple (I did), past continuous (I was doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

[image]

MB

[image]

[image]

[image]

Yesterday afternoon Sarah went (go) to the station to meet Paul. When she (get) there, Paul (already / wait) for her. His train (arrive) early.

[image]

[image]

When I got home, Ben (lie) on the sofa. The TV was on, but he (not / watch) it. He (fall) asleep and (snore) loudly. I (turn) the TV off and just then he (wake) up.

J

Additional exercises

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Last night I (just / go) to bed and (read)

a book when suddenly I (hear) a noise. I

(get) up to see what it was, but I (not / see) anything, so I (go) back to bed.

® [checkin] f Where's my passport? J ^<Rport

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

[image]

Lisa had to go to New York last week, but she almost (miss) the

plane. She (stand) in the queue at the check-in desk when she

suddenly (realise) that she (leave) her

passport at home. Fortunately she lives near the airport, so she (have)

time to take a taxi home to get it. She (get) back to the airport

just in time for her flight.

[image]

Did you Have <k good game? ,

Yes, great?)

[image]

Come and Have a, drink.

I'm sorry, but ...

[image]

I (meet) Peter and Lucy yesterday as I
(walk) through the park. They (be) to the sports centre where they
(play) tennis. They (go) to a cafe and
(invite) me to join them, but I (arrange)
to meet another friend and (not / have) time.

Make sentences from the words in brackets. Put the verb into the correct form: present perfect (I have done), present perfect continuous (I have been doing), past perfect (I had done) or past perfect continuous (I had been doing).

1 Amanda is sitting on the ground. She's out of breath, (she/run) She Has been running

2 Where's my bag? I left it under this chair, (somebody/take / it)

3 We were all surprised when Jess and Nick got married last year, (they / only / know / each other / a few weeks)

4 It's still raining. I wish it would stop, (it / rain / all day)

5 Suddenly I woke up. I was confused and didn't know where I was. (I / dream)

Additional exercises

6 I wasn't hungry at lunchtime, so I didn't have anything to eat. (I / have / a big breakfast)

7 Every year Robert and Tina spend a few days at the same hotel by the sea. (they / go / there for years)

8 I've got a headache.

(I / have / it / since I got up)

9 Next month Gary is going to run in a marathon, (he / train / very hard for it)

[image]

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form.

Sarah and Joe are old friends. They meet by chance at a train station.

sarah: Hello, Joe. (1) (I/not/see)

you for ages. How are you? joe: I'm fine. How about you?

(2) (you / look) good.

sarah: Thanks. You too.

So, (3) (you / go) somewhere or

(4) (you / meet) somebody?

joe: (5) (I / go) to London for a business meeting.

sarah: Oh. (6) (you / often / go) away on business?

joe: Quite often, yes. And you? Where (7) (you/go)?

sarah: Nowhere. (8) (I / meet) a friend.

Unfortunately her train (9) (be) delayed -

(10) (I / wait) here for nearly an hour.

joe: How are your children?

sarah: They're all fine, thanks. The youngest (11) (just / start)

school.

joe: How (12) (she / get) on?

(13) (she / like) it?

sarah: Yes, (14) (she / think) it's great.

joe: (15) (you / work) at the moment? The last time I

(16) (speak) to you, (17)

(you / work) in a travel agency. sarah: That's right. Unfortunately the company (18) (go) out

of business a couple of months after (19) (I / start) work there, so (20) (I / lose) my job.

joe: And (21) (you / not / have) a job since then?

sarah: Not a permanent job. (22) (I / have) a few temporary jobs. By the way, (23) (you / see) Matt recently?

joe: Matt? He's in Canada.

sarah: Really? How long (24) (he / be) in Canada?

joe: About a year now. (25) (I / see) him a few days before (26) (he/go). (27) (he / be)

unemployed for months, so (28) (he / decide) to try his luck somewhere else. (29) (he / really / look forward) to going.

sarah: So, what (30) (he / do) there?

joe: I have no idea. (31) (I / not / hear) from him since (32) (he / leave). Anyway, I have to go and catch my train.

It was really nice to see you again. sarah: You too. Bye. Have a good trip.
joe: Thanks. Bye.

Additional exercises

[image]

Put the verb into the most suitable form.

1 Who (invent) the bicycle?

2 'Do you still have a headache?' 'No, (it / go). I'm OK now.'

3 I was the last to leave the office last night. Everybody else (go) home when I (leave).

4 What (you/do) last weekend?

(you / go) away?

5 I like your car. How long (you / have) it?

6 It's a shame the trip was cancelled. I (look) forward to it.

7 Jane is an experienced teacher and loves her job (she / teach)

for 15 years.

8 (I / buy) a new jacket last week, but

(I / not / wear) it yet.

9 A few days ago (I / see) a man at a party whose face (be)

very familiar. At first I couldn't think where (I / see)

him before. Then suddenly (I / remember) who (it / be).

10 (you / hear) of Agatha Christie? (she / be)

a writer who (die) in 1976 (she / write)

more than 70 detective novels (you / read) any of them?

11 a: What (thisword/mean)?

b: I've no idea. (I / never / see) it before. Look it up in the dictionary.

12 a: (you / get) to the theatre in time for the play last night?

b: No, we were late. By the time we got there,
(it / already / start).

13 I went to Sarah's room and (knock) on the door, but there
(be) no answer. Either (she / go) out
or (she / not / want) to see anyone.

14 Patrick asked me how to use the photocopier (he/never/
use) it before, so (he / not / know) what to do.

15 Lisa (go) for a swim after work yesterday.
(she / need) some exercise because
(she / sit) in an office all day in front of a computer.

Past continuous and used to

Units 6,18

[image]

Complete the sentences using the past continuous (was/were -ing) or used to Use the verb in brackets.

1 I haven't been to the cinema for ages now. We used to go a lot. (go)

2 Ann didn't see me wave to her. She lookbnq jn the other direction, (look)

3 I a lot, but I don't use my car very much these days, (drive)

4 I asked the taxi driver to slow down. She too fast, (drive)

5 Rosemary and Jonathan met for the first time when they in the same bank, (work)

6 When I was a child, I a lot of bad dreams, (have)

7 I wonder what Joe is doing these days. He in Spain when I last heard from him. (live)

8 'Where were you yesterday afternoon?' 'I volleyball.' (play)

9 'Do you do any sports?' 'Not these days, but I volleyball.' (play)

10 George looked very nice at the party. He a very smart suit, (wear)

Additional exercises

The future

Units 19-25, Appendix 3

[image]

[image]

What do you say to your friend in these situations? Use the words given in brackets. Use the present continuous (I am doing), going to or will (I'll).

1 You have made all your holiday arrangements. Your destination is Jamaica. friend: Have you decided where to go for your holiday yet?

you:)!\$ ^oiy\q bo Jamaica. (I/go)

2 You have made an appointment with the dentist for Friday morning. friend: Shall we meet on Friday morning?

you: I can't on Friday. (I / go)

3 You and some friends are planning a holiday in Spain. You have decided to hire a car, but you haven't arranged this yet.

friend: How do you plan to travel round Spain? By train?

you: No, (we / hire)

4 Your friend has two young children. She wants to go out tomorrow evening. You offer to look after the children.

friend: I want to go out tomorrow evening, but I don't have a babysitter.

you: That's no problem. (I / look after)

5 You have already arranged to have lunch with Sue tomorrow. friend: Are you free at lunchtime tomorrow?

you: No, (have lunch)

6 You are in a restaurant. You and your friend are looking at the menu. Maybe your friend has decided what to have. You ask her/him.

you: What ... ? (you / have)

friend: I don't know. I can't make up my mind.

7 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and your friend is having trouble reading. You decide to turn on the light.

friend: It's getting a bit dark, isn't it? It's difficult to read.

you: Yes. (I / turn on)

8 You and a friend are reading. It's getting a bit dark and you decide to turn on the light. You stand up and walk towards the light switch.

friend: What are you doing?

you: (I / turn on)

Put the verb into the most suitable form. Use a present tense (simple or continuous), will (I'll) or shall.

Conversation 1 (in the morning)

jenny: (1) Are you doing (you / do) anything tomorrow evening, Helen?

helen: No, why?

jenny: Well, would you like to go to the cinema? Strangers on a Plane is on. I want to see it, but I

don't want to go alone. helen: OK, (2) (I / come) with you. What time (3) (we / meet)?

jenny: Well, the film (4) (start) at 8.45, so

(5) (I / meet) you at about 8.30 outside the cinema, OK?

helen: Fine. (6) (I / see) Tina later this evening.

(7) (I / ask) her if she wants to come too?

jenny: Yes, do that. (8) (I / see) you tomorrow then. Bye.

Additional exercises

[image]

Conversation 2 (later the same day)

helen: Jenny and I (9) (go) to the cinema tomorrow night to see

Strangers on a Plane. Why don't you come too?

tina: I'd love to come. What time (10) (the film / start)?

helen: 8.45.

tina: (11) (you / meet) outside the cinema?

helen: Yes, at 8.30. Is that OK for you?

tina: Yes, (12) (I / be) there at 8.30.

Put the verb into the most suitable form. Sometimes there is more than one possibility.

1 A has decided to learn a language.

a: I've decided to try and learn a foreign language.

b: Have you? Which language (1) are you going to Learn (you / learn)? a: Spanish.

b: (2) (you / do) a course?

a: Yes, (3) (it / start) next week.

b: That's great. I'm sure (4) (you / enjoy) it.

a: I hope so. But I think (5) (it / be) difficult.

2 A wants to know about B's holiday plans.

a: I hear (i) (you / go) on holiday soon.

b: That's right. (2) (we / go) to Finland.

a: I hope (3) (you / have) a nice time.

b: Thanks. (4) (I / send) you a postcard and

(5) (I / get) in touch with you when

(6) (I / get) back.

3 A invites B to a party.

a: (1) (I / have) a party next Saturday. Can you come?

b: On Saturday? I'm not sure. Some friends of mine (2) (come)

to stay with me next week, but I think (3) (they / leave)

by Saturday. But if (4) (they / be) still here,

(5) (I / not / be) able to come to the party.

a: OK. Well, tell me as soon as (6) (you / know).

b: Right. (7) (I / call) you during the week.

4 A and B are two secret agents arranging a meeting. They are talking on the phone.

a: Well, what time (1) (we/meet)?

b: Come to the cafe by the station at 4 o'clock.

(2) (I / wait) for you

when (3) (you / arrive).

(4) (I / sit) by the window

and (5) (I / wear) a bright green sweater

a: OK. (6) (Agent 307 / come) too?

b: No, she can't be there.

a: Oh. (7) (I / bring) the documents?

b: Yes. (8) (I / explain) everything when

(9) (I / see) you. And don't be late.

a: OK. (10) (I/try) to be on time.

[image]

Additional exercises

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form. Choose from the following:

present continuous (I am doing) will ('I'll) / won't present simple (I do) will
be doing

going to (I'm going to do) shall

1 I feel a bit hungry. I think (I / have) something to eat.

2 Why are you putting on your coat? (you / go) somewhere?

3 What time (I / phone) you tonight? About 7.30?

4 Look! That plane is flying towards the airport. (it / land).

5 We must do something soon, before (it / be) too late.

6 I'm sorry you've decided to leave the company (I / miss) you
when (you / go).

7 (I / give) you my phone number? If
(I / give) you my number, (you / call) me?

8 Are you still watching that programme? What time (it /end)?

9 (I / go) to a wedding next weekend. A friend of mine
(get) married.

10 I'm not ready yet. (I / tell) you when
(I / be) ready. I promise (I / not / be) very long.

11 a: Where are you going?

b: To the hairdresser's. (I / have) my hair cut.

12 She was very rude to me. I refuse to speak to her again until
(she / apologise).

13 I wonder where (we / live) ten years from now?

14 What do you plan to do when (you / finish) your course at
college?

Past, present and future

Units 1-25

[image]

Use your own ideas to complete B's sentences.

1 a: How did the accident happen?

b: I f ^ too fast and couldn't stop in time.

2 a: Is that a new camera?

b: No, I it a long time.

3 a: Is that a new computer?

b: Yes, I it a few weeks ago.

4 a: I can't talk to you right now. You can see I'm very busy.

b: OK. I back in about half an hour.

5 a: This is a nice restaurant. Do you come here often?

b: No, it's the first time I here.

6 a: Do you do any sport?

b: No, I football, but I gave it up.

7 a: I'm sorry I'm late.

b: That's OK. I long.

8 a: When you went to the US last year, was it your first visit?

b: No, I there twice before.

9 a: Do you have any plans for the weekend?

b: Yes, I to a party on Saturday night.

10 a: Do you know what Steve's doing these days?

b: No, I him for ages.

11 a: Will you still be here by the time I get back?

b: No, I by then.

Additional exercises

[image]

Robert is travelling in North America. He sends an email to a friend in Winnipeg (Canada). Put the verb into the most suitable form.

CANADA

Winnipeg

^—Minneapolis T^" Kansas City

rs r\

CD

Delete

m

Junk

Reply

Reply Ait Forward

Prim

To Do

Subject: To:

Hi

(1) I've just omve^i (I / just / arrive) in Minneapolis. (2)

(I / travel) for more than a month now, and (3) (I / begin) to

think about coming home. Everything (4) (I / see) so far

(5) (be) really interesting, and (6) (I / meet)

some really kind people.

(7) (I / leave) Kansas City a week ago. (8)

(I / stay) there with Emily, the aunt of a friend from college. She was really helpful and

hospitable and although (9) (I / plan) to stay only a couple of

days, (10) (I / end up) staying more than a week.

(11) (I / enjoy) the journey from Kansas City to here.

(12) (I / take) the Greyhound bus and (13) (meet)

some really interesting people - everybody was really friendly.

So now I'm here, and (14) (I / stay) here for a few days before

(15) (I / continue) up to Canada. I'm not sure exactly when

(16) (I / get) to Winnipeg - it depends what happens while

(17) (I / be) here. But (18) (I / let) you know as soon as (19) (I / know) myself.

(20) (I / stay) with a family here - they're friends of some

people I know at home. Tomorrow (21) (we / visit) some people

they know who (22) (build) a house in the mountains. It isn't

finished yet, but (23) (it / be) interesting to see what it's like.

Anyway, that's all for now. Robert

(24) (I / be) in touch again soon.

Modal verbs (can/must/would etc.)

Units 26-36, Appendix 4

[image]

Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two of the alternatives are possible.

1 'What time will you be home tonight?' 'I'm not sure. I late.' (A) may be (B) might be C can be (both A and B are correct)

2 I can't find the theatre tickets. They out of my pocket. A must have fallen B should have fallen C had to fall

3 Somebody ran in front of the car as I was driving. Fortunately I just in time.

A could stop B could have stopped C managed to stop

4 We've got plenty of time. We yet.

A mustn't leave B needn't leave C don't need to leave

Additional exercises

[image]

5 I out but I didn't feel like it, so I stayed at home.

A could go B could have gone C must have gone

6 I'm sorry I come to your party last week.

A couldn't come B couldn't have come C wasn't able to come

7 'What do you think of my theory?' 'I'm not sure. You right.'

A could be B must be C might be

8 I couldn't wait for you any longer. I , and so I went. A must go B must have gone C had to go

9 'Do you know where Sarah is?' 'No. I suppose she shopping.'

A should have gone B may have gone C could have gone

10 At first they didn't believe me when I told them what had happened, but in the end I them that I was telling the truth.

A was able to convince B managed to convince C could convince

11 I promised I'd call Gary this evening. I

A mustn't forget B needn't forget C don't have to forget

12 Why did you leave without me? You forme. A must have waited B had to wait C should have waited

13 Lisa called me and suggested lunch together. A we have B we should have C to have

14 You look nice in that jacket, but you hardly ever wear it it more often.

A You'd better wear B You should wear C You ought to wear

15 Shall I buy a car? What's your advice? What ? A will you do B would you do C shall you do

Complete the sentences using the words in brackets.

1 Don't phone them now.

They wujHjb be Having lunch, (might / have)

2 I've eaten too much. Now I feel sick.

I so much, (shouldn't / eat)

3 I wonder why Tom didn't phone me.

He (must / forget)

4 Why did you go home so early?

You home so early, (needn't / go)

5 You've signed the contract.

It now. (can't / change)

6 'What's Linda doing?' 'I'm not sure.'

She TV. (may / watch)

7 Laura was standing outside the cinema.

She for somebody, (must / wait)

8 He was in prison at the time that the crime was committed.

He it. (couldn't / do)

9 Why weren't you here earlier?

You here earlier, (ought / be)

10 Why didn't you ask me to help you?

I you. (would / help)

11 I'm surprised you weren't told that the road was dangerous.

You about it. (should / warn)

12 Gary was in a strange mood yesterday.

He very well, (might not / feel)

Additional exercises

[image]

Complete B's sentences using can/could/might/must/should/would + the verb in brackets. In some sentences you need to use have: must have ... / should have ... etc. In some sentences you need the negative (can't/couldn't etc.).

1 a: I'm hungry.

b: But you've just had lunch. You cWt be hungry already, (be)

2 a: I haven't seen our neighbours for ages.

b: No. They Hcive gone away, (go)

3 a: What's the weather like? Is it raining?

b: Not at the moment, but it later, (rain)

4 a: Where's Julia?

b: I'm not sure. She out. (go)

5 a: I didn't see you at Michael's party last week.

b: No, I had to work that night, so I . (go)

6 a: I think I saw you at Michael's party last week.

b: No, you me. I didn't go to Michael's party, (see)

7 a: What time will we get to Sue's house?

b: Well, it takes about one and a half hours, so if we leave at 3 o'clock, we there by 4.30. (get)

8 a: When was the last time you saw Bill?

b: Years ago. I him if I saw him now. (recognise)

9 a: Did you hear the explosion? b: What explosion?

a: There was a loud explosion about an hour ago. You it. (hear)

10 a: We weren't sure which way to go. In the end we turned right.

b: You went the wrong way. You left, (turn)

if (conditional)

Units 25, 38-40

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form.

1 If you . -found a wallet in the street, what would you do with it? (you / find)

2 I must hurry. My friend will be annoyed if ! W. Mfe on time. (I / not / be)

3 I didn't realise that Gary was in hospital. If J d known he was in hospital, I would have gone to visit him. (I / know)

4 If the phone , can you answer it? (ring)

5 I can't decide what to do. What would you do if in my position?

(you / be)

6 a: What shall we do tomorrow?

b: Well, if a nice day, we can go to the beach, (it / be)

7 a: Let's go to the beach.

b: No, it's too cold. If warmer, I wouldn't mind going, (it / be)

8 a: Did you go to the beach yesterday?

B: No, it was too cold. If warmer, we might have gone, (it / be)

9 If enough money to go anywhere in the world, where would you go?

(you / have)

10 I'm glad we had a map. I'm sure we would have got lost if one. (we / not / have)

11 The accident was your fault. If more carefully, it wouldn't have happened, (you / drive)

12 a: Why do you read newspapers?

b: Well, if newspapers, I wouldn't know what was happening in the world. (I / not / read)

Additional exercises

[image]

[image]

P Complete the sentences.

1 Lisa is tired all the time. She shouldn't go to bed so late. If Lisa didn't go to bed so late, she wouldn't be tired all the time.

2 It's getting late. I don't think Sarah will come to see us now. I'd be surprised if Sarah to see us now.

3 I'm sorry I disturbed you. I didn't know you were busy. If you were busy, I you.

4 I don't want them to be upset, so I've decided not to tell them what happened.

upset if I tell them what happened.

5 The dog attacked you, but only because you frightened it. If you didn't frighten the dog, it wouldn't attack you.

6 Unfortunately I didn't have an umbrella and so I got very wet in the rain. I wouldn't have been so wet if I had an umbrella.

7 Martin failed his driving test. He was very nervous and that's why he failed. If he wasn't so nervous, he would have passed the test.

Use your own ideas to complete the sentences.

1 I'd go out tonight if

2 I'd have gone out last night if

3 If you hadn't reminded me,

4 If I had my camera,....

5 If you give me the camera,

6 Who would you phone if

7 We wouldn't have been late if

- 8 If I'd been able to get a ticket,
9 If I'd done better at the interview,
10 You wouldn't be hungry now if
11 Cities would be nicer places if
12 If there was no TV,

[image]

[image]

Units 42-45

Put the verb into the most suitable passive form.

- 1 There's somebody behind us. I think we're being -followed (we/follow).
2 A mystery is something that cWt be exploded, (can't / explain).
3 We didn't play football yesterday. The game (cancel).
4 The TV (repair). It's working again now.
5 In the middle of the village there is a church which (restore) at the moment. The work is almost finished.
6 The tower is the oldest part of the church (it / believe) to be over 600 years old.
7 If I didn't do my job properly, (I / would / sack).
8 a: I left a newspaper on the desk last night and it isn't there now.
b: (it / might / throw) away.
9 I learnt to swim when I was very young. (I / teach) by my mother.
10 After (arrest), I was taken to the police station.

11 ' (you / ever / arrest)?' 'No, never.'

12 Two people (report) to (injure) in an explosion at a factory in Birmingham early this morning.

Additional exercises

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form, active or passive.

1 This house is quite old. It, WM..M&b (build) over 100 years ago.

2 My grandfather was a builder. He built (build) this house many years ago.

3 'Is your car still for sale?' 'No, I (sell) it.'

4 a: Is the house at the end of the street still for sale? b: No, it (sell).

5 Sometimes mistakes (make). It's inevitable.

6 I wouldn't leave your car unlocked. It (might / steal).

7 My bag has disappeared. It (must / steal).

8 I can't find my hat. Somebody (must / take) it by mistake.

9 It's a serious problem. I don't know how it (can / solve).

10 We didn't leave early enough. We (should / leave) earlier.

11 Nearly every time I travel by plane, my flight (delay).

12 A new bridge (build) across the river. Work started last year and the bridge (expect) to open next year.

Read these newspaper reports and put the verbs into the most suitable form.

Castle Fire

J

ROAD DELAYS [

Winton Castle (i) was (Lamaqed, (damage) Repair work started yesterday on the

in a fire last night. The fire, which

Paxham-Longworth road. The road

(2)

(discover) at about (1) (resurface)

9 o'clock, spread very quickly. Nobody (3) (injure), but two

and there will be long delays. Drivers

(2) (ask) to use

people had to (4) an alternative route if possible. The work

(rescue) from an upstairs room. A number of (3) (expect) to

paintings (5) last two weeks. Next Sunday the road

(believe / destroy). (4) (close), and

It (6)

(not / know) how the fire started.

traffic (5) (divert).

SHOP ROBBERY

®

Accident I

A woman (1) (take)

(force) to hand to hospital after her car collided with a

lorry near Norstock yesterday. She (2) (allow)

In Paxham yesterday a shop assistant

(1)

over £500 after (2)

(threaten) by a man with a knife. The man

escaped in a car which (3) home later after treatment. The road

(steal) earlier in the day. (3) (block)

The car (4)

(later / find) in a car park where it (5)

thief. A man (6)

(arrest) in connection with the robbery and

(7)

for an hour after the accident, and traffic had to (4) (divert), (abandon) by
the A police inspector said afterwards: 'The

woman was lucky. She could (5) (kill)-'

V

(still / question) by the police.

Additional exercises

Reported speech

Units 47-48, 50

[image]

Complete the sentences using reported speech

CD

Can I speak to Paul, please?^

[image]

I'll try again later)

[image]

Paul has gone out. I don't know when he'll be back. Do you want to leave a message?

A woman phoned at lunchtime yesterday and asked .M couUL speak to Paul . I told

and

I asked

but she said later. But she never did.

We have no record of a reservation in your name.

We're sorry but the hotel is full

[image]

Do you have any » rooms free anyway?

I went to London recently, but my visit didn't begin well. I had reserved a hotel room, but

when I got to the hotel they told

When I asked

they said , but

There was nothing I could do. I just had to look for somewhere else to stay.

CD (why

are you visiting the country

(how long do you intend to stay ;

AAAAAAAAA

[image]

i

IMMIGRATION *

[image]

We're on holiday.^

Where will you be — -y ^staying during your v ' s ' t ' > v f^ g,j |

After getting off the plane, we had to queue for an hour to get through immigration. Finally

it was our turn. The immigration official asked us

, and we told

Then he wanted to know and

He seemed satisfied with our answers, checked our passports and wished us a pleasant stay.

I'll phone you from the airport when I arrive.

[image]

[image]

Don't come to the airport. I'll take the bus.

SUE

a: What time is Sue arriving this afternoon? b: About three. She said

us

a: Aren't you going to meet her?

b: No, she said She said

J

Additional exercises

f^f ^What's your job?)

[image]

[image]

How much do you earn?)

[image]

Mind your own business!)

[image]

YOU

A few days ago a man phoned from a marketing company and started asking me questions.

He wanted to know and asked

. I don't like people phoning and asking questions like that, so I told and I put the phone down.

* Vn. i ..— .. III . , _ — —

now

[image]

earlier

know where the restaurant is^

PAUL

[image]

Phone me if there's any problem.)

Louise and Sarah are in a restaurant waiting for Paul.

louise: I wonder where Paul is. He said

sarah: Maybe he's got lost.

louise: I don't think so. He said

And I told

m

Q'm not hungry

don't like bananas, so don't buy any

[image]

JOE

JANE

Five minutes later

joe: Is there anything to eat?

jane: You just said

joe: Well, I am now. I'd love a banana. jane: A banana? But you said You told

-ingand to ...

Units 53-66

[image]

Put the verb into the correct form.

1 How old were you when you learnt to drive ? (drive)

- 2 I don't mind walking home, but I'd rather get a taxi, (walk, get)
- 3 I can't make a decision. I keep my mind, (change)
- 4 He had made his decision and refused his mind, (change)
- 5 Why did you change your decision? What made you your mind? (change)
- 6 It was a really good holiday. I really enjoyed by the sea again, (be)
- 7 Did I really tell you I was unhappy? I don't remember that, (say)
- 8 'Remember Tom tomorrow.' 'OK. I won't forget.' (call)

Additional exercises

[image]

- 9 The water here is not very good. I'd avoid it if I were you. (drink)
- 10 I pretended interested in the conversation, but really it was very boring, (be)
- 11 I got up and looked out of the window what the weather was like, (see)
- 12 I have a friend who claims able to speak five languages, (be)
- 13 I like carefully about things before a decision, (think, make)
- 14 I had a flat in the centre of town but I didn't like there, so I decided . (live, move)
- 15 Steve used a footballer. He had to stop because of an injury, (be, play)
- 16 After by the police, the man admitted the car, but denied at 100 miles an hour, (stop, steal, drive)
- 17 a: How do you make this machine ? (work)

b: I'm not sure. Try that button and see what happens, (press)

Make sentences from the words in brackets.

1 I can't find the tickets. (I / seem / lose / them)

I seem to have lost them.

2 I don't have far to go. (it / not / worth / take / a taxi)

It's not a long way to the bank.

3 I'm feeling a bit tired. (I / not / fancy / go / out)

4 Tim isn't very reliable, (he / tend / forget / things)

5 I've got a lot of luggage, (you / mind / help / me?)

6 There's nobody at home, (everybody / seem / go out)

7 We don't like our apartment, (we / think / move)

8 The vase was very valuable. (I / afraid / touch / it)

9 Ben never carries a lot of money with him. (he / afraid / robbed)

10 I wouldn't go to see the film, (it / not / worth / see)

11 I'm very tired after that long walk. (I / not / used / walk / so far)

12 Sue is on holiday. I received a postcard from her yesterday, (she / seem / enjoy / herself)

13 Dan had lots of photographs he'd taken while on holiday, (he / insist / show / them to me)

14 I don't want to do the shopping. (I'd rather / somebody else / do / it)

Additional exercises

P Complete the second sentence so that the meaning is similar to the first.

1 I was surprised I passed the exam.

I didn't expect to pass the exam

2 Did you manage to solve the problem?

Did you succeed in solving the problem ?

3 I don't read newspapers any more.

I've given up

4 I'd prefer not to go out tonight.

I'd rather

5 He finds it difficult to sleep at night.

He has trouble

6 Shall I phone you this evening?

Do you want ?

7 Nobody saw me come in.

I came in without

8 They said I was a cheat.

I was accused

9 It will be good to see them again.

I'm looking forward

10 What do you think I should do?

What do you advise me ?

11 It's a pity I couldn't go out with you last night.

I'd like

12 I wish I'd taken your advice.

I regret

a/an and the

Units 69-76

[image]

Put in a/an or the where necessary. Leave the space empty if the sentence is already complete.

1 I don't usually like staying at ~ hotels, but last summer we spent two weeks at very nice hotel by the sea.

2 If you go to live in foreign country, you should try and learn language.

3 Helen is economist. She lives in United States and works for investment company.

4 I love sport, especially tennis. I play two or three times week if I can, but I'm not very good player.

5 I won't be home for dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after work and we're going to cinema.

6 When unemployment is high, it's difficult for people to find work. It's big problem.

7 There was accident as I was going home last night. Two people were taken to

hospital. I think most accidents are caused by people driving too fast.

8 a: What's name of hotel where you're staying?

b: Ambassador. It's in Queen Street in city centre. It's near station.

9 I have two brothers older one is training to be pilot with British

Airways. younger one is still at school. When he leaves school, he wants to go to university to study law.

Additional exercises

Pronouns and determiners

Units 82-91

[image]

Which alternatives are correct? Sometimes only one alternative is correct, and sometimes two alternatives are possible.

1 I don't remember about the accident. ® anything B something C nothing
(A is correct)

2 Chris and I have known for quite a long time. A us B each other C ourselves

3 'How often do the buses run?' ' twenty minutes.'

A All B Each C Every

4 I shouted for help, but came. A nobody B no-one C anybody

5 Last night we went out with some friends of A us B our C ours

6 It didn't take us a long time to get here. traffic. A It wasn't much B There wasn't much C It wasn't a lot

7 Can I have milk in my coffee, please? A a little B any C some

8 Sometimes I find it difficult to

A concentrate B concentrate me C concentrate myself

9 There's on at the cinema that I want to see, so there's no point in going.

A something B anything C nothing

10 I drink water every day. A much B a lot of C lots of

11 in the centre are open on Sunday.

A Most of shops B Most of the shops C The most of the shops

12 There were about twenty people in the photo. I didn't recognise of them.

A any B none C either

13 I've been waiting for Sarah to phone.

A all morning B the whole morning C all the morning

14 I can't afford to buy anything in this shop. so expensive. A All is B Everything is C All are

Adjectives and adverbs

[image]

Units 98-108

w

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Correct the sentences where necessary. Write 'OK' if the sentence is already correct.

1 The building was total destroyed in the fire. totally destroyed

2 I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story. OK

3 The city is very polluted. It's the more polluted place I've ever been to.

4 I was disappointing that I didn't get the job. I was well-qualified and the interview went well.

5 It's warm today, but there's quite a strong wind.

6 Joe works hardly, but he doesn't get paid very much.

7 The company's offices are in a modern large building.

8 Dan is a very fast runner. I wish I could run as fast as him

Additional exercises

9 I missed the three last days of the course because I was ill.

10 You don't look happy. What's the matter?

11 The weather has been unusual cold for the time of the year.

12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in it.

13 I got impatient because we had to wait so long time.

14 Is this box big enough or do you need a bigger one?

15 This morning I got up more early than usual.

Conjunctions

Units 25,38,112-118

Which is correct?

1 I'll try to be on time, but don't worry if / when I'm late, (if is correct)

2 Don't throw that bag away. If / When you don't want it, I'll have it.

3 Please report to reception if / when you arrive at the hotel.

4 We've arranged to go to the beach tomorrow, but we won't go if / when it's raining.

5 Tanya is in her final year at school. She still doesn't know what she's going to do if / when she leaves.

6 What would you do if / when you lost your keys?

7 I hope I'll be able to come to the party, but I'll let you know if / unless I can't.

8 I don't want to be disturbed, so don't phone me if / unless it's something important.

9 Please sign the contract if / unless you're happy with the conditions.

10 I like travelling by ship as long as / unless the sea is not rough.

11 You might not remember the name of the hotel, so write it down if / in case you forget it.

12 It's not cold now, but take your coat with you if / in case it gets cold later.

13 Take your coat with you and then you can put it on if / in case it gets cold later.

14 They always have the TV on, even if / if nobody is watching it.

15 Even / Although I left home early, I got to work late.

16 Despite / Although we've known each other a long time, we're not particularly close friends.

17 'When did you leave school?' 'As / When I was 17.'

18 I think Ann will be very pleased as / when she hears the news.

Prepositions (time)

Units 12,119-122

during for since by

until

10 11 12 13 14 15

Tuesday morning.

Put in one of the following: at on in

1 Jack has gone away. He'll be back M a week.

2 We're having a party Saturday. Can you come? I've got an interview next week. It's 9.30 Sue isn't usually here weekends. She goes away. The train service is very good. The trains are nearly always time. It was a confusing situation. Many things were happening the same time. I couldn't decide whether or not to buy the sweater. the end I decided not to.

8 The road is busy all the time, even night.

9 I met a lot of nice people my stay in New York. I saw Helen Friday, but I haven't seen her then. Robert has been doing the same job five years.

Lisa's birthday is the end of March. I'm not sure exactly which day it is.

We have some friends staying with us the moment. They're staying Friday.

If you're interested in applying for the job, your application must be received Friday. I'm just going out. I won't be long - I'll be back ten minutes.

Additional exercises

Prepositions (position and other uses)

Units 123-128 v

[image]

Put in the missing preposition.

1 I'd love to be able to visit every country the world.

2 Jessica White is my favourite author. Have you read anything her?

3 'Is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, there's one the end of this road.'

4 Tim is away at the moment. He's holiday.

5 We live the country, a long way from the nearest town.

6 I've got a stain my jacket. I'll have to have it cleaned.

7 We went a party Lisa's house on Saturday.

8 Boston is the east coast of the United States.

9 Look at the leaves that tree. They're a beautiful colour.

10 'Have you ever been Tokyo?' 'No, I've never been Japan.'

11 Mozart died Vienna in 1791 the age of 35.

12 'Are you this photo?' 'Yes, that's me, the left.'

13 We went the theatre last night. We had seats the front row.

14 'Where's the light switch?' 'It's the wall the door.'

15 It was late when we arrived the hotel.

16 I couldn't decide what to eat. There was nothing the menu that I liked.

17 We live a tower block. Our apartment is the fifteenth floor.

18 a: What did you think of the film?

b: Some parts were a bit stupid, but the whole I enjoyed it.

19 'When you paid the restaurant bill, did you pay cash?' 'No, I paid credit card.'

20 'How did you get here? Did you come the bus?' 'No, car.'

21 a: I wonder what's TV this evening. Do you have a newspaper? b: Yes, the TV programmes are the back page.

22 Helen works for a telecommunications company. She works.... the customer services

department.

23 Anna spent two years working Chicago before returning Italy.

24 'Did you enjoy your trip the beach?' 'Yes, it was great.'

25 Next summer we're going a trip to Canada.

Noun/adjective + prepositions

Units 129-131

[image]

Put in the missing preposition.

1 The plan has been changed, but nobody seems to know the reason this.

2 Don't ask me to decide. I'm not very good making decisions.

3 Some people say that Sue is unfriendly, but she's always very nice me.

4 What do you think is the best solution the problem?

5 There has been a big increase the price of oil recently.

6 He lives a rather lonely life. He doesn't have much contact other people.

7 Paul is a keen photographer. He likes taking pictures people.

8 Michael got married a woman he met when he was studying at college.

9 He's very brave. He's not afraid anything.

10 I'm surprised the amount of traffic today. I didn't think it would be so busy.

11 Thank you for lending me the guidebook. It was full useful information.

12 I'm afraid I've had to change my plans, so I can't meet you tomorrow.
I'm sorry

that.

Additional exercises

Verb + preposition

Units 132-136

[image]

Complete each sentence with a preposition where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.

1 She works quite hard. You can't accuse her being lazy.

- 2 Who's going to look your children while you're at work?
- 3 The problem is becoming serious. We have to discuss it.
- 4 The problem is becoming serious. We have to do something it.
- 5 I prefer this chair the other one. It's more comfortable.
- 6 I need to phone the office to tell them I won't be at work today.
- 7 The river divides the city two parts.
- 8 'What do you think your new boss?' 'She's all right, I suppose.'
- 9 Can somebody please explain me what I have to do?
- 10 I said hello to her, but she didn't answer me.
- 11 'Do you like staying at hotels?' 'It depends the hotel.'
- 12 'Have you ever been to Borla?' 'No, I've never heard it. Where is it?'
- 13 You remind me somebody I knew a long time ago. You look just like her.
- 14 This is wonderful news! I can't believe it.
- 15 George is not an idealist - he believes being practical.
- 16 What's funny? What are you laughing ?
- 17 What did you do with all the money you had? What did you spend it ?
- 18 If Alex asks you money, don't give him any.
- 19 I apologised Sarah keeping her waiting so long.
- 20 Lisa was very helpful. I thanked her everything she'd done.

Phrasal verbs

w

Units 137-145

A says something and B replies. Which goes with which?

A V s . .

S

1 I've made o mistake on this form.

2 I'm too warm with my coat on.

3 This jacket looks nice.

4 My phone number is 576920.

5 This room is in a mess.

6 What's 45 euros in dollars?

7 How did you find the mistake?

8 I'm not sure whether to accept their offer or not.

9 I need a place to stay when I'm in London.

10 It's a subject he doesn't like to talk about.

11 I don't know what this word means.

A.

B

a Don't worry. I'll clear it up.

b No problem. I can fix it up.

c Kate pointed it out.

d That's OK. Cross i t out and correct it.

e Yes, why don't you try it on?

f OK, I won't bring it up.

g Just a minute. I'll write it down.

h Why don't you take it off then?

i You can look it up.

j I think you should turn it down.

k Give me a moment. I'll work it out.

1 A

2

3

4

5 6 7

8

9

10

11

Additional exercises

[image]

Only one alternative is correct. Which is it?

1 Nobody believed Paul at first but he & to be right. (B is correct) A came out B turned out C worked out D carried out

2 Here's some good news. It will

A turn you up B put you up C blow you up D cheer you up

3 I was annoyed with the way the children were behaving, so I

A told them up B told them off C told them out D told them over

4 The club committee is of the president, the secretary and seven other members. A set up B made up C set out D made out

5 You were going to apply for the job, and then you decided not to. So what ?

A put you off B put you out C turned you off D turned you away

6 I had no idea that he was lying to me. I was completely

A taken in B taken down C taken off D taken over

7 Helen started a course at college, but she after six months.

A went out B fell out C turned out D dropped out

8 You can't predict everything. Often things don't as you expect. A make out B break out C work out D get out

9 Why are all these people here? What's ?

A going off B getting off C going on D getting on

10 It's a very busy airport. There are planes or landing every few minutes.

A going up B taking off C getting up D driving off

11 The traffic was moving slowly because a bus had and was blocking the road. A broken down B fallen down C fallen over D broken up

12 How are you in your new job? Are you enjoying it? A keeping on B going on C carrying on D getting on

Complete the sentences. Use two words each time.

1 Keep away from the edge of the pool. You might fall in.

2 I didn't notice that the two pictures were different until Tanya pointed it me.

3 I asked Dan if he had any suggestions about what we should do, but he didn't come anything.

4 I'm glad Sarah is coming to the party. I'm really looking seeing her again.

5 Things are changing all the time. It's difficult to keep all these changes.

6 I don't want to run food for the party. Are you sure we have enough?

7 Don't let me interrupt you. Carry your work.

8 Steve was very happy in his job until he fell his boss. After that, it was impossible for them to work together, and Steve decided to leave.

9 I've had enough of being treated like this. I'm not going to put it any more.

10 I didn't enjoy the trip very much at the time, but when I look it now, I realise

it was a good experience and I'm glad I went on it.

11 The wedding was supposed to be a secret, so how did you find it? Did Jess tell you?

12 There is a very nice atmosphere in the office where I work. Everybody gets everybody else.

Additional exercises

[image]

[image]

Complete each sentence using a phrasal verb that means the same as the words in brackets.

1 The football match had to be ceiled off because of the weather, (cancelled)

2 The story Kate told wasn't true. She mode if wp . (invented it)

3 A bomb near the station, but no-one was injured, (exploded)

4 Paul finally nearly an hour late, (arrived)

5 Here's an application form. Can you and sign it, please? (complete it)

6 A number of buildings are going to be to make way for the new road,
(demolished)

7 I'm having a few problems with my computer which need to be as soon
as possible, (put right)

8 Be positive! You must never ! (stop trying)

9 I was very tired and in front of the television, (fell asleep)

10 After eight years together, they've decided to . (separate)

11 The noise is terrible. I can't any longer, (tolerate it)

12 We don't have a lot of money, but we have enough to . (manage)

13 I'm sorry I'm late. The meeting longer than I expected, (continued)

14 We need to make a decision today at the latest. We can't any longer,
(delay it)

Complete the sentences. Use one word each time.

1 You're driving too fast. Please slow down.

2 It was only a small fire and I managed to it out with a bucket of water.

3 The house is empty at the moment, but I think the new tenants are in next
week.

4 I've on weight. My clothes don't fit any more.

5 Their house is really nice now. They've it up really well.

6 I was talking to the woman sitting next to me on the plane, and it out that
she works for the same company as my brother.

7 'Do you know what happened?' 'Not yet, but I'm going to out.'

- 8 There's no need to get angry. down!
- 9 If you're going on a long walk, plan your route carefully before you off.
- 10 Sarah has just phoned to say that she'll be late. She's been up.
- 11 You've written my name wrong. It's Martin, not Marin-you out theT.
- 12 Three days at £45 a day - that out at £135.
- 13 We had a really interesting discussion, but Jane didn't in. She just listened.
- 14 Jonathan is pretty fit. He out in the gym every day.
- 15 Come and see us more often. You can in any time you like.
- 16 We are still discussing the contract. There are still a couple of things to out.
- 17 My alarm clock off in the middle of the night and me up.

Study guide

This guide is to help you decide which units you need to study. The sentences in the guide are grouped together (Present and past, Articles and nouns etc.) in the same way as the units in the Contents (pages iii-vi).

Each sentence can be completed using one or more of the alternatives (A, B, C etc.). There are between two and five alternatives each time. **IN SOME SENTENCES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS POSSIBLE.**

If you don't know or if you are not sure which alternatives are correct, then you probably need to study the unit(s) in the list on the right. You will also find the correct sentence in this unit. (If two or three units are listed, you will find the correct sentence in the first one.)

There is a key to this study guide on page 372.

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

[image]

Present and past

1.1 At first I didn't like my job, but to enjoy it now.

A I'm beginning B I begin

1.2

1.3

1.4

1.5

1.6

I don't understand this sentence. What

A does mean this word B does this word mean

C means this word

Robert away two or three times a year.

A is going usually B is usually going C usually goes

How now? Better than before?

A you are feeling B do you feel C are you feeling

It was a boring weekend anything.

A I didn't B I don't do C I didn't do

Matt while we were having dinner.

A phoned B was phoning C has phoned

D goes usually

Present perfect and past

2.1 James is on holiday. He to Italy.

A is gone B has gone C has been

2.2

2.3

2.4

2.5

2.6

2.7

Everything is going well. We A didn't have B don't have

C haven't had

any problems so far.

Sarah has lost her passport again. It's the second time this

A has happened B happens C happened D is happening

You're out of breath. ?

A Are you running B Have you run C Have you been running

Where's the book I gave you? What with it?

A have you done B have you been doing C are you doing

each other for a long time?' 'Yes, since we were at school.' A Do you know

B Have you known C Have you been knowing

Sally has been working here

A for six months B since six months C six months ago

STUDY UNIT

2,49

2,3,110

6,14

326

11,10

2.8 It's two years Joe.

A that I don't see B that I haven't seen C since I didn't see D since I last saw

2.9 It raining for a while, but now it's raining again. A stopped B has stopped C was stopped

2.10 My mother in Italy.

A grew up B has grown up C had grown up

2.11 a lot of sweets when you were a child? A Have you eaten B Had you eaten C Did you eat

2.12 Jack in New York for ten years. Now he lives in Los Angeles. A lived B has lived C has been living

2.13 The man sitting next to me on the plane was very nervous. He before.

A hasn't flown B didn't fly C hadn't flown D wasn't flying

2.14 Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because very hard.

A she was working B she's been working C she'd been working

2.15 a car when you were living in Paris?

A Had you B Were you having C Have you had D Did you have

2.16 I tennis a lot, but I don't play very much now. A was playing B was used to play C used to play

Future

3.1 I'm tired. to bed now. Goodnight.

A I go B I'm going

3.2 tomorrow, so we can go out somewhere. A I'm not working B I don't work C I won't work

3.3 That bag looks heavy you with it.

A I'm helping B I help C I'll help

3.4 I think the weather be nice later.

A will B shall C is going to

3.5 'Anna is in hospital.' 'Yes, I know her this evening.'

A I visit B I'm going to visit C I'll visit

3.6 We're late. The film by the time we get to the cinema.

A will already start B will be already started C will already have started

3.7 Don't worry late tonight.

A if I'm B when I'm C when I'll be D if I'll be

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

[image]

Modals

4.1 The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody

4.2

4.3

4.4

4.5

4.6

4.7

4.8

4.9

4.10

4.11

4.12

4.13

A was able to escape B managed to escape C could escape

I'm so tired I for a week.

A can sleep B could sleep B could have slept

The story be true, but I don't think it is.

A might B can C could D may

Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You with Sarah.

A can stay B could stay C could have stayed

'I've lost one of my gloves.' 'You it somewhere.'

A must drop B must have dropped C must be dropping D must have been dropping

'Why wasn't Amy at the meeting yesterday?' 'She about it.'

A might not know B may not know C might not have known D may not have known

What was the problem? Why leave early?

A had you to B did you have to C must you D you had to

We've got plenty of time. We hurry. A don't need to B mustn't C needn't

You missed a great party last night. You A must have come B should have come D had to come

. Why didn't you? C ought to have come

Jane won the lottery. I a car with the money she'd won.

A suggested that she buy B suggested that she should buy C suggested her to buy D suggested that she bought

You're always at home. You out more often.

A should go B had better go C had better to go

It's late. It's time home. A we go B we must go C we should go

D we went E to go

a little longer, but I really have to go now.

A I'd stay B I'll stay C I can stay D I'd have stayed

If and wish

5.1 I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I to bed now,

I wouldn't sleep.

Ago B went C had gone D would go

5.2

5.3

If I were rich,

A I'll travel B I can travel

a lot. C I would travel

D I travelled

I wish I have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do.

A don't B didn't C wouldn't D won't

27,29

39, 41

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

5.4 The view was wonderful. If a camera with me, I would have taken some pictures.

A I had B I would have C I would have had D I'd had

5.5 The weather is horrible. I wish it raining. A would stop B stopped C stops D will stop

Passive

6.1 We by a loud noise during the night.

A woke up B are woken up C were woken up D were waking up

6.2

6.3

A new supermarket is going to next year.

A build B be built C be building D building

There's somebody walking behind us. I think A we are following B we are being following D we are being followed

C we are followed

6.4

6.5

6.6

6.7

'Where ?' 'In Chicago.'

A were you born B are you born C have you been born

D did you born

There was a fight at the party, but nobody A was hurt B got hurt C hurt

Jane to phone me last night, but she didn't.

A supposed B is supposed C was supposed

Where ? Which hairdresser did you go to?

A did you cut your hair B have you cut your hair

C did you have cut your hair D did you have your hair cut

Reported speech

71

7.2

7.3

Paul left the room suddenly. He said he to go.

A had B has C have

Hi, Joe. I didn't expect to see you. Sonia said you

in hospital.

A are B were C was D should be Ann and left.

A said goodbye to me B said me goodbye C told me goodbye

Questions and auxiliary verbs

8.1

8.2

8.3

'What time A starts the film

?' 'At 8.30.' B does start the film C does the film start

'Do you know where ?' 'No, he didn't say.'

A Tom has gone B has Tom gone C has gone Tom

The police officer stopped us and asked us where

A were we going Bare we going C we are going D we were going

STUDY UNIT

48,47

48,47

^■I^F

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

[image]

STUDY UNIT

8.4 8.5

-ing and

9.1

9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7

'Do you think it will rain?' 1 '

A I hope not. B I don't hope. C I don't hope so.

'You don't know where Karen is, ?' 'Sorry, I have no idea.'

A don't you B do you C is she Dare you

9.8

9.9

9.10

9.11

9.12

9.13

9.14 9.15

to...

You can't stop me

A doing B do C todo

what I want. D that I do

I must go now. I promised late.

A not being B not to be C to not be D I wouldn't be

Do you want A me coming

with you or do you want to go alone? B me to come C that I come D that I will come

I know I locked the door. I clearly remember it.

A locking B to lock C to have locked

She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help

A laughing B to laugh C that she laughed D laugh

Paul lives in Berlin now. He likes there. A living B to live

It's not my favourite job, but I like the kitchen as often as possible.

A cleaning B clean C to clean D that I clean

I'm tired. I'd rather out this evening, if you don't mind.

A not going B not to go C don't go D not go

I'd rather anyone what I said.

A you don't tell B not you tell C you didn't tell D you wouldn't tell

Are you looking forward on holiday?

Agoing Bto go C to going D that you go

When Lisa came to Britain, she had to get used on the left.

A driving B to driving C to drive

I'm thinking a house. Do you think that's a good idea?

A to buy B of to buy C of buying D about buying

I had no a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy.

A difficulty to find B difficulty finding C trouble to find D trouble finding

I phoned the restaurant

A for reserve B to reserve

a table.

C for reserving D for to reserve

James doesn't speak very clearly. A It is difficult to understand him. C He is difficult to understand him.

B He is difficult to understand.

54, 36

60, 62

62, 66

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

[image]

STUDY UNIT

9.16 The path was icy, so we walked very carefully. We were afraid A of falling B from falling C to fall D to falling

9.17 I didn't hear you in. You must have been very quiet. A come B to come C came

9.18 a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner. A Finding B After finding C Having found D We found

Articles and nouns

10.1 It wasn't your fault. It was

A accident B an accident C some accident

Where are you going to put all your ?

A furniture B furnitures

'Where are you going?' 'I'm going to buy A a bread B some bread C a loaf of bread

10.2

10.3

10.4

10.5

10.6

10.7

10.8

10.9

10.10

10.11

10.12

10.13

10.14

Sandra is

A nurse B a nurse

. She works at a large hospital. C the nurse

Helen works six days week.

A in Bfor Ca Dthe

There are millions of stars in

A space B a space C the space

Every day begins at 9 and finishes at 3.

A school B a school C the school

a problem in most big cities.

B The crime is C The crimes are

A Crime is When invented?

A was telephone B were telephones C were the telephones D was the telephone

Have you been to ?

A Canada or United States B the Canada or the United States

C Canada or the United States D the Canada or United States

On our first day in Moscow, we visited

A Kremlin B a Kremlin C the Kremlin

What time on TV?

A is the news B are the news C is news D is the new

It took us quite a long time to get here. It was

A three hour B a three-hours C a three-hour

journey.

This isn't my book. It's

A my sister B my sister's C from my sister D of my sister E of my sister's

71,72

79,70

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

[image]

Pronouns and determiners

11.1

11.2

11.3

11.4

11.5

11.6

11.7

11.8

11.9

11.10

11.11

What time shall we tomorrow?

A meet B meet us C meet ourselves

I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. is getting married.

A A friend of me B A friend of mine C One my friends

They live on a busy road a lot of noise from the traffic.

A It must be B It must have C There must have D There must be

He's lazy. He never does work. A some B any C no

'What would you like to eat?' 'I don't mind, -whatever you have.'

A Something B Anything C Nothing

We couldn't buy anything because of the shops were open.

A all B no-one C none D nothing

We went shopping and spent money.

A a lot of B much C lots of D many

don't visit this part of the town.

A The most tourists B Most of tourists C Most tourists

I asked two people the way to the station, but of them could
help me.

A none B either C both D neither

had a great time at the party.

B All C All of us D Everybody of us

A Everybody

The bus service is excellent. There's a bus ten minutes.

A each B every C all

Relative clauses

12.1 I don't like stories have unhappy endings.

A that B they C which D who

12.2 I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything was true. A they
said B that they said C what they said

12.3 What's the name of the man ? A you borrowed his car B which car
you borrowed C whose car you borrowed D his car you borrowed

12.4 Anna told me about her new job, a lot.

A that she's enjoying B which she's enjoying C she's enjoying D she's
enjoying it

12.5 Sarah couldn't meet us, was a shame.

A that B it C what D which

12.6 George showed me some pictures by his father. A painting B painted
C that were painted D they were painted

STUDY UNIT

90, 91

97, 92

Adjectives and adverbs

13.1 Jane doesn't enjoy her job any more. She's because every day she does
exactly the same thing.

A boring B bored

13.2 Lisa was carrying a bag.

A black small plastic B small and black plastic C small black plastic D
plastic small black

13.3 Maria's English is excellent. She speaks

A perfectly English B English perfectly C perfect English D English
perfect

13.4 He to find a job, but he had no luck.

A tried hard B tried hardly C hardly tried

13.5 I haven't seen her for , I've forgotten what she looks like.

A so long B so long time C a such longtime D such a longtime

13.6 We don't have on holiday right now.

A money enough to go B enough money to go

C money enough for going D enough money for go

13.7 Sarah is doing OK at the moment. She has

A a quite good job B quite a good job C a pretty good job

13.8 The exam was quite easy- I expected.

A more easy that B more easy than C easier than D easier as

13.9 The more electricity you use,

A your bill will be higher B will be higher your bill C the higher your bill will be D higher your bill will be

13.10 Patrick is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as

A he B him C he can

13.11 The movie was really boring. It's I've ever seen.

A most boring movie B the more boring movie C the movie more boring D the most boring movie

13.12 Ben likes walking

A Every morning he walks to work. B He walks to work every morning. C He walks every morning to work. D He every morning walks to work.

13.13 Joe never phones me

A Always I have to phone him. B I always have to phone him. C I have always to phone him. D I have to phone always him.

13.14 Lucy She left last month.

A still doesn't work here B doesn't still work here C no more works here D doesn't work here any more

13.15 she can't drive, she bought a car.

A Even B Even when C Even if D Even though

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

[image]

STUDY UNIT

Conjunctions and prepositions

14.1 I couldn't sleep very tired.

A although I was B despite I was C despite of being D in spite of being

[image]

14.2

14.3

You should insure your bike stolen.

A in case it will be B if it will be C in case it is D if it is

The club is for members only. You you're a member.

A can't go in if B can go in only if C can't go in unless D can go in unless

14.4

14.5

14.6

14.7

We watched TV all evening

A when B as C while D since

we didn't have anything better to do.

'What's that noise?' 'It sounds a baby crying.'

A as B like C as if D as though

They are very kind to me. They treat me their own son.

A as I am B as if I would be C as if I am D as if I were

I'll be in Singapore next week. I hope to see some friends of mine there.

A while I'll be B while I'm C during my visit D during I'm

Joe is away at the moment. I don't know exactly when he's coming back, but I'm sure he'll be back Monday. A by B until

Prepositions

15.1 Bye! I'll see you

A at Friday morning B on Friday morning C in Friday morning D Friday morning

14.8

15.2

15.3

15.4

15.5

15.6

15.7

15.8

15.9

I'm going away the end of January.

A at Bon C in

When we were in Italy, we spent a few days Venice. A at B to C in

Our apartment is the second floor of the building.

A at Bon C in D to

I saw Steve at a conference on Saturday.

A at Bon C in D to

When did they the hotel?

A arrive to B arrive at C arrive in D get to E get in

I'm going

A at B on C in

holiday next week. I'll be away for two weeks.

D for

We travelled 6.45 train, which arrived at 8.30.

A in the B on the C by the D by

'Have you read anything Ernest Hemingway?' 'No, what sort of books did he write?' A of B from C by

Study guide

IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

15.10

15.11

15.12

15.13

The accident was my fault, so I had to pay for the damage the other car.

A of B for C to D on E at

I like them very much. They have always been very nice to me.

A of B for C to D with

I'm not very good A at B for C in
repairing things.

D about

15.14

15.15

15.16

I don't understand this sentence. Can you ? A explain to me this word B
explain me this word C explain this word to me

If you're worried about the problem, you should do something
it.

A for B about C against Dwith

'Who is Tom Hart?' 'I have no idea. I've never heard him.' A about B from
C after D of

'What time will you be home?' 'I don't know. It depends the traffic'

A of B for C from D on

15.17

I prefer tea A to Bthan

C against

coffee. D from

Phrasal verbs

16.1 These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to

16.2

16.3

16.4

16.5

16.6

16.7

16.8

A take off B take them off C take off them

They were playing cards, so I

A joined in B came in C got in D broke in

Nobody believed Paul at first, but he to be right.

A worked out B came out C found out D turned out

We can't making a decision. We have to decide now.

A put away B put over C put off D put out

'Have you finished painting the kitchen?' 'Nearly. I'll
tomorrow.'

A finish it out B finish it over C finish it off

You can always rely on Paul. He'll never

A put you up B let you down C take you over D see you off

Children under 16 half the population of the city.

A make up B put up C take up D bring up

I'm surprised to hear that Sue and Paul have They seemed
very happy together.

A broken up B ended up C finished up D split up

16.9

I parked in a no-parking zone, but I it. A came up with B got away with C made off with

D got on with

V

Key to Exercises

In some of the exercises you have to use your own ideas to write sentences. Example answers are given in the Key. If possible, check your answers with somebody who speaks English well.

UNIT 1

1.1

2 e

3 g

4 a

5 d

6 h

7 b

8 c

1.2

1 What's/What is he studying Is he enjoying

2 's/is your new job going it's getting / it is getting he isn't enjoying / he's not enjoying

he's beginning / he is beginning

1.3

3 I'm not listening / I am not listening

4 She's having / She is having

5 I'm not eating / I am not eating

6 He's learning / He is learning

7 They aren't speaking / They're not speaking / They are not speaking

8 I'm getting / I am getting

9 isn't working / 's not working / is not working

10 I'm looking / I am looking

1.4

2 is changing

3 's getting / is getting

4 is rising

5 is starting

UNIT 2

2.1

drink

opens

causes

live

take

connects

2.2

2 do the banks close

3 don't use

4 does Ricardo come

5 do you do

6 takes ... does it take

7 does this word mean

8 doesn't do

2.3

3 rises

4 make

5 don't eat

6 doesn't believe

7 translates

8 don't tell

9 flows

2.4

2 Does your sister play tennis?

3 Which newspaper do you read?

4 What does your brother do?

5 How often do you go to the cinema?

6 Where do your grandparents live?

2.5

2 I promise 4 I apologise

3 I insist 5 I recommend

UNIT 3

3.1

3 is trying

4 are they talking

5 OK

6 It's getting / It is getting

7 OK

8 I'm coming / I am coming

9 are you getting

10 He always gets

11 OK

3.2

3 Everybody's waiting / Everybody is waiting

4 Are you listening

5 Do you listen

6 flows

7 's flowing / is flowing

8 We usually grow ... we aren't growing / we're not growing / we are not growing

9 it's improving / it is improving

10 She's staying / She is staying ... She always stays

11 I'm starting / I am starting

12 I'm learning / I am learning ... 's teaching / is teaching

13 I finish ... I'm working / I am working

14 live ... do your parents live

15 's looking / is looking ... She's staying / She is staying

16 does your brother do ...

he isn't working / he's not working / he is not working

17 I usually enjoy ... I'm not enjoying / I am not enjoying

3.3

2 It's always breaking down.

3 I'm always making the same mistake. / ... that mistake.

4 You're always forgetting your glasses.

UNIT 4

4.1

2 I'm using / I am using

3 I need

4 does he want

5 is he looking

6 believes

7 I don't remember / I do not remember or I can't remember

8 I'm thinking / I am thinking

9 I think ... You don't use 10 consists

4.2

2 What are you doing? I'm thinking.

3 Who does this umbrella belong to?

4 The dinner smells good.

5 Is anybody sitting there?

6 These gloves don't fit me.

4.3

2 Do you believe

3 OK (I feel is also correct)

4 It tastes

5 I think

4.4

2 's being / is being

3 's/is

4 are you being

5 Is he

UNIT 5

5.1

2 She had

3 She walked to work

4 It took her (about) half an hour

5 She started work

6 She didn't have (any) lunch. / ... eat (any) lunch.

7 She finished work

8 She was tired when she got home.

9 She cooked

10 She didn't go

11 She went to bed

12 She slept

Key to Exercises

5.4

3 didn't disturb 7 didn't cost

4 left 8 didn't have

5 didn't sleep 9 were

6 flew

UNIT 6

6.1

Example answers:

3 I was working.

4 I was in bed asleep.

5 I was getting ready to go out.

6 I was watching TV at home.

6.2

Example answers:

2 was having a shower

3 were driving home

4 was reading the paper

5 was watching it

6.3

1 didn't see ... was looking

2 met... were going ... was going ... had ... were waiting / waited

3 was cycling ... stepped ... was going ... managed ... didn't hit

6.4

2 were you doing

3 Did you go

4 were you driving ... happened

5 took ... wasn't looking

6 didn't know

7 saw ... was trying

8 was walking ... heard ... was following ... started

9 wanted

10 dropped ... was doing ... didn't break

UNIT 7

7.1

2 Lisa has broken her leg.

3 The bus fare has gone up.

4 Her English has improved.

5 Dan has grown a beard.

6 The letter has arrived.

7 The temperature has fallen.

2 been

3 gone

4 gone

5 been

7.3

2 Yes, I've just seen her. / Yes, I have just seen her. or Yes, I just saw her.

3 He's already left. / He has already left, or He already left.

4 I haven't read it yet. or I didn't read it yet.

5 No, she's already seen the film. / No, she has already seen ... or No, she already saw ...

6 Yes, they've just arrived. / Yes, they have just arrived, or Yes, they just arrived.

7 We haven't told him yet. or We didn't tell him yet.

7.4

2 he's just gone out / he has just gone out or he just went out

3 I haven't finished yet or I didn't finish yet

4 I've already done it / I have already done it or I already did it

5 Have you found a place to live yet? or Did you find a place ... ?

6 I haven't decided yet or I didn't decide yet

7 she's just come back / she has just come back or she just came back

UNIT 8

8.1

2 Have you ever been to California?

3 Have you ever run (in) a marathon?

4 Have you ever spoken to a famous person?

5 What's the most beautiful place you've ever visited? / ... you have ever visited?

8.2

3 haven't eaten

4 I haven't played (it)

5 I've had / I have had

6 I haven't read

7 I've never been / I haven't been

8 it's happened / it has happened or that's happened / that has happened

9 I've never tried / I haven't tried or I've never eaten / I haven't eaten

10 's been / has been

11 I've never seen / I haven't seen

8.3

Example answers:

2 I haven't travelled by bus this week.

3 I haven't been to the cinema recently.

4 I haven't read a book for ages.

5 I haven't lost anything today.

8.4

2 Have you played tennis before? No, this is the first time I've played tennis.

3 Have you ridden a horse before? / Have you been on a horse before? No, this is the first time I've ridden a horse. / ... I've been on a horse.

4 Have you been to Japan before? No, this is the first time I've been to Japan.

UNIT 9

9.1

2 She's been watching television. / She has been watching television.

3 They've been playing tennis. / They have been playing tennis.

4 He's been running. / He has been running.

9.2

2 Have you been waiting long?

3 What have you been doing?

4 How long have you been working there?

5 How long have you been selling mobile phones?

9.3

2 've been waiting / have been waiting

3 've been learning Spanish / have been learning Spanish

4 She's been working there / She has been working there

5 They've been going there / They have been going there

9.4

2 I've been looking / I have been looking

3 are you looking

4 She's been teaching / She has been teaching

5 I've been thinking / I have been thinking

6 he's working / he is working

7 She's been working / She has been working

Key to Exercises

UNIT10

10.1

2 She's been travelling / She has been travelling

She's visited / She has visited

3 He's won / He has won ...

He's / He has been playing tennis

4 They've / They have been making (films...)

They've / They have made (five films ...)

10.2

2 Have you been waiting long?

3 Have you caught any fish?

4 How many people have you invited?

5 How long have you been teaching?

6 How many books have you written? How long have you been writing books?

7 How long have you been saving? How much money have you saved?

10.3

2 Somebody's broken / Somebody has broken

3 Have you been working

4 Have you ever worked

5 has she gone

6 He's appeared / He has appeared

7 I haven't been waiting

8 it's stopped / it has stopped

9 I've lost / I have lost... Have you seen

10 I've been reading / I have been reading ... I haven't finished

11 I've read / I have read

12 I've had / I have had

UNIT11

11.1

3 have been married

4 OK

5 It's been raining / It has been raining

6 have you been living or have you lived

7 has been working

8 OK

9 I haven't drunk 10 have you had

11.2

2 How long have you been teaching English? or

How long have you taught...

3 How long have you known Katherine?

4 How long has your brother been in Australia?

5 How long have you had that jacket?

6 How long has Joe been working at the airport? or

How long has Joe worked ...

7 How long have you been having guitar lessons?

8 Have you always lived in Chicago?

11.3

3 's been / has been

4 've been waiting / have been waiting

5 've known / have known

6 haven't played

7 's been watching / has been watching

8 haven't watched

9 've had / have had

10 hasn't been

11 've been feeling / have been feeling or 've felt / have felt

12 's lived / has lived or

's been living / has been living

13 haven't been

14 've always wanted / have always wanted

UNIT 12

12.1

2 since

3 for

4 for

5 since

6 for

7 since

8 since

9 for

12.2

2 How long has Kate been learning Japanese?

When did Kate start learning Japanese?

3 How long have you known Simon? When did you first meet Simon? /
When did you and Simon first meet?

4 How long have Rebecca and David been married?

When did Rebecca and David get married? / When did Rebecca and David
marry?

12.3

3 He has been ill since Sunday.

4 He has been ill for a few days.

5 She got married a year ago.

6 I've had a headache since I woke up.

7 She went to Italy three weeks ago.

8 I've been working in a hotel for six months, or I've worked in a hotel for six months.

12.4

2 No, I haven't seen Laura/her for about a month.

3 No, I haven't been to the cinema for a long time.

4 No, I haven't eaten in a restaurant for ages. / No, I haven't been to a restaurant for ages.

6 No, it's about a month since I (last) saw Laura/her. / No, it's been about a month since ...

7 No, it's a long time since I (last) went to the cinema. / No, it's been a long time since ...

8 No, it's ages since I (last) ate in a restaurant. / No, it's been ages since ...
or

... since I went to a restaurant.

UNIT13

13.1

2 has gone

3 forgot

4 went

5 had

6 has broken 13.2

3 did William Shakespeare write

4 OK

5 OK

6 Who invented

7 were you born

8 OK

9 Albert Einstein was ... who developed

13.3

3 I've forgotten / I have forgotten

4 arrested

5 it's improved / it has improved

6 I've finished / I have finished (I'm finished is also correct)

7 I applied

8 It was

9 There's been / There has been

10 He broke or He's broken / He has broken ... did that happen ... he fell

UNIT 14

14.1

3 OK

4 I bought

5 Where were you

6 Lucy left school

7 OK

8 OK

9 OK

10 When was this book published?

Key to Exercises

14.2

2 The weather has been cold recently.

3 It was cold last week.

4 I didn't read a newspaper yesterday.

5 I haven't read a newspaper today.

6 Emily has earned a lot of money this year.

7 She didn't earn so much last year.

8 Have you had a holiday recently?

14.3

2 I got ... I was ... I went

3 Have you seen ... I saw

4 I didn't sleep

5 There were

6 worked ... he gave

7 She's lived / She has lived

8 Did you go ... it was ... was

9 died ... I never met

10 I've never met / I have never met

11 I haven't seen

12 have you lived or have you been living ... did you live ... did you live

14.4

Example answers:

2 I haven't bought anything today.

3 I didn't watch TV yesterday.

4 I went out with some friends yesterday evening.

5 I haven't been to the cinema recently.

6 I've read a lot of books recently.

UNIT 15

15.1

2 It had changed a lot.

3 She'd arranged to do something else. / She had arranged ...

4 The film had already started.

5 I hadn't seen him for five years.

6 She'd just had breakfast. / She had just had ...

15.2

2 I'd never heard it before. / I had never heard ...

3 He'd never played (tennis) before. / He had never played ...

4 We'd never been there before. / We had never been ...

15.3

1 we called

2 there was ...

She'd gone / She had gone

3 He'd just come back from / He had just come back from ... He looked

4 got a phone call He was

He'd sent her / He had sent her... she'd never replied to them / she had never replied to them

15.4

2 went

3 had gone

4 broke

5 saw ... had broken ... stopped

UNIT16

16.1

2 They'd been playing football. / They had been playing ...

3 I'd been looking forward to it. / I had been looking forward ...

4 She'd been dreaming. / She had been dreaming.

5 He'd been watching a film. / He had been watching ...

16.2

2 I'd been waiting for 20 minutes when I realised that I was in the wrong restaurant, or ... that I had come to the wrong restaurant.

3 At the time the factory closed down, Sarah had been working there for five years.

4 The orchestra had been playing for about ten minutes when a man in the audience started shouting.

5 Example answer:

I'd been walking along the road for about ten minutes when a car suddenly stopped just behind me.

16.3

3 he was walking

4 She'd been running / She had been running

5 They were eating

6 They'd been eating / They had been eating

7 He was looking

8 was waiting ... she'd been waiting / she had been waiting

9 I'd had / I had had

10 We'd been travelling / We had been travelling

UNIT 17

17.1

3 I don't have a ladder. / I haven't got a ladder.

4 We didn't have enough time.

5 He didn't have a map.

6 She doesn't have any money. / She hasn't got any money.

7 I don't have enough energy. / I haven't got enough energy.

8 They didn't have a camera.

17.2

2 B

3 AorC

4 AorC

5 A

6 C

17.3

3 he didn't have

4 I have or I've got

5 OK

6 I didn't have

7 OK {or He hasn't got}

8 Did you have

9 OK

17.4

UNIT18

18.1

2 used to have/ride

3 used to live

4 used to eat/like/love

5 used to be

6 used to take

7 used to be

8 did you use to go

18.2

2-10

- She used to have lots of friends, but she doesn't know many people these days.
- She used to be very lazy, but she works very hard these days.
- She didn't use to like cheese, but she eats lots of cheese now.
- She used to be a hotel receptionist, but she works in a bookshop now.
- She used to play the piano, but she hasn't played the piano for years. / ... played it for years.
- She never used to read / She didn't use to read newspapers, but she reads a newspaper every day now.
- She didn't use to drink tea, but she likes it now.
- She used to have a dog, but it died two years ago.
- She used to go to a lot of parties, but she hasn't been to a party for ages.

Key to Exercises

18.3

Example answers:

3 I used to be a vegetarian, but now I eat meat sometimes.

4 I used to watch TV a lot, but I don't watch it much now.

5 I used to hate getting up early, but now it's no problem.

7 I didn't use to drink coffee, but I drink it every day now.

8 I didn't use to like hot weather, but now I love it.

UNIT 19

19.1

2 How long are you going for?

3 When are you leaving?

4 Are you going alone?

5 Are you travelling by car?

6 Where are you staying?

19.2

2 I'm working late. / I'm working till 9 o'clock.

3 I'm going to the theatre.

4 I'm meeting julia.

193

Example answers:

2 I'm working tomorrow morning.

3 I'm not doing anything tomorrow evening.

4 I'm playing football next Sunday.

5 I'm going to a party this evening.

19.4

3 We're having / We are having

4 finishes

5 I'm not going / I am not going ... I'm staying / I am staying

6 Are you doing

7 We're going / We are going ... It starts

8 I'm leaving / I am leaving

9 we're meeting / we are meeting

10 does this train get

11 I'm going / I am going ... Are you coming

12 does it end

13 I'm not using / I am not using

14 's coming / is coming ...

She's travelling / She is travelling ... arrives

UNIT 20

20.1

2 What are you going to wear?

3 Where are you going to put it?

4 Who are you going to invite?

20.2

2 I'm going to take it back to the shop.

3 I'm not going to accept it.

4 I'm going to phone her tonight.

5 I'm going to complain.

20.3

2 He's going to be late.

3 The boat is going to sink.

4 They're going to run out of petrol.

20.4

2 was going to buy

3 were going to play

4 was going to phone

5 was going to give up

6 were you going to say

UNIT 21

21.1

2 I'll turn/I'll switch/I'll put

3 I'll send

4 I'll do

5 I'll show

6 I'll have

7 I'll stay/I'll wait

8 I'll pay/I'll give

9 I'll try

21.2

2 I'll go to bed.

3 I think I'll walk.

4 I'll eat anything.

5 I don't think I'll go swimming.

21.3

3 I'll meet

4 I'll lend

5 I'm having

6 I won't forget

7 does your train leave

8 won't tell

9 Are you doing 10 Will you come

21.4

2 Shall I buy it?

3 What shall I give/buy/get Helen (for her birthday)?

4 Where shall we go (on holiday)?

5 Shall we go by car or (shall we) walk? / ... or (shall we go) on foot?

6 What time shall I come?

UNIT 22

22.1

2 I'm going

3 will get

4 is coming

5 we're going

6 It won't hurt

22.2

2 won't

3 '11/will

4 won't

5 '11 /will

6 won't

22.3

2 It will look

3 you'll like / you will like

4 You'll get/You will get

5 people will live

6 we'll meet / we will meet

7 she'll come / she will come

8 it will be

22.4

2 Do you think it will rain?

3 When do you think it will end?

4 How much do you think it will cost?

5 Do you think they'll get married? / ... they will get married?

6 What time do you think you'll be back? / ... you will be back?

7 What do you think will happen?

22.5

Example answers:

2 I'll be in bed.

3 I'll be at work.

4 I'll probably be at home.

5 I don't know where I'll be this time next year.

UNIT 23

23.1

Key to Exercises

UNIT 24

24.1

2 b is true

3 a and c are true

4 b and d are true

5 c and d are true

6 c /s true

24.2

2 We'll have finished

3 we'll be playing

4 I'll be working

5 the meeting will have ended

6 he'll have spent

7 you'll still be doing

8 she'll have travelled

9 I'll be staying

10 Will you be seeing

UNIT 25

25.1

2 she goes

3 you know

4 Will you be ... I get

5 there are ...I'll call/I will call

6 it's/it is

7 you see ... you won't recognise / you will not recognise

8 I'll be /I will be ... he gets

9 you need ... I'm /I am 10 I'll wait / I will wait...

you're / you are

25.2

2 I'll give you my address when I find somewhere to live, or

... when I've found somewhere to live.

3 I'll come straight back home after I do the shopping, or

... after I've done the shopping.

4 Let's go home before it gets dark.

5 I won't speak to her until she apologises, or

... until she has apologised.

25.3

2 you go/you leave

3 you decide or you've decided / you have decided

4 you're in Hong Kong/you go to Hong Kong

5 build the new road or 've built the new road / have built the new road

25.4

2 if

3 When

4 If

5 If

6 when

7 if

8 if

UNIT 26

26.1

3 can

4 be able to

5 been able to

6 can or will be able to

7 be able to

26.2

Example answers:

2 I used to be able to run fast.

3 I'd like to be able to play the piano.

4 I've never been able to get up early.

26.3

2 could run

3 can wait

4 couldn't eat

5 can't hear

6 couldn't sleep

26.4

2 was able to finish it

3 were able to find it

4 was able to get away

UNIT 27

27.1

2 We could have fish.

3 You could phone (her) now.

4 You could give her a book.

5 We could hang it in the kitchen.

27.2

3 I could kill him!

4 OK (could have is also possible)

5 I could stay here all day

6 it could be in the car (may/might are also possible)

7 OK

8 OK (could borrow is also possible)

9 You could fall, (may/might are also possible)

27.3

2 could have come/gone

3 could apply

4 could have been

5 could have got/taken

6 could come

3 go

4 have taken / have stolen / have moved

5 be

6 have been

7 be looking

8 have been

9 have heard 10 be following

28.3

3 It must have been very expensive.

4 They must have gone away.

5 I must have left it in the restaurant last night.

6 It can't have been easy for her.

7 He must have been waiting for somebody.

8 She can't have understood what I said, or She couldn't have understood what I said.

9 I must have forgotten to lock it.

10 My neighbours must have been having a party.

11 The driver can't have seen the red light, or

The driver couldn't have seen ...

UNIT 29

29.1

2 She might be busy.

3 She might be working.

4 She might want to be alone.

5 She might have been ill yesterday.

6 She might have gone home early.

7 She might have had to go home early.

8 She might have been working yesterday.

9 She might not want to see me.

10 She might not be working today.

11 She might not have been feeling well yesterday.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

Key to Exercises

29.2

2 be

3 have been

4 be waiting

5 have arrived / have come 29.3

2 a She might be watching TV. b She might have gone out.

3 a It might be in the car.

b You might have left it in the restaurant.

4 a He might have gone to bed early, b He might not have heard the doorbell, c He might have been in the shower.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

29.4

3 might not have received it / might not have got it

4 couldn't have been an accident

5 couldn't have tried

6 might not have been American

UNIT 30

30.1

2 I might buy a Honda.

3 He might come on Saturday.

4 I might hang it in the dining room.

5 She might go to university.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.2

2 might wake

3 might bite

4 might need

5 might slip

6 might break

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.3

2 might be able to meet

3 might have to work

4 might have to leave

5 might have to sell

6 might be able to fix

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.4

2 I might not go out this evening.

3 We might not be able to get tickets for the game.

4 Sam might not be able to go out with us tonight.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

30.5

2 I might as well go

3 We might as well paint the bathroom.

4 We might as well watch it. / ... watch the film.

You can use may instead of might in all these sentences.

UNIT 31

31.1

3 We had to close

4 She has to leave or She'll have to leave / She will have to leave

5 do you have to be

6 I have to go or I'll have to go / I will have to go

7 Does he have to travel

8 do you have to go or will you have to go

9 did you have to wait 10 had to do

31.2

3 have to make

4 don't have to do

5 had to ask

6 don't have to pay or won't have to pay / will not have to pay

7 didn't have to go

8 has to make

9 will have to drive or is going to have to drive

31.3

3 OK (have to is also correct)

4 He has to work.

5 I had to work late yesterday evening.

6 OK (have to is also correct)

7 She has had to wear glasses since she was very young.

For the present perfect (has had) with for and since, see Units 11-12.

UNIT 32

32.1

2 don't need to 6 needn't

3 must 7 must... mustn't

4 mustn't 8 needn't... must

5 don't need to

32.2

2 needn't come

3 needn't walk

4 needn't ask

5 needn't explain

32.3

2 You needn't have walked home. You could have taken a taxi.

3 You needn't have stayed at a hotel. You could have stayed with us.

4 She needn't have phoned me in the middle of the night. She could have

waited until the morning.

5 You needn't have shouted at me. You could have been more patient.

6 You needn't have left without saying anything. You could have said goodbye to me.

32.4

3 You needn't worry / You don't need to worry / You don't have to worry

4 You needn't wait / You don't need to wait / You don't have to wait

5 OK (You needn't keep is also correct)

6 I didn't need to go / I didn't have to

go

7 OK

UNIT 33

33.1

2 You should look for another job.

3 He shouldn't go to bed so late.

4 You should take a photo.

5 She shouldn't use her car so much.

6 He should put some pictures on the walls.

33.2

2 I don't think you should go out. / I think you should stay at home.

3 I think you should apply for it. / ... for the job.

4 I don't think the government should increase taxes.

33.3

3 should come

4 should do

5 should have done

6 should have won

7 should win

8 should be

9 should have turned

Key to Exercises

33.4

3 We should have reserved a table.

4 The shop should be open (now). / The shop should have opened by now. or It should ...

5 She shouldn't be doing 50. / She shouldn't be driving so fast. / She should be driving more slowly.

6 I should have written down her address. / I should have written her address down, or

I should have written it down.

7 The driver in front shouldn't have stopped without warning. / ... shouldn't have stopped so suddenly.

8 I should have been looking where I was going. / I shouldn't have been looking behind me.

UNIT 34

34.1

2 I should stay / I stay / I stayed a little longer

3 they should visit / they visit / they visited the museum after lunch

4 we should pay / we pay / we paid the rent by Friday

5 I should go / I go / I went away for a few days

34.2

1 b OK c OK

d wrong

2 a OK

b wrong c OK

34.3

2 should say

3 should worry

4 should leave

5 should ask

6 should listen

34.4

2 If it should rain

3 If there should be any problems

4 If anyone should ask

5 Should there be any problems

6 Should anyone ask (where I'm going)

34.5

2 I should keep

3 I should phone

4 I should get

UNIT35

35.1

2 You'd better put a plaster on it.

3 We'd better reserve a table.

4 You'd better not go to work (this morning).

5 I'd better pay my phone bill (soon). / I'd better pay it (soon).

6 I'd better not disturb him.

35.2

3 'd better

4 should

5 should

6 'd better

7 should

8 should

35.3

1 b 'd/had

c close/shut

d hadn't

2 a did

b was done

c thought

35.4

2 It's time I had a holiday.

3 It's time the train left.

4 It's time I/we had a party.

5 It's time some changes were made. / It's time the company made some changes.

6 It's time he tried something else.

UNIT 36

36.1

Example answers:

2 I wouldn't like to be a teacher.

3 I'd love to learn to fly a plane.

4 It would be nice to have a big garden.

5 I'd like to go to Mexico.

36.2

2 'd enjoy / would enjoy

3 'd have enjoyed / would have enjoyed

4 would you do

5 'd have stopped / would have stopped

6 would have been

7 'd be/would be

8 'd have passed / would have passed

9 would have

36.3

2 e

3 b

4 f

5 a

6 d

36.4

2 He promised he'd call. / ... he would call.

3 You promised you wouldn't tell her.

4 They promised they'd wait (for us). / ... they would wait.

36.5

2 wouldn't tell

3 wouldn't speak

4 wouldn't let

36.6

2 would shake

3 would always help

4 would share

5 would always forget

UNIT 37

37.1

2 Can/Could I leave a message (for her)? or

Can/Could you give her a message?

3 Can/Could you tell me how to get to the station? or

... the way to the station? or ... where the station is?

4 Can/Could I try on these trousers? or

Can/Could I try these (trousers) on?

5 Can I give/offer you a lift?

37.2

3 Do you think you could check these forms (for me) ? / ... check them (for me)?

4 Do you mind if I leave work early?

5 Do you think you could turn the music down? / ... turn it down?

6 Is it OK if I close the window?

7 Do you think I could have a look at your paper? / ... at your newspaper?

37.3

2 Can/Could/Would you show me? or Do you think you could show me? or ... do it for me?

3 Would you like to sit down? or Would you like a seat? or Can I offer you a seat?

4 Can/Could/Would you slow down? or Do you think you could ... ?

5 Can/Could/May I/we have the bill, please? or Do you think I/we could have ... ?

6 Would you like to borrow it?

UNIT 38

38.1

2 b 5 b

3 a 6 a

4 b 7 b

Key to Exercises

38.2

2 bought

3 asked

4 would lose

5 'd be/would be

6 were ... stopped

7 gave ...'d have / would have

38.3

2 If he did his driving test now, he'd fail (it) /... he would fail (it).

3 If we stayed at a hotel, it would cost too much.

4 If she left her job, she wouldn't get another one.

5 If we invited Ben (to the party), we'd have to invite his friends too. /

... we would have to ...

6 If I told him what happened, he wouldn't believe me.

38.4

Example answers:

2 I'd be very angry if somebody broke into my house.

3 If you bought a car, it would cost you a lot to maintain it.

4 I'd be surprised if the economic situation improved.

5 Would you mind if I didn't go out with you tonight?

UNIT 39

39.1

3 I'd help / I would help

4 we lived

5 we'd live / we would live

6 It would taste

7 we re/was

8 I wouldn't wait ... I'd go / I would go

9 you didn't go

10 there weren't ... there wouldn't be 39.2

2 I'd buy it / I would buy it if it weren't/wasn't so expensive.

3 We'd go out / We would go out more often if we could afford it.

4 If I didn't have to work late, I could meet you tomorrow, or

... I'd meet / I would meet... or ... I'd be able to meet...

5 We could have lunch outside if it weren't raining / wasn't raining.

6 If I wanted his advice, I'd ask for it / I would ask for it.

39.3

2 I wish I had a computer.

3 I wish Helen were/was here.

4 I wish it weren't/wasn't (so) cold.

5 I wish I didn't live in a big city.

6 I wish I could go to the party.

7 I wish I didn't have to get up early tomorrow.

8 I wish I knew something about cars.

9 I wish I were feeling / was feeling better.

39.4

Example answers.

1 I wish I was at home.

2 I wish I had a big garden.

3 I wish I could tell jokes.

4 I wish I was taller.

UNIT 40

40.1

2 If he'd missed / he had missed (the train), he'd have missed / he would have missed (his flight too).

3 I'd have forgotten / I would have forgotten (if) you hadn't reminded

4 I'd had / I had had (your address), I'd have sent / I would have sent (you an email)

5 we'd have enjoyed / we would have enjoyed (it more if the weather) had been (better)

6 It would have been (quicker if) I'd walked / I had walked

7 I were / I was

8 I'd been / I had been

40.2

2 If the road hadn't been icy, the accident wouldn't have happened.

3 If I'd known / If I had known that Joe had to get up early, I'd have woken
/ I would have woken him up.

4 If I hadn't lost my phone (or If I'd had my phone), I'd have called you / I
would have called you / I would have been able to call you / I could have
called you

5 If Karen hadn't been wearing a seat belt, she'd have been injured / she
would have been injured (in the crash), or ... she might/could have been
injured

6 If you'd had / If you had had breakfast, you wouldn't be hungry now.

7 If I'd had / If I had had enough money, I'd have got / I would have got a
taxi.

40.3

2 I wish I'd applied / I wish I had applied for it. or ... for the job.

3 I wish I'd learned / I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument
(when I was younger), or I wish I could play ... / I wish I was able to play

4 I wish I hadn't painted it red. or ... the gate red.

5 I wish I'd brought / I wish I had brought my camera, or

I wish I had my camera (with me)

6 I wish they'd phoned / I wish they had phoned me first (to say they were
coming), or

I wish I'd known / I wish I had known they were coming.

UNIT 41

41.1

2 hope 5 hope

3 wish 6 wish ... hope

4 wished

41.2

2 I wish Jane/she would come. or ... would hurry up.

3 I wish somebody would give me a job.

4 I wish the/that baby would stop crying.

5 I wish you would buy some new clothes, or I wish you would get some new clothes.

6 I wish you wouldn't drive so fast.

7 I wish you wouldn't leave the door open (all the time).

8 I wish people wouldn't drop litter in the street.

41.3

2 OK

3 I wish I had more free time.

4 I wish our flat was/were a bit bigger.

5 OK

6 OK

7 I wish everything wasn't/weren't so expensive.

41.4

3 I knew

4 I'd taken/I had taken

5 I could come

6 I wasn't /I weren't

7 they'd hurry up / they would hurry up

8 we didn't have

9 we could have stayed

10 it wasn't / it weren't

11 he'd decide / he would decide

12 we hadn't gone

Key to Exercises

UNIT 42

42.1

2 is made

3 was damaged

4 were invited

5 are shown

6 are held

7 was written ... was translated

8 were overtaken

9 is surrounded

42.2

2 When was television invented?

3 How are mountains formed?

4 When were antibiotics discovered?

5 What is silver used for?

42.3

3 covers

4 is covered

5 are locked

6 was sent ... arrived

7 sank ... was rescued

8 died ... were brought up

9 grew up

10 was stolen

11 disappeared

12 did Sue resign

13 was Ben fired

14 is owned

15 called ... was injured ... wasn't needed

16 were these pictures taken ... Did you take

17 'm not bothered / am not bothered

42.4

2 All flights were cancelled because of fog.

3 This road isn't used much.

4 I was accused of stealing money.

5 How are languages learned/learnt?

6 We were warned not to go out alone.

UNIT 43

43.1

2 it can't be broken

3 it can be eaten

4 it can't be used

5 it can't be seen

6 it can be carried

43.2

3 be made

4 be spent

5 have been repaired

6 be carried

7 be woken up

8 have been arrested

9 have been caused

43.3

2 The computer is being used at the moment.

3 I didn't realise that our conversation was being recorded.

4 ... we found that the game had been cancelled.

5 A new ring road is being built round the city.

6 A new hospital has been built near the airport.

43.4

3 It's been stolen! / It has been stolen!

4 Somebody has taken it. or ... taken my umbrella.

5 He's been promoted. / He has been promoted.

6 It's being redecorated. / It is being redecorated.

7 It's working again. / It is working again.

It's been repaired. / It has been repaired.

8 The furniture had been moved.

9 He hasn't been seen since then.

10 I haven't seen her for ages.

11 Have you ever been mugged?

UNIT 44

44.1

2 I was asked some difficult questions at the interview.

3 Amy was given a present by her colleagues when she retired.

4 I wasn't told about the meeting.

5 How much will you be paid for your work?

6 I think Tom should have been offered the job.

7 Have you been shown what to do?

44.2

2 being invited

3 being given

4 being knocked down

5 being treated

6 being stuck

44.3

2-6

- Ludwig van Beethoven was born in 1770.
- Galileo was born in 1564.
- Mahatma Gandhi was born in 1869.
- Michael Jackson was born in 1958. Martin Luther King was born in 1929.
- Elvis Presley was born in 1935.
- William Shakespeare was born in 1564.
- Leonardo da Vinci was born in 1452.

7 I was born in ...

UNIT 45

45.1

2 The weather is expected to be good tomorrow.

3 The thieves are believed to have got in through a window in the roof.

4 Many people are reported to be homeless after the floods.

5 The prisoner is thought to have escaped by climbing over a wall.

6 The man is alleged to have been driving at 110 miles an hour.

7 The building is reported to have been badly damaged by the fire.

8 a The company is said to be losing a

lot of money, b The company is believed to have

lost a lot of money last year, c The company is expected to make

a loss this year.

45.2

2 He is supposed to know a lot of famous people.

3 He is supposed to be very rich.

4 He is supposed to have twelve children.

5 He is supposed to have been an actor when he was younger.

45.3

2 You're / You are supposed to be my friend.

3 I'm / I am supposed to be on a diet.

4 It was supposed to be a joke.

5 Or maybe it's/it is supposed to be a flower.

6 YouVe / You are supposed to be working.

45.4

2 're / are supposed to start

3 was supposed to phone

4 aren't / 're not / are not supposed to block

5 was supposed to depart

UNIT 46

46.1

1 b

2 a

3 a

4 b

Key to Exercises

46.2

2 Sarah has her car serviced once a year.

3 It cost twelve pounds to have my suit cleaned.

4 The last time I had my eyes tested was two years ago.

5 We've had some new cupboards fitted in the kitchen.

6 We need to get this document translated as soon as possible.

46.3

2 I had it cut.

3 We had them cleaned.

4 He had it built.

5 I had them delivered.

46.4

2 have another key made

3 you had your hair cut

4 Do you have a newspaper delivered

5 we're having / we are having a garage built

6 Have you had the washing machine fixed / Did you have the washing machine fixed

7 have your ears pierced

9 She had her credit cards stolen. 10 We all had our bags searched.

UNIT 47

47.1

2 He said (that) his father wasn't very well.

3 He said (that) Rachel and Mark were getting married next month.

4 He said (that) his sister had had a baby.

5 He said (that) he didn't know what Joe was doing.

6 He said (that) he'd seen / he had seen Helen at a party in June and she'd seemed / she had seemed fine, or He said (that) he saw Helen ... and she seemed ...

7 He said (that) he hadn't seen Amy recently.

8 He said (that) he wasn't enjoying his job very much.

9 He said (that) I could come and stay at his place if I was ever in London.

10 He said (that) his car had been stolen a few days ago.

or ... his car was stolen a few days ago.

11 He said (that) he wanted to go on holiday, but (he) couldn't afford it.

12 He said (that) he'd tell / he would tell Chris he'd seen / he had seen me.
or ... he saw me.

47.2

Example answers:

2 she wasn't coming / she was going somewhere else / she couldn't come

3 they didn't like each other /

they didn't get on with each other / they couldn't stand each other

4 he didn't know anyone

5 she would be away / she was going away

6 you were staying at home

7 he couldn't speak / he didn't speak any other languages

8 he'd seen you / he saw you last weekend

UNIT 48

48.1

2 But you said you didn't like fish.

3 But you said you couldn't drive.

4 But you said she had a very well-paid job.

5 But you said you didn't have any brothers or sisters.

6 But you said you'd / you had never been to the United States.

7 But you said you were working tomorrow evening.

8 But you said she was a friend of yours.

48.2

2 Tell 7 tell ... said

3 Say 8 tell... say

4 said 9 told

5 told 10 said

6 said

48.3

2 her to slow down

3 her not to worry

4 asked Tom to give me a hand or ... to help me

5 asked me to open my bag

6 asked him to get (me) a paper

7 told him to mind his own business

8 asked her to marry him

9 told her not to wait (for me) if I was late

UNIT 49

49.1

2 Were you born there?

3 Are you married?

4 How long have you been married?

5 Have you got (any) children? or Do you have (any) children?

6 How old are they?

7 What do you do?

8 What does your wife do?

49.2

3 Who paid it?/Who paid the bill?

4 What happened?

5 What did she/Diane say?

6 Who does it / this book belong to?

7 Who lives in that house? / Who lives there?

8 What did you fall over?

9 What fell off the shelf?

10 What does it / this word mean?

11 Who did you borrow it from? / ... borrow the money from?

12 What are you worried about?

49.3

2 How is cheese made?

3 When was the computer invented?

4 Why isn't Sue working today?

5 What time are your friends coming?

6 Why was the trip cancelled?

7 Where was your mother born?

8 Why didn't you come to the party?

9 How did the accident happen? 10 Why doesn't this machine work?

49.4

2 Don't you like him?

3 Isn't it good?

4 Haven't you got any? or Don't you have any?

UNIT 50

50.1

2 c

3 a

4 b

5 b

6 7 8

346

50.2

2 How far is it to the airport?

3 I wonder how old Tom is.

4 When is Lisa going on holiday?

5 Could you tell me where the post office is?

6 I don't know whether anyone was injured in the accident.

7 Do you know what time you will arrive tomorrow?

50.3

2 He asked me where I'd been. / ... where I had been.

3 He asked me how long I'd been back. / ... how long I had been back.

4 He asked me what I was doing now.

5 He asked me why I'd come back. / ... why I had come back, or
... why I came back.

6 He asked me where I was living.

7 He asked me if/whether I was glad to be back.

8 He asked me if/whether I had any plans to go away again.

9 He asked me if/whether I could help him find a job.

Key to Exercises

UNIT 51

4 Didn't you? I did.

5 Haven't you? I have.

6 Did you? I didn't.

51.3

Example answers:

3 So did I. or

Did you? What did you watch?

4 Neither will I. or

Won't you? Where will you be?

5 So do I. or

Do you? What sort of books do you like?

6 So would I. or

Would you? Where would you like to live?

7 Neither can I or Can't you? Why not?

51.4

2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

hope so. expect so. don't think so. 'm afraid not. 'm afraid so. suppose so.
hope not. think so.

UNIT 52

52.1

52.2

2 It's (very) expensive, isn't it?

3 The course was great, wasn't it?

4 You've had your hair cut, haven't you? or

You had your hair cut, didn't you?

5 She has a good voice, hasn't she? or She's got / She has got a good voice, hasn't she? or She has a good voice, doesn't she?

6 It doesn't look very good, does it?

7 This bridge isn't very safe, is it? or ... doesn't look very safe, does it?

52.3

2 Joe, you couldn't give me a hand (with this table), could you?

3 Kate, you don't know where Sarah is, do you? or ... you haven't seen Sarah, have you?

4 Helen, you haven't got a bicycle pump, have you? or ...you don't have a bicycle pump, do you?

5 Ann, you couldn't take me to the station, could you? or

... you couldn't give me a lift to the station, could you?

6 Robert, you haven't seen my keys, have you?

UNIT 53

53.1

2 playing tennis

3 driving too fast

4 going swimming

5 breaking the DVD player

6 waiting a few minutes

53.2

3 painting the kitchen

4 turning the music down

5 not interrupting

53.4

Example answers:

2 going out

3 sitting on the floor

4 having a picnic

5 laughing

6 breaking down

UNIT 54

54.1

2 to help him

3 to carry her bag (for her)

4 to meet at 8 o'clock

5 to tell him her name / to give him her name

6 not to tell anyone

54.2

54.4

2 Tom appears to be worried about something.

3 You seem to know a lot of people.

4 My English seems to be getting better.

5 That car appears to have broken down.

6 David tends to forget things.

7 They claim to have solved the problem.

54.5

2 what to do

3 how to ride

4 whether to go

5 where to put

6 how to use

UNIT 55

55.1

2 or do you want me to lend you some

3 or would you like me to shut it

4 or would you like me to show you

5 or do you want me to repeat it

6 or do you want me to wait

55.2

2 to stay with them

3 her to call Joe.

4 him to be careful

5 her to give him a hand

Key to Exercises

55.3

2 I didn't expect it to rain.

3 Let him do what he wants.

4 Tim's glasses make him look older.

5 I want you to know the truth.

6 Sarah persuaded me to apply for the job.

7 My lawyer advised me not to say anything to the police.

8 I was warned not to believe everything he says.

9 Having a car enables you to get around more easily.

his parents when he was eight.

3 He doesn't remember crying on his first day at school.

4 He can remember falling into the river.

5 He can't remember saying he wanted to be a doctor, or

He can't remember wanting to be a doctor.

6 He doesn't remember being bitten by a dog.

56.3

1 b lending

c to phone / to call d to say

e leaving/putting

2 a saying b to say

c wearing / having / taking / putting on

3 a to become b working

c reading / looking at

4 a losing or to lose b to get / to feel

c crying or to cry

UNIT 57

57.1

2 Try turning it the other way.

3 Have you tried restarting it?

4 You could try phoning his office.

5 Have you tried taking an aspirin?

57.2

2 It needs painting.

3 It needs cutting.

4 They need tightening.

5 It needs emptying.

57.3

1 b knocking c to put

d asking

e to reach

f to concentrate

2 a to go

b looking

c cleaning

d cutting

e You don't need to iron ... It doesn't need ironing

3 a overhearing

b get or to get

c smiling

d make or to make

UNIT 58

58.1

Example answers:

2 I don't mind playing cards.

3 I don't like being alone, or ... to be alone.

4 I enjoy going to museums.

5 I love cooking, or I love to cook.

58.2

2 She likes teaching biology.

3 He likes taking pictures.

or He likes to take pictures.

- 4 I didn't like working there.
- 5 She likes studying medicine.
- 6 He doesn't like being famous.
- 7 She doesn't like taking risks.
- or She doesn't like to take risks.
- 8 I like to know things in advance.

58.3

- 2 to sit
- 3 waiting
- 4 going or to go
- 5 to get
- 6 being
- 7 to come / to go
- 8 living
- 9 to talk
- 10 to have / to know / to get / to hear / to be told

58.4

- 2 I would like / I'd like to have seen the programme.
- 3 I would hate / I'd hate to have lost my watch.
- 4 I would love / I'd love to have met your parents.
- 5 I wouldn't like to have been alone.
- 6 I would prefer / I'd prefer to have travelled by train.

UNIT 59

59.1

Example answers:

2 I prefer basketball to football.

3 I prefer going to the cinema to watching DVDs at home.

3 I prefer being very busy to having nothing to do.

5 I prefer to go to the cinema rather than watch DVDs at home.

6 I prefer to be very busy rather than have nothing to do.

59.2

3 prefer

4 eat/stay

5 I'd rather (wait) / I'd prefer to (wait)

6 to go

7 I'd rather (think)/ I'd prefer to (think)

8 I'd prefer to stand.

9 go

11 I'd prefer to go for a swim rather than play tennis.

12 I'd rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.

13 I'd prefer to think about it for a while rather than decide now.

14 I'd rather listen to some music than watch TV.

59.3

2 (would you rather) I told her

3 would you rather I did it

4 would you rather I phoned her

59.4

2 stayed/remained/waited

3 stay

4 didn't

5 were

6 didn't

Key to Exercises

UNIT 60

60.1

2 applying for the job

3 remembering names

4 winning the lottery

5 being late

6 eating at home, we went to a restaurant

7 having to queue or queuing

8 playing very well

60.2

2 by standing on a chair

3 by turning a key

4 by borrowing too much money

5 by driving too fast

6 by putting some pictures on the walls

60.3

2 paying/settling

3 going

4 using

5 going

6 being/travelling/sitting

7 asking/telling/consulting

8 doing/having

9 turning/going 10 taking

60.4

2 I'm looking forward to seeing her. / ... seeing Kate.

3 I'm not looking forward to going to the dentist (tomorrow).

4 She's looking forward to leaving school (next summer).

5 I'm looking forward to playing tennis (tomorrow).

UNIT 61

61.1

1 When Jack started working in this job, he wasn't used to driving two hours to work every morning, but after some time he got used to it. Now it's no problem for him. He's used to driving two hours every morning. / He is used to driving ...

2 She wasn't used to working nights and it took her a few months to get used to it. Now, after a year, it's OK for her. She's used to working nights. /

She is used to working ...

61.2

2 No, I'm used to sleeping on the floor.

3 I'm used to working long hours.

4 Yes, I'm not used to going to bed so late.

61.3

2 They soon got used to her. / ... to the/their new teacher.

3 She had to get used to living in a much smaller house.

4 (example answers) They'll have to get used to the weather. /... to the food.
/ ... to speaking a foreign language.

61.4

2 drink

3 eating

4 having

5 have

6 go

7 be

8 being

9 live ... living

UNIT 62

62.1

2 doing

3 coming/going

4 spending/having

5 buying/having

6 seeing

7 watching

8 solving

9 buying/having

62.2

2 of causing

3 from walking (or stop people walking)

4 for interrupting

5 of using

6 of doing

7 from escaping (or prevent the prisoner escaping)

8 on telling

9 to eating

10 for being

11 for inviting

12 of (not) wearing

62.3

2 on taking Ann to the station

3 on getting married

- 4 Sue for coming to see her
- 5 (to me) for not phoning earlier
- 6 me of being selfish

UNIT 63

63.1

- 2 There's no point in working if you don't need money.
- 3 There's no point in trying to study if you feel tired.
- 4 There's no point in hurrying if you've got plenty of time.

63.2

- 2 asking David
- 3 in going out
- 4 phoning her/Lisa
- 5 complaining (about what happened)
- 6 keeping

63.3

- 2 remembering people's names
- 3 getting a job
- 4 getting a ticket for the game
- 5 understanding him

63.4

- 2 reading
- 3 packing / getting ready

4 watching

5 going/climbing/walking

6 getting/being

63.5

2 went swimming

3 go skiing

4 goes riding

5 gone shopping

UNIT 64

64.1

2 I opened the box to see what was in it.

3 I'm saving money to go to Canada.

4 I need a knife to chop these onions.

5 I'm wearing two sweaters to keep warm.

6 I phoned the police to report the accident.

64.2

2 to read

3 to walk / to go on foot

4 to drink

5 to put / to carry

6 to discuss / to consider / to talk about

7 to go / to travel

8 to talk / to speak

9 to wear / to put on

10 to celebrate

11 to help / to assist

64.3

2 for

3 to

4 to

5 for

6 to

7 for

8 for... to

Key to Exercises

64.4

2 so that I wouldn't be cold.

3 so that he could contact me. / ... would be able to contact me.

4 so that nobody else would hear our conversation. / so that nobody else could hear.../... would be able to hear...

5 so that we can start the meeting on time. / so that we'll be able to start ...

6 so that we wouldn't forget anything.

7 so that the car behind me could overtake. / ... would be able to overtake.

UNIT 65

65.1

2 This machine is easy to use.

3 The window was very difficult to open.

4 Some words are impossible to translate.

5 A car is expensive to maintain.

6 That chair isn't safe to stand on.

65.2

2 It's an easy mistake to make.

3 It's a nice place to live, or ... a nice place to live in.

4 It was a good game to watch.

65.3

2 It's careless of you to make the same mistake again and again.

3 It was nice of them to invite me (to stay with them). / It was nice of Dan and Jenny to ...

4 It's inconsiderate of them to make so much noise. / It's inconsiderate of the neighbours to ...

65.4

2 I'm / I am glad to hear or I was glad to hear

3 We were surprised to see

4 Pleased to meet

65.5

2 Paul was the last (person) to arrive.

3 Emily was the only student to pass (the exam). / ... the only one to pass

(the exam).

4 I was the second customer/person to complain (about the service).

5 Neil Armstrong was the first person/man to walk on the moon.

65.6

2 're/are bound to be

3 's/is sure to forget

4 's/is not likely to rain or isn't likely to rain

5 's/is likely to be

UNIT 66

66.1

3 I'm afraid of losing it.

4 I was afraid to tell her.

5 We were afraid of missing our train.

6 We were afraid to look.

7 I was afraid of dropping it.

8 a I was afraid to eat it.

b I was afraid of getting sick.

66.2

2 in starting

3 to read

4 in getting

5 to know

6 in looking

663

2 sorry to hear

3 sorry for saying /

sorry about saying / sorry I said

4 sorry to disturb

5 sorry for losing / sorry about losing / sorry I lost

66.4

UNIT 67

67.1

2 arrive

3 take it/do it

4 it ring

5 him play or him playing

6 you lock it / you do it

7 her fall

67.2

2 We saw David and Helen playing tennis.

3 We saw Clare eating in a restaurant. / ... having a meal in a restaurant.

4 We heard Bill playing his guitar.

5 We could smell the dinner burning.

6 We saw Linda jogging/running.

67.3

3 tell 8 explode

4 crying 9 crawling

5 riding 10 slam

6 say 11 sleeping

7 run ... climb

UNIT 68

68.1

2 Amy was sitting in an armchair reading a book.

3 Sue opened the door carefully trying not to make a noise.

4 Sarah went out saying she would be back in an hour.

5 Lisa was in London for two years working in a bookshop.

6 Anna walked around the town looking at the sights and taking pictures.

68.2

2 I fell asleep watching TV.

3 A friend of mine slipped and fell getting off a bus.

4 I got very wet walking home in the rain.

5 Laura had an accident driving to work yesterday.

6 Two people were overcome by smoke trying to put out the fire.

68.3

2 Having bought our tickets, we went into the theatre.

3 Having had lunch, they continued their journey.

4 Having done the shopping, I went for a cup of coffee.

68.4

2 Thinking they might be hungry,...

3 Being a vegetarian,...

4 Not knowing his email address,...

5 Having travelled a lot,...

6 Not being able to speak the local language,...

7 Having spent nearly all our money,...

UNIT 69

69.1

3 We went to a very nice restaurant ...

4 OK

5 I use a toothbrush ...

6 ... if there's a bank near here?

7 ... for an insurance company

8 OK

9 OK

10 ... we stayed in a big hotel.

11 ... I hope we come to a petrol station soon.

12 ... I have a problem.

13 ... It's a very interesting idea.

14 John has an interview for a job tomorrow.

15 ... It's a good game.

16 OK

17 Jane was wearing a beautiful necklace.

Key to Exercises

69.2

70.3

2 I'd like some information about places to see in the town.

3 Can you give me (some) advice about which courses to do? / ... courses I can do?

4 What time is the news (on)?

5 It's a beautiful view, isn't it?

6 What horrible/awful weather!

UNIT 71

71.1

3 It's a vegetable.

4 It's a game. / It's a board game.

5 They're birds.

6 It's a (tall/high) building.

7 They're planets.

8 It's a flower.

9 They're rivers.

10 They're musical instruments.

12 He was a writer / a poet / a playwright / a dramatist.

13 He was a scientist / a physicist.

14 They were US presidents / American presidents / presidents of the USA.

15 She was an actress / a film actress / a film star / a movie star.

16 They were singers.

17 They were painters / artists.

71.2

2 He's a waiter.

3 She's a journalist.

4 He's a surgeon.

5 He's a chef.

6 He's a plumber.

7 She's a tour guide.

8 She's an interpreter.

71.3

4 a

5 an

6 - (You're always asking questions!)

7 a

8 Some

9 - (Do you like staying in hotels?)

10 - (I've got sore feet.)

11 a

12 some

13 a ... a

14 - (Those are nice shoes.)

15 some

16 You need a visa to visit some countries

17 Jane is a teacher. Her parents were teachers too.

18 He's a liar. He's always telling lies.

UNIT 72

72.1

1 ... and a magazine. The newspaper is in my bag, but I can't remember where I put the magazine.

2 I saw an accident this morning. A car crashed into a tree. The driver of the car wasn't hurt, but the car was badly damaged.

3 ... a blue one and a grey one. The blue one belongs to my neighbours; I don't know who the owner of the grey one is.

4 My friends live in an old house in a small village. There is a beautiful garden behind the house. I would like to have a garden like that.

2 the dentist

3 the door

4 a mistake

5 the bus station

6 a problem

7 the post office

8 the floor

9 the book

10 a job in a bank

11 a small apartment in the city centre

12 a supermarket at the end of the street

72.4

Example answers:

2 About once a month.

3 Once or twice a year.

4 50 kilometres an hour.

5 About seven hours a night.

6 Two or three times a week.

7 About two hours a day.

8 About £20 a day.

Key to Exercises

UNIT 73

73.1

2 a nice holiday ... the best holiday

3 the nearest shop ... the end of this street

4 a lovely day ... a cloud in the sky

5 to the internet... the same problem

6 the most expensive hotel... a cheaper hotel

7 to travel in space ... go to the moon

8 a star... a planet... the largest planet in the solar system

73.2

2 watching TV

3 the radio

4 The television

5 had dinner

6 the same time

7 the capital

8 for breakfast

9 the ground ... the sky

73.3

2 the same thing

3 Room 25 is on the second floor.

4 The moon goes round the earth every 27 days, or

... goes round Earth ...

5 a very hot day ... the hottest day of the year

6 We had lunch in a nice restaurant by the sea.

7 at the cinema

8 eat a good breakfast

9 on the wrong platform

10 The next train ... from Platform 3

11 You'll find the information you need at the top of page 15.

73.4

2 the sea 5 breakfast

3 question 8 6 the gate

4 the cinema 7 Gate 21

UNIT 74

74.1

2 to school

3 at home

4 to work

5 in hospital

6 at university

7 in bed

8 to prison

74.2

2 school

3 the school

4 School

5 ... get to and from school ... The school isn't very far.

6 school

74.3

1 c OK

d the university

2 a OK

b the hospital... the hospital c OK

3 a OK b OK

c the church

4 a OK

b the prison c OK

74.4

2 in bed

3 after work

4 in the sea

5 like home

UNIT 75

6 go to bed

7 The bed

8 at sea

9 work

75.1

Example answers: 2-5

- I like cats.
- I don't like zoos.
- I don't mind snow.

- I'm not interested in boxing.

75.2

3 spiders

4 meat

5 the questions

6 the people

7 History

8 lies

9 The hotels

10 The water

11 the grass

12 patience

75.3

2 Apples

3 the apples

4 Women ... men

5 tea

6 The vegetables

7 Life

8 holidays (= 'holidays by the sea' in general)

9 education

10 the people

11 people ... aggression

12 All the books

13 the rooms

14 war

15 The First World War

16 films

17 the history of modern art

18 the marriage

19 Most people ... marriage ... family life ... society

UNIT 76

76.1

1 b the cheetah

c the kangaroo (and the rabbit)

2 a the swan

b the penguin

c the owl

3 a the wheel b the laser

c the telescope

4 a the rupee

b the (Canadian) dollar

c the ...

76.2 2 a

3 4 5 6 7

the a

the the a

8 The 76.3

2 the injured

3 the unemployed

4 the sick

5 the rich ... the poor 76.4

2 a German Germans

3 a Frenchman/Frenchwoman the French

4 a Russian Russians

5 a Chinese the Chinese

6 a Brazilian Brazilians

7 an Englishman/Englishwoman the English

8 ...

UNIT 77

77.1

2 the

3 the ... the

4 - (President Kennedy was assassinated in 1963.)

5 the

6 - (I'm looking for Professor Brown.)

77.2

3 OK

4 the United States

5 The south of England ... the north

6 OK

7 the Channel

8 the Middle East

9 OK

10 the Swiss Alps

11 The UK

12 The Seychelles ... the Indian Ocean

13 OK

14 The river Volga ... the Caspian Sea

Key to Exercises

UNIT 78

78.1

2 Turner's in Carter Road

3 the Crown (Hotel) in Park Road

4 St Peter's in Market Street

5 the City Museum in George Street

6 Blackstone's (Books) in Forest Avenue

7 Mario's (Pizza) in George Street

8 Victoria Park at the end of Market Street

78.2

2 The Eiffel Tower

3 Buckingham Palace

4 The White House

5 The Kremlin

6 Broadway

7 The Acropolis

8 Gatwick Airport

78.3

2 Central Park

3 St James's Park

4 The Imperial Hotel... Baker Street

5 Dublin Airport

6 Liverpool University

7 Harrison's

8 the Park Plaza

9 The Statue of Liberty ... New York Harbour

10 the Science Museum

11 IBM ... British Telecom

12 The Classic

13 the Great Wall

14 The Times

15 Cambridge University Press

16 the College of Art

UNIT 79

79.1

79.2

2 politics 5 physics

3 economics 6 gymnastics

4 athletics 7 electronics

79.3

79.4

3 ... wearing black jeans.

4 OK

5 ... very nice people.

6 Ten pounds isn't...

7 ... buy some new pyjamas, or ... buy a new pair of pyjamas.

8 OK (The committee hasn't is also correct)

9 There was a police officer /

a policeman / a policewoman ...

81.2

2 a boy's name

3 children's clothes

4 a girls' school

5 a bird's nest

6 a women's magazine

81.3

2 Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.

3 The town's only cinema has closed down.

4 Britain's weather is very changeable.

5 The region's main industry is tourism.

81.4

2 twenty minutes' walk

3 two weeks' holiday / fourteen days' holiday / a fortnight's holiday

4 an/one hour's sleep

Key to Exercises

UNIT 82

82.1

2 hurt himself

3 blame herself

4 Put yourself

5 enjoyed themselves

6 burn yourself

7 express myself

82.2

2 me

3 myself

4 us

5 yourself

6 you

7 ourselves

8 them

9 themselves

82.3

2 feel

3 dried myself

4 concentrate

5 defend yourself

6 meeting

7 relax

82.4

2 themselves

3 each other

4 each other

5 themselves

6 each other

7 ourselves

8 each other

9 introduced ourselves to each other 82.5

2 He cuts it himself.

3 No, I'll tell her myself.

4 Linda told me herself. / Linda herself told me. / Linda did herself.

5 Why can't you phone him yourself? / ... do it yourself?

UNIT 83

83.1

2 We met a relative of yours.

3 Jason borrowed a book of mine.

4 Lisa invited some friends of hers to her flat.

5 We had dinner with a neighbour of ours.

6 I went on holiday with two friends of mine.

7 Is that man a friend of yours?

8 I met a friend of Jane's at the party.

9 It's always been an ambition of mine (to travel round the world).

83.2

2 his own opinions

3 her own business

4 our own words

5 its own private beach

83.3

2 your own fault

3 her own ideas

4 your own problems

5 his own decisions

83.4

2 makes her own (clothes)

3 bake/make our own (bread)

4 clean your own (shoes)

5 write their own (songs)

83.5

UNIT 84

84.1

84.2

2 There's / There is a lot of salt in the soup, or ... too much salt...

3 There was nothing in the box. or There wasn't anything in the box.

4 There's / There is a lot of violence in the film.

5 There were a lot of people in the shopping mall.

6 There is a lot to do in this town. / There is a lot happening in this town.

84.3

2 There may be

3 there will be / there'll be or there are going to be

4 There's going to be / There is going to be

5 There used to be

6 there should be

7 there wouldn't be

84.4

2 OK

3 there will be an opportunity

4 OK

5 There must have been a reason.

6 OK

7 There's sure to be a car park somewhere.

8 OK

9 There has been no change.

10 There used to be a church here

11 there would be somebody ... but there wasn't anybody.

12 OK

UNIT 85

85.1

85.2

2 somebody/someone

3 anybody/anyone

4 anything

5 something

6 somebody/someone ... anybody/anyone

7 something ... anybody/anyone

8 Anybody/Anyone

9 anybody/anyone

10 anywhere

11 somewhere

12 anywhere

13 anybody/anyone

14 something

15 Anybody/Anyone

16 anything

17 something

18 anybody/anyone ... anything

Key to Exercises

85.3

2 Any day

3 Anything

4 anywhere

5 Any job or Anything

6 Any time

7 Anybody/Anyone

8 Any newspaper or Any one

UNIT 86

86.1

3 no 8 No

4 any 9 no

5 None 10 any

6 none 11 none

7 any 12 no

86.2

2 Nobody/No-one.

3 None.

4 Nowhere.

5 None.

6 Nothing.

8 I wasn't talking to anybody/anyone.

9 I don't want any sugar.

10 I'm not going anywhere.

11 I didn't get any emails.

12 I didn't pay anything.

86.3

2 nobody/no-one

3 Nowhere

4 anything

5 Nothing. I couldn't find anything ...

6 Nothing

7 anywhere

8 Nobody/No-one said anything 86.4

2 nobody

3 anyone

4 Anybody

5 Nothing

UNIT 87

6 Anything

7 anything

8 any

9 No-one ... anyone

87.1

3 a lot of salt

4 OK

5 It cost a lot

6 OK

7 many people or a lot of people

8 Mike travels a lot.

9 OK

10 a lot of money 87.2

2 He has (got) plenty of money.

3 There's plenty of room.

4 ... she still has plenty to learn.

5 There is plenty to see.

6 There are plenty of hotels.

5 6 7

few

little

many

6 a little

7 little

8 a few

87.3

2 little

3 many

4 much

87.4

3 a few dollars

4 OK

5 a little time

6 OK

7 only a few words

8 a few months

87.5

2 a little

3 a few

4 few

5 little

UNIT 88

88.1

3 -

4 of

5 -

6 -

7 of

8 of

9 - (of is also correct) 10 -

88.2

3 of my spare time

4 accidents

5 of the buildings

6 of her friends

7 of the population

8 birds

9 of the players

10 of her opinions

11 European countries

12 (of) my dinner

88.3

Example answers:

2 the time

3 my friends

4 (of) the questions

5 the pictures / the photos / the photographs

6 (of) the money

88.4

2 All of them

3 none of us

4 some of it

5 none of them

6 None of it

7 Some of them

8 all of it

UNIT 89

89.1

2 Neither 4 Either

3 both 5 Neither

89.2

2 either

3 both

4 Neither of

5 neither driver... both / both the / both of the cars

6 both/both of

89.3

2 either of them

3 both of them

4 Neither of us

5 neither of them

89.4

3 Both Joe and Sam are on holiday.

4 Neither Joe nor Sam has (got) a car.

5 Brian neither watches TV nor reads newspapers.

6 The movie was both boring and long.

7 That man's name is either Richard or Robert.

8 I have neither the time nor the money to go on holiday.

9 We can leave either today or tomorrow.

89.5

2 either

3 any

4 none

5 any

6 either

7 neither

UNIT 90

90.1

3 Everybody/Everyone

4 Everything

5 all

6 everybody/everyone

7 everything

8 All

9 everybody/everyone

10 All

11 everything/all

12 Everybody/Everyone

13 All

14 everything 90.2

2 The whole team played well.

3 He ate the whole box (of chocolates).

4 They searched the whole house.

5 The whole family play/plays tennis.

6 Ann/She worked the whole day.

7 It rained the whole week.

8 Ann worked all day.

9 It rained all week.

90.3

2 every four hours

3 every four years

4 every five minutes

5 every six months

Key to Exercises

90.4

2 every day

3 all day

4 The whole building

5 every time

6 all the time

7 all my luggage

UNIT 91

91.3

2 Sonia and I had ten pounds each. / Sonia and I each had ten pounds.

3 Those postcards cost 80 pence each. / Those postcards are

80 pence each.

4 We paid £150 each. / We each paid £150.

91.4

2 everyone

3 every one

4 Everyone

5 every one

UNIT 92

92.1

2 A burglar is someone who breaks into a house to steal things.

3 A customer is someone who buys something from a shop.

4 A shoplifter is someone who steals from a shop.

5 A coward is someone who is not brave.

6 An atheist is someone who doesn't believe in God.

7 A pessimist is someone who expects the worst to happen.

8 A tenant is someone who pays rent to live in a house or apartment.

92.2

2 The waitress who/that served us was impolite and impatient.

3 The building that/which was destroyed in the fire has now been rebuilt.

4 The people who/that were arrested have now been released.

5 The bus that/which goes to the airport runs every half hour.

92.3

2 who/that runs away from home

3 that/which were hanging on the wall

4 that/which cannot be explained

5 who/that stole my wallet

6 that/which gives you the meaning of words

7 who/that invented the telephone

8 that/which can support life

92.4

3 the nearest shop that/which sells

4 the driver who/that caused

5 OK (the person who took is also correct)

6 a world that/which is changing

7 OK (some things about me which were is also correct)

8 the horse that/which won

UNIT 93

93.1

3 OK (the people who/that we met is also correct)

4 The people who work in the office

5 OK (the people who/that I work with is also correct)

6 OK (the money that/which I gave you fa also correct)

7 the money that/which was on the table

8 OK (the worst film that/which you've ever seen is also correct)

9 the best thing that/which has ever happened to you

93.2

2 you're wearing or that/which you're wearing

3 you're going to see or that/which you're going to see

4 I/we wanted to visit or that/which I/we wanted to visit

5 I/we invited to the party or who/whom/that we invited ...

6 you had to do or that/which you had to do

7 I/we rented or that/which I/we rented

93.3

2 the wedding we were invited to

3 the hotel you told me about

4 the job I applied for

5 the concert you went to

6 somebody you can rely on

7 the man you were with

93.4

3 - (that is also correct)

4 what

5 that

6 what

7 - (that is also correct)

8 what

9 - (that is also correct)

UNIT 94

94.1

2 whose wife is an English teacher

3 who owns a restaurant

4 whose ambition is to climb Everest

5 who have just got married

6 whose parents used to work in a circus

94.2

2 where I can get some water

3 (The) factory where I work

4 the hotel where Sue is staying

5 (the) park where I/we play football

94.3

2 where 6 where

3 who 7 whose

4 whose 8 whom

5 whom

94.4

Example answers:

2 The reason I left my job was that the salary was very low.

3 I'll never forget the time I got stuck in a lift.

4 Do you remember the day we first met?

5 The reason they don't have a car is that they don't need one.

6 2003 was the year Amanda got married.

UNIT 95

95.1

3 We often go to visit our

friends in Cambridge, which is not far from London.

4 I went to see the doctor, who told me I needed to change my diet.

5 Steven, who/whom I've known for a very long time, is one of my closest friends.

6 Lisa, whose job involves a lot of travelling, is away from home a lot.

7 The new stadium, which can hold 90,000 people, will be finished next month.

8 Alaska, where my brother lives, is the largest state in the USA.

9 Our teacher, whose name I have forgotten, was very kind.

Key to Exercises

95.2

3 The strike at the factory, which began ten days ago, is now over.

4 I've found the book I was looking for this morning, or ...the book that/which I was looking for.

5 My car, which I've had for 15 years, has never broken down.

6 Few of the people who/that applied for the job had the necessary qualifications.

7 Amy showed me a picture of her son, who is a police officer.

95.3

2 My office, which is on the second floor, is very small.

3 OK (The office that/which I'm using ... is also correct)

4 Mark's father, who used to be in the army, now works for a TV company.

5 OK (The doctor who examined me ... is also correct)

6 The sun, which is one of millions of stars in the universe, provides us with heat and light.

UNIT 96

96.1

2 of which he's very proud

3 with whom we went on holiday

4 to which only members of the family were invited

96.2

2 most of which was useless

3 none of whom was suitable

4 one of which she hardly ever uses

5 half of which he gave to his parents

6 both of whom are lawyers

7 neither of which she replied to

8 only a few of whom I knew

9 (the) sides of which were lined with trees

10 the aim of which is to save money 96.3

2 Jane doesn't have a phone, which makes it difficult to contact her.

3 Alex has passed his exams, which is good news.

4 Our flight was delayed, which meant we had to wait three hours at the airport.

5 Kate offered to let me stay at her house, which was very kind of her.

6 The street I live in is very noisy at night, which makes it difficult to sleep sometimes.

7 Our car has broken down, which means we can't go away tomorrow.

UNIT 97

97.1

UNIT 98

98.3

UNIT 99

99.1

Key to Exercises

100.3

2 careful

3 continuously

4 happily

5 fluent

6 specially

7 complete

8 perfectly

9 nervous

10 financially or completely 100.4

2 seriously ill

3 absolutely enormous

4 slightly damaged

5 unusually quiet

6 completely changed

7 unnecessarily long

8 badly planned

UNIT 101

101.1

2 good

3 well

4 good

5 well

6 well... good

7 well

8 good

9 well

101.2

2 well-known

3 well-kept

4 well-written

5 well-informed

6 well-dressed

7 well-paid

101.3

2 OK 5 OK

3 OK 6 slowly

4 hard

101.4

2 hardly hear

3 hardly slept

4 hardly speak

5 hardly said

6 hardly changed

7 hardly recognised

101.5

2 hardly any

3 hardly anything

4 hardly anybody/anyone

5 hardly ever

6 Hardly anybody/anyone

7 hardly anywhere

8 hardly or hardly ever

9 hardly any

10 hardly anything ... hardly anywhere

UNIT102

102.1

4 so

5 so

6 such a

7 so

8 such

9 such a

10 such a

11 so

12 so ... such

13 so

14 such a

15 such a

102.2

3 I was so tired (that) I couldn't keep my eyes open.

4 We had such a good time on holiday (that) we didn't want to come home.

5 She speaks English so well (that) you would think it was her native language, or She speaks such good English (that) ...

6 I've got such a lot to do (that) I don't know where to begin, or I've got so much to do (that) ...

7 The music was so loud (that) you could hear it from miles away.

8 I had such a big breakfast (that) I didn't eat anything else for the rest of the day.

9 It was such horrible weather (that) we spent the whole day indoors.

10 I was so surprised (that) I didn't know what to say.

102.3

Example answers:

2 a She's so friendly.

b She's such a nice person.

3 a It's so lively.

b It's such an exciting place.

4 a It's so exhausting.

b It's such a difficult job.

5 a I haven't seen you for so long.

b I haven't seen you for such a long time.

UNIT 103

103.1

3 enough money

4 enough milk

5 warm enough

6 enough room

7 well enough

8 enough time

9 big enough 10 enough cups

103.2

2 too busy to talk

3 too late to go

4 warm enough to sit

5 too shy to be

6 enough patience to be

7 too far away to hear

8 enough English to read

103.3

2 This coffee is too hot to drink.

3 The piano was too heavy to move.

4 These apples aren't / are not ripe enough to eat.

5 The situation is too complicated to explain.

6 The wall was too high to climb over.

7 This sofa isn't / is not big enough for three people (to sit on).

8 Some things are too small to see without a microscope.

UNIT 104

104.1

2 quite hungry

3 Quite good

4 quite often

5 quite noisy

6 quite surprised

7 quite late

8 quite old

104.2

2 quite a good voice

3 quite a long way

4 a pretty cold wind

5 quite a lot of traffic

6 a pretty busy day

104.3

Example answers:

2 rather long

3 rather disappointed

4 rather strange

5 rather impatient

104.4

3 more than a little ...

4 completely

5 more than a little ...

6 more than a little ...

7 completely

104.5

2 quite safe

3 quite impossible

4 quite right

5 quite different

6 quite unnecessary

7 quite sure

Key to Exercises

107.4

2 Your hair is the same colour as mine.

3 I arrived (at) the same time as you.

4 My birthday is (on) the same day as Tom's, or

My birthday is the same as Tom's. 107.5

2 than him / than he does

3 as me / as I do

4 than us / than we were

5 than her / than she is

6 as them / as they have been

UNIT 108

108.1

2 It's the cheapest restaurant in the town.

3 It was the happiest day of my life.

4 She's the most intelligent student in the class.

5 It's the most valuable painting in the gallery.

6 It's the busiest time of the year.

8 He's one of the richest men in the country.

9 It's one of the biggest castles in Europe.

10 She's one of the best players in the team, (on the team is also possible)

11 It was one of the worst experiences of my life.

12 It's one of the most famous universities in the world.

108.2

3 larger

4 the smallest

5 better

6 the worst

7 the most popular

8 ... the highest mountain in the world ... It is higher than ...

9 the tallest

10 more comfortable

11 the quickest

12 quicker

13 the most expensive

14 The oldest or The eldest

108.3

2 That's the funniest joke I've ever heard.

3 This is the best coffee I've ever tasted.

4 She's the most generous person I've ever met.

5 That's the furthest/farthest I've ever run.

6 It's the worst mistake I've ever made, or It was the worst...

7 Who's the most famous person you've ever met?

Key to Exercises

UNIT 109

109.1

3 Joe doesn't like football very much.

4 OK

5 I ate my breakfast quickly and ...

6 ... a lot of people to the party?

7 OK

8 Did you go to bed late last night?

9 OK

10 I met a friend of mine on my way home.

109.2

2 We won the game easily.

3 I closed the door quietly.

4 Tanya speaks German quite well.

5 Sam watches TV all the time.

6 Please don't ask that question again.

7 Does Kevin play football every weekend?

8 I borrowed some money from a friend of mine.

109.3

2 I go to the supermarket every Friday.

- 3 Why did you come home so late?
- 4 Sarah takes her children to school every day.
- 5 I haven't been to the cinema recently.
- 6 Please write your name at the top of the page.
- 7 I remembered her name after a few minutes.
- 8 We walked around the town all morning.
- 9 I didn't see you at the party on Saturday night.
- 10 We found some interesting books in the library.
- 11 Laura left her umbrella in a restaurant last night.
- 12 They are building a new hotel opposite the park.

UNIT 110

110.1

- 3 I usually have ...
- 4 OK
- 5 Steve hardly ever gets angry.
- 6 ... and I also went to the bank.
- 7 Jane always has to hurry ...
- 8 I've never worked / I have never worked ...
- 9 OK (I never have enough time.) I'm always busy. / I am always busy.

110.2

- 2 Katherine is always very generous.
- 3 I don't usually have to work on Saturdays.

4 Do you always watch TV in the evenings?

5 ... he is also learning Japanese.

6 a We were all on holiday in Spain, b We were all staying at the same hotel.

c We all enjoyed ourselves.

7 a The new hotel is probably very expensive, b It probably costs a lot to stay there.

8 a I can probably help you. b I probably can't help you.

110.3

2 I usually take

3 I am usually / I'm usually

4 were both born

5 She can also sing

6 usually sleeps

7 I have never spoken / I've never spoken

8 You always have to wait

9 I can only read or I can read only

10 We were all... we all fell

11 I always am

12 I will probably be leaving / I'll probably be leaving

13 I probably won't be

14 She is hardly ever / She's hardly ever

15 We are still living / We're still living

16 we would never have met / we'd never have met

17 always says ... she never does

UNIT 111

111.1

3 He doesn't write poems any more.

4 He still wants to be a teacher.

5 He isn't / He's not interested in politics any more.

6 He's still single.

7 He doesn't go fishing any more.

8 He doesn't have a beard any more. or He hasn't got ...

10-12

- He no longer writes poems.
- He is / He's no longer interested in politics.
- He no longer goes fishing.
- He no longer has a beard, or He's no longer got a beard.

111.2

2 He hasn't gone yet.

3 They haven't finished (repairing the road) yet.

4 They haven't woken up yet.

5 Has she found a place to live yet?

6 I haven't decided (what to do) yet.

7 It hasn't taken off yet.

111.3

5 I don't want to go out yet.

6 she doesn't work there any more

7 I still have a lot of friends there, or I've still got ...

8 We've already met.

9 Do you still live in the same place

10 have you already eaten

11 He's not here yet.

12 he still isn't here (he isn't here yet is also possible)

13 are you already a member

14 I can still remember it very clearly

15 These trousers don't fit me any more.

16 'Have you finished with the paper yet?' 'No, I'm still reading it.'

UNIT112

112.1

2 even Lisa

3 not even Amy

4 even Lisa

5 even Kate

6 not even Lisa

112.2

2 We even painted the floor.

3 She's even met the prime minister.

4 You could even hear it / You could even hear the noise from the next street, or You could hear it / You could hear the noise even from the next street.

6 I can't even remember her name.

7 There isn't even a cinema.

8 He didn't even tell his wife (where he was going).

9 I don't even know the people next door.

112.3

Even

even though even if Even though

Key to Exercises

UNIT113

113.1

2 Although I had never seen her before

3 although it was quite cold

4 although we don't like them very much

5 Although I didn't speak the language well

6 Although the heating was on

7 although I'd met her twice before

8 although we've known each other a long time

113.2

2 a In spite of (or Despite) b Although

3 a because b although

4 a because of

b in spite of (or despite)

5 a although

b because of Example answers:

6 a he hadn't studied very hard b he had studied very hard

7 a I was hungry

b being hungry / my hunger / the fact (that) I was hungry

113.3

2 In spite of having very little money, they are happy, or

In spite of the fact (that) they have very little money ...

3 Although my foot was injured, I managed to walk home, or

I managed to walk home although my ...

4 I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story. / ... in spite of the story being silly. / ... in spite of the fact (that) the story was silly, or

In spite of..., I enjoyed the film.

5 Despite living in the same street, we hardly ever see each other, or
Despite the fact (that) we live in ... or We hardly ever see each other
despite ...

6 Even though I was only out for five minutes, I got very wet in the rain. or
I got very wet in the rain even though I was ...

113.4

2 It's very windy though.

3 We ate it though.

4 I don't like her husband though.

UNIT 114

114.1

2-5

- Take a map in case you get lost.
- Take an anorak in case it rains.
- Take a camera in case you want to take some pictures.
- Take some water in case you're thirsty. / ... in case you are thirsty. or ... you get thirsty.

114.2

2 I'll say goodbye now in case I don't see you again (before you go).

3 Can you check the list in case we forgot something?

or ... forgot anything?

4 You should back up your files in case there's a problem with your computer. / ... there is a problem with your computer.

114.3

2 in case I forgot it.

3 in case they were worried (about me).

4 in case she didn't get the first one. / in case she hadn't got... / in case she hadn't gotten ...

5 in case they came to London (one day).

114.4

3 If 7 if

4 if 8 in case

5 in case 9 in case

6 if

UNIT 115

115.1

2 You won't know what to do unless you listen carefully.

3 I'll never speak to her again unless she apologises to me. or Unless she apologises to me, I'll ...

4 He won't be able to understand you unless you speak very slowly, or Unless you speak very slowly, he ...

5 The company will have to close unless business improves soon, or Unless business improves soon, the company ...

115.2

2 I'm not going (to the party) unless you go too. /

... unless you're going too.

3 The dog won't attack you unless you move suddenly.

4 Ben won't speak to you unless you ask him something.

5 The doctor won't see you unless it's an emergency.

115.3

2 unless

3 providing

4 as long as

5 unless

6 unless

7 provided

8 Unless

9 unless

10 as long as

115.4

Example answers:

2 it's not too hot

3 there isn't too much traffic

4 it isn't raining

5 I'm in a hurry

6 you have something else to do

7 you pay it back next week

8 you take risks

UNIT116

116.1

2 I listened as she told me her story.

3 I burnt myself as I was taking a hot dish out of the oven.

4 The crowd cheered as the two teams came onto the field.

5 A dog ran out in front of the car as we were driving along the road.

116.2

2 As today is a public holiday, many of the shops are shut.

3 As I didn't want to disturb anybody, I was very quiet.

4 As I don't know what to do, I need some advice.

5 As none of us had a watch, we didn't know what time it was.

116.3

3 because

4 at the same time as

5 at the same time as

6 because

7 because

116.4

3 OK

4 when I was in London

5 When I left school

6 OK

7 when I was a child 116.5

Example answers:

1 I saw you as you were getting into your car.

2 It started to rain just as we started playing tennis.

3 As I didn't have enough money for a taxi, I had to walk home.

4 Just as I took the picture, somebody walked in front of the camera.

Key to Exercises

UNIT117

117.1

3 like her mother

4 people like him

5 OK

6 like most of his friends or as most of his friends are

7 like talking to the wall

8 OK

9 OK

10 OK

11 like a bomb exploding

12 like a fish

117.2

UNIT118

118.1

2 You look like you've seen a ghost. / ... like you saw a ghost.

3 You sound as if you're having a good time.

4 I feel like I've (just) run a marathon. / ... like I (just) ran a marathon.

118.2

2 It looks like it's going to rain.

3 It sounds like they're having an argument.

4 It looks like there's been an accident.

5 It looks like we'll have to walk.

6 It sounds like you should see a doctor.

118.3

as if he meant what he said

as if she's hurt her leg / as if she hurt

her leg

as if he hadn't eaten for a week

as if she was enjoying it

as if I'm going to be sick

as if she didn't want to come

119.3

Example answers:

3 Nobody came to see me while I was in hospital.

4 Can you wait for me while I make a quick phone call?

5 Most of the students looked bored during the lesson.

6 I was asked a lot of questions during the interview.

7 Don't open the car door while the car is moving.

8 The lights suddenly went out while we were watching TV.

9 It started to rain during the game. 10 It started to rain while we were walking home. 11 What are you going to do while you're on holiday?

UNIT 120

120.1

2 I have to be at the airport by 8.30.

3 Let me know by Saturday whether you can come to the party.

4 Please make sure that you're here by 2 o'clock.

5 If we leave now, we should arrive by lunchtime.

362

.. by (now)

120.3

Example answers:

3 until I come back

4 by 5 o'clock

5 by next Friday

6 until midnight

120.4

2 By the time I got to the station / By the time I'd got to the station

3 By the time I finished (my work) / By the time I'd finished (my work)

4 By the time the police arrived / By the time the police had arrived

5 By the time we got to the top (of the mountain) / By the time we'd got to the top (of the mountain)

UNIT 121

121.1

2 on

3 in

4 At or On

5 on or I last saw her Tuesday, (no preposition)

6 in

7 in

8 at

9 on or There are usually a lot of parties New Year's Eve. (no preposition)

10 at

11 in

12 at

13 on

14 in

15 On Saturday night or Saturday night (nopreposition) ... at midnight

16 at 5 o'clock in the morning

17 on 7 January ... in April

18 at home on Tuesday morning

or at home Tuesday morning (no preposition) ... in the afternoon

121.2

2 at night

3 in the evening

4 on 21 July 1969

5 at the same time

6 in the 1920s

7 in about 20 minutes

8 at the moment

9 in the Middle Ages

10 in 11 seconds

11 on Saturdays or ...works Saturdays (no preposition)

Key to Exercises

121.3

3 a

4 both

5 b

6 b

7 both

8 a

9 b 10 a

UNIT 122

122.1

2 on time

3 in time

4 on time

5 in time

6 on time

7 in time

8 in time

9 on time

122.2

2 I got home just in time.

3 I stopped him just in time.

4 We got to the cinema just in time for the beginning of the film. /... just in time to see the beginning of the film.

122.3

2 at the end of the month

3 at the end of the course

4 at the end of the race

5 at the end of the interview

122.4

2 In the end she resigned (from her job).

3 In the end I gave up (trying to learn German).

4 In the end we decided not to go (to the party), or

In the end we didn't go (to the party). 122.5

2 In 6 at

3 at ... at 7 in

4 in 8 at

5 in 9 in

UNIT 123

123.1

2 On his arm. or On the man's arm.

3 At the traffic lights.

4 a On the door, b In the door.

5 On the wall.

6 In Paris.

7 a At the gate, b On the gate.

8 On the beach.

123.2

2 on my guitar

3 at the next petrol station

4 in your coffee

5 on that tree

6 in the mountains

7 on the island

8 at the window

123.3

2 on

3 at

4 on

5 in

6 on

7 at

8 in a small village in the south-west

9 on

10 in

11 on the wall in the kitchen

12 at

UNIT 124

124.1

2 On the second floor.

3 At/On the corner.

4 In the corner.

5 At the top of the stairs.

6 In the back of the car.

7 At the front.

8 On the left.

9 In the back row. 10 On a farm.

124.2

2 on the right

3 in the world

4 on the way to work

5 on the west coast

6 in the front row

7 at the back of the class 6 on the back of this card

124.3

2 in 9 in

3 in 10 on

4 at 11 in

5 in 12 on

6 on 13 in

7 At 14 on ... on

8 in

UNIT 125

125.1

2 on a train

3 at a conference

4 in hospital / in the hospital

5 at the hairdresser's

6 on his bike

7 in New York

8 at the Savoy Theatre

125.2

2 in a taxi

3 at the cinema

4 in prison

5 at school

6 at the sports centre

7 in hospital

8 at the airport

9 on the plane 10 in Tokyo

125.3

2 at

3 in

4 at

5 at/in a very comfortable hotel... in Amsterdam

6 in

7 on

8 at

9 in

10 at

11 in

12 at home or be home (no

preposition) ... at work

13 in

14 in Birmingham ... at Birmingham University

UNIT 126

126.1

3 at

4 to

5 to

6 into

7 in

8 to

9 into

10 to

11 at

12 to

13 into

14 to

15 get home (nopreposition) ... going to bed

16 returned to France ... two years in Brazil

17 born in Chicago ... moved to New York ... lives in New York

126.2

Example answers: 2-4

- I've been to Sweden once.
- I've never been to the United States.
- I've been to Paris a few times.

126.3

2 in

3 - (no preposition)

4 at

5 to

6 - (no preposition)

Key to Exercises

126.4

2 I got on

3 I got out of the car. / ... my car.

4 I got off the train.

5 I got into the taxi, or I got in the taxi.

6 I got off the plane.

UNIT 127

127.1

2 in cold weather

3 in pencil

4 in love

5 in capital letters

6 in the shade

7 in my opinion

127.2

2 on strike

3 on a tour

4 on TV

5 on purpose

6 on a diet

7 on business

8 on holiday

9 on the phone 10 on the whole

127.3

2 on

3 on

4 at

5 in

6 on

7 in

8 on

9 at

10 at

11 on

12 In my opinion ... on television

13 on

14 on

15 on

16 at

17 on

18 in

UNIT 128

128.1

2 by mistake

3 by hand

4 by credit card

5 by canal

128.2

2 on

3 by

4 by car... on my bike

5 in

6 on

7 by

128.3

2 travelling by bus or travelling on the bus or travelling on buses

3 taken with a very good camera

4 this music is by Beethoven

5 pay cash or pay in cash

6 a mistake by one of our players

128.4

Example answers: 3-5

- Ulysses is a novel by James Joyce.
- Yesterday is a song by Paul McCartney.
- Cuernica is a painting by Pablo Picasso.

128.5

2 by

3 with

4 by

5 by

6 by car... in your car

7 by the bed with a lamp and a clock on it

128.6

2 The price has gone up by ten pence.

3 Helen won by two votes.

4 I missed her/Kate by five minutes.

UNIT 129

129.1

2 to the problem

3 with her brother

4 in the cost of living

5 to your question

6 for a new road

7 in or to working at home

8 in the number of people without jobs

9 for shoes like these any more 10 between your job and mine

129.2

2 invitation to

3 contact with

4 key to (key for is also possible)

5 cause of

6 reply to

7 connection between

8 photographs of

9 reason for 10 damage to

129.3

Key to Exercises

UNIT 131

131.1

2 similar to

3 afraid of

4 interested in

5 responsible for

6 proud of

7 different from / different to (different than is also possible)

8 capable of

131.2

2 of furniture

3 on sport

4 of time

5 at tennis

6 to a Russian / to a Russian man / to a Russian guy

7 of him / of Robert

8 from yours/to yours or from your problem / to your problem

131.3

15 at

16 of

17 on

18 of

131.4

Example answers:

2 I'm hopeless at telling jokes.

3 I'm not very good at maths.

4 I'm pretty good at remembering names.

5 I'm good at sport.

UNIT 132

132.1

2 a

3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

b b a a b a b b a b

132.2

3 speak to

4 point (them) at

5 look at

6 listen to

7 throw (stones) at

8 throw (it) to

9 reply to

132.3 2 at

3 4 5 6 7

at to to at at

8 to

9 at

10 at

11 to

UNIT133

133.1

133.2

2 3 4 5 6 7

of

about for of for

about

8 - (no preposition) 133.3

2 3 4 5 6

looking for looked after looking for look for looks after

133.4

2 wait for

3 talk about

4 asked (the waiter) for

5 applied for

6 do (something) about

7 looks after or has looked after

8 left (Boston) for

UNIT 134

134.1

2 3 4 5 6 7

hear about heard from heard of hear from hear about heard of

134.2

2 think about

3 think of

4 think of

5 thinking of/about

6 think of

7 thought about

8 think (much) of

9 thinking about/of 10 think of

134.3

2 about

3 to us about

4 of

5 of

6 about... about... about about

7 of

8 about

9 about/of

134.4

2 complaining about think about warn (you) about heard of dream of

reminded (me) about

3 4 5 6 7

8 remind (you) of

UNIT 135

135.1

2 for

3 of

4 of

5 - (no preposition)

6 for

7 of

8 for

9 of

10 for

11 on

135.2

2 3 4 5 6 7

for the misunderstanding her/Jane on winning the tournament him from his
enemies of eleven players on bread and eggs me for your problems / your
problems on me

Key to Exercises

135.3

2 paid for

3 accused of

4 depends on

5 live on

6 apologise to

7 suffers from

8 congratulated (him) on

135.4

2 from

3 on

4 - (no preposition)

5 from

6 depends how (no preposition) or depends on how

7 on

8 of

9 on

UNIT136

136.1

2 happened to

3 invited to

4 divided into

5 believe in

6 fill (it) with

7 drove into

8 Concentrate on

9 succeeded in

136.2

2 I prefer small towns to big cities

3 Jane provided me with all the information I needed

4 This morning I spent £70 on a pair of shoes

5 The city is divided into ten districts

136.3

2 to

3 on

4 in

5 to

6 in

7 with

8 into

9 in

10 on

11 - (no preposition)

12 into

13 on

14 into

15 with

16 from (one language) into another 136.4

Example answers:

2 on petrol

3 into a wall

4 to volleyball

5 in seafood

6 into many languages

UNIT 137

137.1

2 sit down

3 flew away

4 get out

5 speak up

6 get by

7 gone up

8 looked round

137.2

2 back at

3 up to

4 forward to

5 away with

6 up at

7 in through

137.3

2 wake me up

3 get it out

4 give them back

5 switch it on

6 take them off

137.4

3 I have to take them back

4 We can turn the television off

or We can turn off the television

5 I knocked it over

6 I don't want to wake her up

7 (example answer) You should put your coat on or

You should put on your coat

8 I was able to put it out

9 (example answer) they've put the price(s) up or

they've put up the price(s) 10 Shall I turn the light(s) on? or Shall I turn on the light(s)?

UNIT138

138.1

138.3

2 dropped out

3 moved in

4 left out

5 joined in

6 eating out or to eat out

7 taken in

8 dropped in

9 get out of

138.4

2 Fill them in or Fill them out

3 cross it out

4 took me in

5 let us in

UNIT139

139.1

139.3

2 giving out / handing out

3 turned out nice/fine/sunny

4 working out

5 fallen out

6 work out how to use the camera / her new camera

139.4

2 try it out

3 work it out

4 sorted it out / worked it out UNIT 140

140.1

2 put the heating on

3 put the oven on

4 put the kettle on

5 put a CD on

Key to Exercises

140.2

2 going on

3 takeoff

4 switched off / turned off

5 drove off / went off

6 put on

7 set off /be off

8 put off

9 called off

10 put on

11 see (me) off

140.3

2 took off

3 tried on a/the hat or tried a/the hat on

4 was called off

5 see him off

6 put them on

UNIT 141

141.1

2 went on / carried on

3 walked on / carried on or carried on walking

4 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off

5 go on / carry on / keep on

6 went off

7 keeps on phoning me 141.2

2 went off

3 finish off

4 drive on / carry on

5 ripped off

6 getting on

7 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off

8 told off

9 get on

10 going off

11 keep on

12 get on

13 showing off

14 put off

141.3

2 finish it off

3 were ripped off

4 go off

5 did you get on

6 carried on (playing) / went on (playing)

7 tell them off

8 doesn't get on (well) with

UNIT 142

142.1

2 took them down

3 stand up

4 turned it up

5 put their bags down

6 were blown down / fell down

7 put them up

8 bent down (and) picked them up 142.2

2 turn it down

3 calm him down

4 wrote it down

5 let her down

6 turned it down

142.3

2 calm down

3 slowed down

4 was turned down

5 broken down

6 cut down

7 let down

8 (has) closed down

9 be knocked down (or be pulled down or be torn down)

10 turned down

11 was knocked down

12 broke down

UNIT 143

143.1

2 went up to / walked up to

3 catch up with

4 keep up with

143.2

2 used up

3 washed up

4 grow up

5 turn up / show up

6 gave up

7 taking up

8 give up

9 ended up

10 takes up

11 make up

143.3

3 tidy it up / tidy up

4 fixed it up

5 keep up with

6 was brought up

7 keep it up

8 went up to

9 was made up of 10 set it up / fix it up

UNIT 144

144.1

2 d

3 4 5 6 7

e c

g a

b

144.2

2 held up

3 did it up

4 cheer him up

144.3

2 blew up

3 beaten up

4 broken up / split up

5 do up

6 clears up / will clear up

7 mixed up

144.4

2 look it up

3 put up with

4 made it up

5 come up with

6 tear it up

7 saving up for

UNIT 145

145.1

2 blew away

3 put it back

4 walked away

5 threw it back (to her)

6 threw them away

145.2

2 be away / have gone away

3 be back

4 ran away

5 smile back

6 get away

7 Keep away / Keep back

145.3

2 Pay

3 throw

4 gets

5 be

6 look

7 gave

8 get

145.4

2 throw it away

3 take them back

4 pay you back / pay it back

5 gave them away

6 call back / call me back

Key to Additional exercises (see page 302)

2 I'll come

3 shall we meet

4 starts

5 I'll meet

6 I'm seeing

7 Shall I ask

8 I'll see

9 are going

10 does the film start

11 Are you meeting

12 I'll be

12

13

1 I'll have

2 Are you going

3 shall I phone

4 It's going to land

5 it's/it is

6 I'll miss / I'm going to miss ... you go / you've gone

7 Shall I give ... I give ... will you call

8 does it end

9 I'm going ... is getting

10 I'll tell ... I'm ... I won't be

11 I'm going to have / I'm having

12 she apologises

13 we'll be living / we'll live

14 you finish/you've finished

14

2 I've had / I have had

3 I bought or I got

4 I'll come/ I will come or I'll be/ I will be

5 I've been / I have been or I've eaten / I have eaten

6 I used to play

7 I haven't been waiting or I haven't been here

8 I'd been / I had been or I was

9 I'm going / I am going

10 I haven't seen or I haven't heard from

11 I'll have gone / I will have gone or I'll have left / I will have left

15

2 I've been travelling

3 I'm beginning

4 I've seen

5 has been

6 I've met

7 I left

8 I stayed or I was staying

9 I'd planned or I was planning

10 I ended up

11 I enjoyed

12 I took

13 met

14 I'm staying or I'm going to stay or I'll be staying or I'll stay

15 I continue

16 I'll get

17 I'm

18 I'll let

19 I know

20 I'm staying

21 we're going to visit or we're visiting

Key to Additional exercises

11 should have been warned

12 might not have been feeling / might not have felt

18

3 could rain / might rain

4 might have gone / could have gone

5 couldn't go

6 couldn't have seen / can't have seen

7 should get

8 wouldn't recognise / might not recognise

9 must have heard 10 should have turned

19

4 rings

5 you were

6 it's/it is

7 it was / it were

8 it had been

9 you had

10 we hadn't had

11 you'd driven / you had driven or you'd been driving / you had been driving

12 I didn't read

20

2 came

3 I'd known / I had known ... wouldn't have disturbed ...

4 They'd be / They would be ... told

5 hadn't frightened ... wouldn't have attacked

6 wouldn't have got / wouldn't have gotten ...

I'd had/I had had

7 hadn't been/hadn't got/hadn't gotten ...

wouldn't have failed or would have passed /'d have passed

21

Example answers:

1 I wasn't feeling so tired

2 I hadn't had so much to do

3 I would have forgotten Jane's birthday

4 I'd take a picture of you

5 I'll take a picture of you

6 you were in trouble

7 you hadn't taken so long to get ready

8 I would have gone to the concert

9 I might have got the job

10 you'd eaten lunch

11 there was less traffic

12 people would go out more

369

Key to Additional exercises

22

3 was cancelled

4 has been repaired

5 is being restored

6 It's believed / It is believed

7 I'd be sacked / I would be sacked

8 It might have been thrown

9 I was taught

10 being arrested / having been arrested or I was arrested

11 Have you ever been arrested

12 are reported ... have been injured

23

3 Ve sold / have sold or sold

4 's been sold / has been sold or was sold

5 are made

6 might be stolen

7 must have been stolen

8 must have taken

9 can be solved

10 should have left

11 is delayed

12 is being built... is expected 24

Castle Fire

2 was discovered

3 was injured

4 be rescued

5 are believed to have been destroyed

6 is not known Shop robbery

1 was forced

2 being threatened

3 had been stolen

4 was later found

5 had been abandoned

6 has been arrested / was arrested

7 is still being questioned Road delays

1 is being resurfaced

2 are asked / are being asked / have been asked

3 is expected

4 will be closed / is going to be closed

5 will be diverted / is going to be diverted

Accident

1 was taken

2 was allowed

3 was blocked

4 be diverted

5 have been killed

25

1 I told her (that) Paul had gone out and I didn't know when he'd be back

I asked (her) if/whether she wanted to leave a message, but she said (that) she'd try again later.

2 I had reserved a hotel room, but when I got to the hotel they told me (that) they had no record of a reservation in my name.

When I asked (them) if/whether they had any rooms free anyway, they said (that) they were sorry, but the hotel was full.

3 The immigration official asked us why we were visiting the country, and we told him(that) we were on holiday.

Then he wanted to know how long we intended to stay and where we would be staying during our visit.

4 She said (that) she'd phone (us) from the airport when she arrived. or She said (that) she'll phone (us) from the airport when she arrives No, she said not to come to the airport

She said (that) she'd take the bus. or She said (that) she'll take the bus.

5 He wanted to know what my job was and asked (me) how much I earned, or

He wanted to know what my job is and asked (me) how much I earn. ... so I told him to mind his own business and I put the phone down.

6 He said (that) he'd be at the restaurant at 730.

He said (that) he knew where the restaurant was. And I told him to phone me if there was any problem.

7 You just said (that) you weren't hungry.

But you said (that) you didn't like bananas. You told me not to buy any.

27

3 I don't fancy going out.

4 He tends to forget things.

5 Would you mind helping me? / Do you mind helping me?

6 Everybody seems to have gone out.

7 WeVe/Weare thinking of moving.

8 I was afraid to touch it.

9 He's / He is afraid of being robbed.

10 It's/It is not worth seeing.

11 I'm not used to walking so far.

12 She seems to be enjoying herself.

13 He insisted on showing them to me.

14 I'd rather somebody else did it.

28

3 I've given up reading newspapers.

4 I'd rather not go out tonight / ... stay at home tonight.

5 He has trouble sleeping at night.

6 Do you want me to phone you this evening?

7 I came in without anybody/anyone seeing me / ... without being seen.

8 I was accused of being a cheat / ... of cheating.

9 I'm looking forward to seeing them again.

10 What do you advise me to do?

11 I'd like to have gone out with you last night.

12 I regret not taking your advice /

... that I didn't take your advice.

29

2 a foreign country ... the language

3 an economist... in the United States ... for an investment company

4 I love sport, especially tennis ... two or three times a week ... not a very good player

5 for dinner... after work ... to the cinema

6 When unemployment is ... for people to find work a big problem

7 an accident ... going home ... taken to hospital / taken to the hospital ... I think most accidents ... by people driving

8 the name of the hotel ... The Ambassador... in Queen Street in the city centre ... near the station

9 The older one ... a pilot with British Airways ... The younger one ... at school ... he leaves school ... go to university ... study law

Key to Additional exercises

30

2 B

3 4 5 6 7 8 9

C A C B A A C

or B

or C

10 B or C

11 12 13

B A A

or B

14 B

31

3 4 5 6 7

It's the most polluted place ... I was disappointed that... OK

Joe works hard, but... ... in a large modern building.

8 OK (as fast as he can is also correct)

9 I missed the last three days ...

10 OK

11 The weather has been unusually cold

12 The water in the pool was too dirty to swim in.

13 ... to wait such a longtime, or ... to wait so long.

14 OK

15 ... I got up earlier than usual.

32

2 If

3 when

4 if

5 when

6 if

7 if

8 unless

9 if

10 as long as

11 incase

12 in case

13 if

14 even if

15 Although

16 Although

17 When

18 when

33

2 3 4 5 6

on

at 9.30 on Tuesday morning at / on on at

7 In

8 at

9 during

10 on Friday ... since then

11 for

12 at

13 at the moment... until Friday

14 by

15 in

20 on the bus

21 on ... on

22 in

23 in Chicago

24 to

25 on

by car

to Italy

35

1

2 3 4 5 6

for

at

to

to

in

with

7 of

8 to

9 of

10 at/by

11 of

12 about

36

1 of

2 after

3 - (no preposition)

4 about

5 to

6 - (no preposition)

7 into

8 of (about is also possible)

9 to

10 - (no preposition)

11 on

12 of

13 of

14 - (no preposition)

15 in

16 at (about is also possible)

17 on

18 If Alex asks you for money

19 I apologised to Sarah for keeping

20 I thanked her for everything

40

3 went off

4 turned up / showed up

5 fill it in/fill it out

6 knocked down / pulled down / torn down

7 sorted out

8 give up

9 dozed off / dropped off / nodded off

10 split up / break up

11 put up with it

12 get by/live on

13 went on

14 put it off

41

2 put

3 moving

4 put

5 done

6 turned/turns

7 find

8 Calm

9 set

10 held

11 left /'ve left / have left or missed /'ve missed / have missed

12 works

13 join

14 works

15 drop /call

16 sort/work

17 went off... woke me up

Key to Study Guide

The numbers in the index are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a/an 69-72

a/an and the 72, 73B

a little/a few 87D

a/an with quite and pretty 104B

such a/an 102 able (be able to) 26 about

adjective + about 130,131B

verb + about 133-134 accuse (of) 62B, 135A active and passive 42

adjectives 98-101

adjectives + to... 65-66

the* adjective 76B

adjectives ending in -ing and -ed 98

order of adjectives 99

adjectives after verbs 99C

adjectives and adverbs 100-101

comparatives 105-107

superlatives 108

adjectives + preposition 130-131 admit (+ -ing) 53, 56A advantage (of/in/to) 60A, 129B adverbs

adjectives and adverbs 100-101

comparatives 105B

position of adverbs with the verb (always, also etc.) 110 advice (uncountable noun) 70B advise (+ to ... and -ing) 55C afford l+m.j 54A, 56A afraid (of) 131A

I'm afraid so/not 51D

afraid to do and afraid of doing 66 A after

after + present simple / present perfect

25A-B after + -ing 60B, 68C look after 133D ago 12B

agree (+ to...) 54A, 56A all 88,90

all and all the 75B, 88B

all (of) 88

all and both 89D

all, every and whole 90

position of all 110D alleged (it is alleged J 45A allow (+ to... and -ing) 55C, 66D already 111D

already with the present perfect 7D

position of already 110 also (position of also) 110 although 113 always

/ always do and I'm always doing 3B position of always 110 amazed

amazed + to ... 65C amazed at/by 130C

American English Appendix 7 an see a

angry (about/with/for) 130B

annoyed (about/with/for) 130B

answer an answer to something 129D to answer a question (no preposition)
132B

any 69C,85-86 any and some 85

anybody/anyone/anything/ anywhere

85-86 not... any 86 any and no 86D any (of) 88 any and either 89D any +
comparatives 106B any more / any longer 111B apologise (to somebody
for) 62, 132A,

135B

apostrophe (in short forms)

Appendix 5 apostrophe s ('s) 81 appear (+ to...) 54C apply (for) 133B
approve (of+ -ing) 62A, 135A aren't I? (question tag) 52D arrange (+ to...) 54A, 56A arrive (in/at) 126B articles (a/an/the) 69-78

a/an 69-72

a/an and the 72, 73B

the 72-78

school I the school etc. 74 children / the children etc. 75 the with names
77-78 as 107,116-118 as soon as 25A-B

as... as (in comparative sentences) 107 as long as 115B

as (= at the same time as) 116A

as and when 116

as (= because) 116B

as and like 117

as if/as though 118 ashamed of 131A ask

ask in passive sentences 44A ask (somebody) to do something 48D, 55A

ask how/what + to... 54D

ask somebody (no preposition) 132B

ask (somebody) for 133B astonished (at/by) 130C at

at (time) 121

at the end and /n the end 122B at (position) 123-5 at the age of... 127D

adjectives-fat 130C, 131C verbs + at 132

attitude (to/towards) 129D

auxiliary verbs (see also modal verbs)

in questions 49A-B

in short answers etc. 51

in question tags 52 avoid (+ -ing) 53, 56A aware (of) 131B away (verb + away) 137,145

back

in/at/on the back 124D verb + back 145 bad (at) 131C

baggage (uncountable noun) 70B because (of) 113B-C bed (in bed / to bed) 74C, 124A, 126A been to 8A, 126A

been to and gone to 7C before

before + present simple 25A

before + -ing 60 B begin (+ -ing or to...) 56C beginning (at the beginning) 122B being (he is and he is being) 4E believe (in) 136A believed (it is believed...) 45A better 105C

had better 35A-B between (noun + between) 129E blame 135B bored

bored and boring 98

bored with 130C born (I was born...) 44C both (of) 89

both...and 89C

both and all 89D

position of feet 110D bother (+ -ing or to...) 56C bottom (at the bottom)

124C bound (bound to do) 65E bread (uncountable) 70B break

break into 136B

breakdown 137A, 142D

breakup 144D busy (busy doing something) 63D by 120,128

by after the passive 42B, 128C

by (+/-ng) 60B

by myself /yourself etc. 83 D

by (the time) 120

by and i/nt/7 120B

by chance / by post etc. 128A

by car / by bus etc. 128B

a p/ay by Shakespeare etc. 128C

adjective + by 130C

373

can 26

can I/you ... ? 37

can and other modal verbs Appendix 4 can't (cannot) 26, 28

can't help 57C capable (of) 131B

care (care about, care for, take care of)

133C carry

carry on 53B, 141A

carry out 139C case (7n case) 114

causative have (??ave something done) 46

cause (o/J 129B certain

certain (+to...) 65E

certain of/about 131B cheque (by cheque) 128A church (church /the church) 74B claim (+ to...) 54C clauses

w/?en and //clauses 25

//clauses 38-40

-'nc? clauses 68, 97

relative clauses 92-96 collide (with) 136C comparatives 105-107

comparatives with even 112C complain (to somebody about/of...) 134D

compound nouns (a tenn/s ball, a

headache etc.) 80 concentrate (on) 136E conditional sentences (//sentences)

ifdo... 25C

if I do and if I did 38

/// /mew, if I were etc. 39

if I had known, if I had been etc. 40

un/ess 115A

as long as 115B

providing/provided 115B congratulate (on)J 62B, 135D connection (with/
between) 129E conscious of/J 131B consider (+ -/>?<?) 53, 56A consist (of/
J 135A contact (with/between) 129E continue (+ to ... or -/ng) 56C
continuous tenses see present continuous, past continuous

verbs not used in continuous tenses 4A, 6E, 10D, 16E, 17A contractions
(short forms)

Appendix 5 corner (in/at/on the corner) 124E could 26, 27, 29C

could and was able to 26D

could (do) and could have (done) 27

couldn't have (done) 27E, 28B

could in //sentences 38C, 39E, 40D

I wish I could 41C could I/you... ? 37 could and other modal verbs
Appendix 4 countable and uncountable nouns

69-70 crash (into) 136B

critical M) 131A crowded (W/t/?J 131C

damage (uncountable noun) 70B

damage to 129D dare 54B decide

decide* to... 54, 56A

decide against + -ing 62A delighted (Wth) 130B demand

demand + should 34A-B

a demand for 129A deny (+ -/ng) 53, 56A depend (on) 135D dependent
(on) 131C depressed (and depressing) 98 deserve (+ to...) 54A, 56A despite
113

did (in past simple questions and

negatives) 5C diefo/J 135A difference (between) 129E different (from/to)
131C difficulty (have difficulty*-ing) 63C direct speech and reported
speech

47-48, SOB disappointed

disappointed + to ... 65C

disappointed and disappointing 98

disappointed with 130B discuss (no preposition) 133A divide (VntoJ 136B

do/does (in present simple questions

and negatives) 2C do up 144D

down (verb + down) 137,142 dream

dream of* -ing 62 A, 66 D dream about/of 134C during 119

each (of) 91

each other 82C -ed clauses 97 either (of) 89

not... either 51C

either... or 89C

e/t/?er and any 89D elder 106E eldest 108C encourage (+ to...) 55B end

in the end and at the end 122B at the end (position) 124C endup 143E

enjoy (+ -ing) 53A, 54A, 56A, 58A

enough 103 envious (of) 131A even 112

position of even 110

even if/when 112D

even though 112D, 113E ever (with the present perfect) 8A every 90

every and all 90

everybody/everyone/everything 90A-C

every and each 91

everyone and everybody 91D excited (about) 130B exclamations (What...!)
71A-B excuse (for) 62 B expect

I expect so / I don't expect so 51D

expect + to... 55A expected (7t is expected that) 45A experience (countable
or uncountable

noun) 70A explain 54D, 132A

fail (+ to...) 54A, 56A, 66D fairly 104 famous (for) 131C fancy (+ -ing)
53A, 56A far

far/further/farther 105C far + comparative 106A fasti 01B

fed up (with) 60A, 130C feel

how do you feel and how are you feeling 4D

feel like 62A

feel + adjective 99C, 100B few 69C, 87

few and a few 87C-D

few (of) 88 finish

finish + -ing 53

finish off 141C first

it's the first time I've... 8 D

the first/last/next + to... 65 D

the first two days 99 D fond (of) 131A for

for with the present perfect 8B, 9B, 11-12

for and s/nce 12A

/orand to... (purpose) 64C, 103C

for and during 119

noun + for 129A

adjective + for 130D, 131C

verb+/or 133,135B forget (+to...) 54, 56A forgive (for) 135B frightened (of) 131A from

adjective + from 131C verb + from 135C

374

front (in/at/on the front) 124D full (of) 131B

furious (about/with/for) 130B furniture (uncountable noun) 70B further 105C future 19-25, Appendix 3

present tenses for the future 19

going to 20

will 21-22

will and shall 21D, 22D will and going to 23 will be doing (future continuous) 24 will have done (future perfect) 24 future with when, if etc. 25,114A, 115C, 119B

generous (+ preposition) 130A geographical names with and without

the 77 gerund see -ing get

get in the passive 44D get something done 46C get someone to do something 55B get used to 61 get + adjective 99C get to (a place) 126B get in/out/on/off 126D, 138A get by 137A getoutof 138C getOA? 137A, 141B get away (with) 145B get back to 145C give

g/Ve in passive sentences 44A

give up 53B, 143E

give out 139C

giveaway 145B glad (+to...) 65C go

go swimming/shopping etc. 63 E

go on holiday Zona trip etc. 127C

goon S3B, 140B, 141A

go on do/ng and go on to do 56B

go out 139A

goo//MOD, 141C going to 20, Appendix 3

going to and w/7/ 23

was/were going to 20D gone to and been to 7C good

good at 60A, 131C

good of someone to do something, (be)

good to someone 130A good and we// 101A it's no good {+-ing} 63A got
(have got) 17A, 31D gotten (American English)

Appendix 7 guess (I guess so) 51D

had

ftad done (past perfect) 15 had been doing (past perfect

continuous) 16 /?ad (past of have) 17 ///d known /1 wish I'd known 40 had
better 35A-B

hair (countable or uncountable noun)

70A half (of) 88 happen (to) 136D happy (happy about/ (with) 130B hard

101B-C hardly 101C-D hate

hate doing I to do 58

would hate 58B-C have/has 17

have done (present perfect) 7-14

have been -ing (present perfect continuous) 9-10

have and have got 17

have breakfast / have a bath etc. 17C

I'm having, we're having etc. 17C

have to (and must) 31

have got to 31D

have something done 46

having (done) 53D, 68C hear

with the present simple or can AC

hear someone do/doing 67

hear of/about/from 134A help

help + to... 55A

can't help 57C home 74C, 125A, 126C hope

hope + present simple 22B hope and wish 41A I hope so /I hope not 51D

hope + to... 54A, 56A hospital (hospital I the hospital) 74B, 125A

American English Appendix 7 how about (+ -ing) 60A how long... ? (+ present perfect) 11-12 how long is it since ... ? 12C

if 25, 38-40

if I do... 25C

if I do and if I did 38

// I knew, if I were etc. 39

/// had known, if I had been etc. 40

if and when 25D

if + should 34E

if any 85C

even if 112D

if and in case 114B

as// 118 if (= whether) 50 imagine (+ -/ng) 53, 56A impressed (with/by) 130C

in

to (time) 121

in time and on t/me 122A

/n trte end and at t/?e end 122B

in (position) 123-126

in/of after a superlative 108D

in (other uses) 127A, 129C

adjective + in 131C

verb + /n 136A, 137,138

in and into 138A in case 114 increase (in) 129C infinitive (to be, to play etc.) 54-59, 64-67

passive infinitive (to be done) 43A-B infinitive in reported speech 48D
verbs + infinitive 54-59 continuous infinitive (to be doing) 54C perfect
infinitive (to have done) 54C, 58C

infinitive after a question word 54D

verbs + object + infinitive 55

verbs + infinitive or -ing 55-58

to-infinitive and to + -ing 60C

infinitive for purpose (I went out to post a letter) 64

adjectives + infinitive 65-66 infinitive without to

after make and let 55D

see/hear somebody do 67 information (uncountable noun) 70B -ing (being, playing etc.) 53, 55-63

being (done) (passive) 44B

verbs + -ing 53, 55-59

having (done) 53D, 68C

verbs + -ing or to ... 55-58

prepositions + -ing 60, 66

to + -ing and to-infinitive 60C

used to + -ing 61

verbs 4- preposition + -ing 62, 66D

expressions + -ing 63

go swimming / go shopping etc. 63 E

see/hear somebody doing 67

-ing clauses 68, 97 insist

insist* should 34A-B

insist on 62A, 136E in spite of 60A, 113 instead of (+ -ing) 60A intend (+ to... or -ing) 56C interested (in) 60A, 131C

interested in doing and interested to do 66B

interested and interesting 98 into 126D

verb + into 136B

in and into 138A invitation (to) 129D invite

invite* to... 55B

invite somebody to something 13 6 D

375

irregular verbs SB, Appendix 1 it and there 84

it's no good / it's no use (+ -ing) 63A

it's time... 35C

it's worth (+ -ing) 63 B

jealous (of) 131A just

just with the present perfect 7D just in case 114A just as 116A just in time 122A

keen (on) 131C keep

keep on 53, 56A, 141A

keep up (with...) 143A

keep away (from...) 145B kind (kind of someone to do something I

be kind to someone) 65B, 130A know (how/what etc. * to ..J 54D

late and lately 101B

laugh (at) 132C

learn (how) (+ to ...) 54, 56A

leave

leave for 133B

leave something out 138C less 107A let

let somebody do something 55D

letdown 142D like (verb)

like doing /to do 58

would like 37E, 55A, 58B-C like (preposition/conjunction)

//fceand as 117

like and as if 118 likely (+fo...) 65E, 84B listen (to) 132A little 69C, 87

//tt/e and a little 87C-D

ffrt/e (of) 88

a little + comparative 106A [We (on) 135D long

aslongas 115B

no longer / not... any longer 111B look

you look and you're looking 4D

look forward to 60C, 62A, 137B

/oo£ + adjective 99C, 100B

lookasif 118

/oo/:at 132C

look for/after 133D

lookup 144D lot (a lot/lots) 87A-B

quite a lot 104B

a/ot-f comparative 106A love

love doing / to do 58

would love 58B-C

be/fall in love with 127A luck (uncountable noun) 70B luggage
(uncountable noun) 70B

make

make somebody do something 55D makeup 143E, 144A manage (+to...) 26D, 54A, 56A many (and much) 69C, 87

many (of) 88 married (to) 131C may 29-30 may as well 30D may/... ? 37B-C
may and other modal verbs Appendix 4 mean (adjective - mean of someone to do something I be mean to someone) 65B

means (noun) 79B might 29-30

might in //sentences 30B, 38C, 40D

might as well 30D

might and other modal verbs Appendix 4 mind (+ -ing) 53, 56A, 58A-B

do you mind if... ? 37C mine/yours etc. (a friend of mine/yours) 83A

modal verbs (will, can, must etc.) 21-22,

26-37, Appendix 4 more

more in comparatives 105

not... any more 111B most

most+ noun 75A

most (of) 88

most in superlatives 108 much (and many) 69C, 87

much (of) 88

much + comparative 106A must

must and can't 28

must and Zia/e to 31

mustn't 31C, 32A

must and should 33 A

must and other modal verbs Appendix 4 myself/yourself etc. (reflexive pronouns) 82

by myself 7 by yourself etc. 83 D

names with and without the 77-78 nationality words with the 76C need

need to do and need doing 57B

a need for 129A needn't 32

needn't have (done) and didn't need to (do) 32D

needn't and other modal verbs Appendix 4

American English Appendix 7 negative

present simple 2C

past simple 5C

negative questions 49D

no, none and any 86

negative short forms Appendix 5.3 neither (of) 89

neither am I, neither do I etc. 51C

neither... nor 89C

neither and none 89D never

never with the present perfect 8A

position of never 110 news (uncountable noun) 70B, 79B nice (nice of someone to do something I be nice to someone) 65B, 130A

no

no and none (of) 86A, 88 no and any 86

nobody I no-one/ nothing/nowhere 86 B no with comparatives 106B no longer 111B none

none (of) and no 86A, 88 none and neither 89D nor

nor am /, nor do I etc. 51C neither... nor 89C nouns

countable and uncountable 69-70 singular and plural 69,71,79 noun + noun (compound nouns) 80

of

o/and ■\$ 81

all of/ none of/ most of etc. 88, 96B

both of / neither of/7 either of 89, 96B

a friend of mine/yours etc. 83A

of/in after a superlative 108D

noun + of 129B

adjective + of 130A, 131A-B

verb + o/ 134, 135A

off (verb * off) 137,140-141

offer

offer in passive sentences 44A offer + to... 54A, 56A on

on (time) 121

on time and in time 122A

on (position) 123-125

on a bus / on a train etc. 125E

on (other uses) 127B-C

adjective + on 131C

verb + on 135D, 136E, 137,140-141 one another 82C only (position of only) 110 ought to 33D

ought and other modal verbs Appendix 4 out

out of 126D

verb + out 137-139

out and out of 138A own

my own house /your own car 83B-C on my own I on your own etc. 83 D

376

paper (countable and uncountable) 70A participle clauses (-ing and -ed clauses)

68,97 passive 42-44

passive and active 42A

fey after the passive 42B

simple tenses 42C

to be done/'cleaned etc. (infinitive) 43A-B

perfect tenses 43C

continuous tenses 43D

being (done) 44B

get 44D

it is said that 45A past (see also past continuous, past perfect and past simple)

past after //and wish 38-40

past after I'd rather 59D

past after its time 35C

past after as if 118D

present and past tenses Appendix 2 past continuous (I was doing) 6

past continuous and past simple 6C-D

past continuous and used to 18E

past continuous passive 43D past perfect (simple) (I had done) 15

past perfect and present perfect 15B

past perfect and past simple 15C

past perfect after // 40

past perfect passive 43C past perfect continuous (I had been doing) 16 past simple (I did) 5

past simple and past continuous 6C-D

past simple and present perfect 12-14

past simple and past perfect 15C

past simple passive 42C pay

pay in passive sentences 44A pay (somebody) for something 135B payback
145C people 79D

perfect see present perfect, past perfect

perfect infinitive (to have done) 43B (passive), 54C, 58C persuade (+ to ...)
55B phone

on the phone 127B

phone somebody (no preposition) 132B

phone back 145C photograph

in a photograph 124A

a photograph of someone 129B phrasal verbs (break down I get on etc.)
137-145

phrasal verbs: General points 137 phrasal verbs + preposition (runaway
from etc) 137B position of object (turn the light on I
turn it on etc.) 137C

verb + in/out 138-139

verb-f on/off 140-141

verb + up/down 142-144

verb + away I back 145 plan (-f- to...) 54A, 56A pleased
pleased + to... 65C

pleased with 130B plenty (of) 87A plural and singular 69, 71, 79

they/them/their used for somebody/ nobody etc. 85E, 86C, 90C

spelling of plural nouns Appendix 6 point

there s no point in + -ing 63A

point (something) at 132C

point out 139C police (plural) 79C polite

polite of someone to do something I be polite to someone 130A postpone (+ -ing) 53, 56A prefer 59 would prefer 55A, 58B-C, 59B prefer (one thing) to (another) 59A, 60C, 136D prepositions 121-136 for and since 12A in questions 49C prepositions + -ing 60, 66 verbs + prepositions + -ing 62, 66D prepositions in relative clauses 93C, 96A

in/of after a superlative 108D like and as 117 for and during 119 by 120, 128 by and until 120B at/on/in (time) 121-122 on time and in time 122A at the end and in the end 122B at/on/in (position) 123-125 to/at/in/into 126 in /at/on (other uses) 127 by car I by bus etc. 128B noun + preposition 129 adjectives + preposition 130-31 verbs 4-preposition 132-136 phrasal verb + preposition 137B present see present continuous,

present simple, present perfect present tenses for the future 19,

Appendix 3 present and past tenses

Appendix 2 present continuous (I am doing) 1 present continuous and present simple

3-4

am/is/are being 4E

present continuous for the future 19,

20B, Appendix 3 present continuous passive 43D

present perfect (simple) (I have done) 7-8

present perfect with this morning

today etc. 8C, 14B present perfect simple and continuous

10-11

present perfect with how long, for and

since 11-12 present perfect and past simple 12-14 present perfect and past

perfect 15B present perfect after when 25B present perfect passive 43C
present perfect after a superlative

108E

American English Appendix 7 present perfect continuous (I have
been doing) 9-10 present perfect continuous and present
continuous 9C present perfect continuous and simple

10-11

present perfect continuous and past

perfect continuous 16C present simple (I do) present simple and present
continuous

3-4

present simple for the future 19B present simple after vshen and // 25,

Appendix 3 present simple passive 42C pretend (+ to...) 54C pretty (pretty
good, pretty often etc.) 104

prevent (from) 62 B, 66D

prison (prison I the prison) 74B, 125A

probably

probably + will 22B

position of probably 110 problem (have a problem 4- -ing) 63C progress
(uncountable noun) 70B progressive tenses see continuous promise

promise (+ will/would) 36B

promise + to... 54A, 56A protect (from) 135C proud (of) 131A provide
(with) 136C provided/providing 115B purpose

to... for purpose 64

on purpose 127B put

put out 139A

put off 53B, 140, 141C

put on 140

put up/down 142A

put up with 144D

put away 145B

377

questions 49-50

present simple questions 2C, 49B

past simple questions 5C, 49B

negative questions 49D

embedded questions (Do you know what... ?) 50A

reported questions 50B

question tags 52 quite 104

rather

would rather 59C

I'd rather you did something 59D

rather cold I rather nice etc. 104 reason (for) 129A recommend 34A-B

reflexive pronouns {myself, yourself etc.} 82

by myself/yourself etc. 83 D refuse (+ to...) 54A, 56A regret (+ -ing and to ...) 53D, 56B regular and irregular verbs

Appendix 1 relationship (with/between) 129E relative clauses 92-96

relative clauses as object 93

prepositions in relative clauses 93C

two types of relative clause 95 relative pronouns 92-96

who 92-96

which 92-93,95-96

that 92-94

that and what 92D

whose 94A, 95 B

whom 94B, 95B, 96A-B

where 94C, 95B

of whom / of which 96B

rely (on) 135D remember

remember + to ... and -ing 56B

remember hows/what +to... 54D remind

remind + to... 55B

remind of/about 134E reported speech 47-48

reported questions 50B responsible (for) 131C rise (in) 129C risk (+ -ing)
53, 56A room (countable or uncountable noun) 70A

's (apostrophe s) 81, Appendix 5.1 said (it is said that) 45A same (the same
as) 73A, 107C satisfied

satisfied and satisfying 98 satisfied with 130B say

say and tell 48C

say(+to...) 48D scared (of) 131A scenery (uncountable noun) 70B school

(school I the school) 74A

sea (sea / the sea) 74D search (for) 133B see

with the present simple or can 4C

see someone do/doing 67

seeo// 140D seem

seem + to... 54C

seem + adjective 99C -self {myself/yourself etc.} 82, 83D series 79B shall
and will 22D

shall I/we? 21D

Let's..., shall we? 52D

sha// and other modal verbs Appendix 4

American English Appendix 7 shocked

shocked and shocking 98

shocked at/by 130C short (o/j 131B

short forms (/m, you Ve, d/dn't etc.)

Appendix 5 should 33-34 should and had better 35B should and other
modal verbs Appendix 4 shout fat/toj 132D show

show in passive sentences 44A

show someone how/what + to ... 54D

show off 141C

show up 143E similar (toj 131C simple past see past simple simple present
see present simple since

with present perfect 8B,9B, 11-12

since and for 12A

how long is it since... ? 12C

since (= because) 116B singular and plural 69,71,79

they/them/their used for somebody/ nobody etc. 85E, 86C, 90C slightly (+ comparative) 106A smell

with the present simple and can 4C sme// something (burn)ing 67D sn?e// + adjective 99C so

so am I, so do I etc. 51C

/ think so, I hope so etc. 51D

so that (purpose) 64D

so and such 102

so + adjective + that 102B

so long as 115B solution (to,) 129D some 69C,71, 85

some with countable nouns 71

some and any 85

somebody/someone/something/ somewhere 85

some (o/J 88 soon (as soon as) 25A-B

sorry

sorry + to... 65C

sorry to do and sorry for/about doing 66C

sorry about/for 130D

feel sorry for 130D sound

sound + adjective 99C

sound as if 118 space ("space and a space) 73B speak (to) 132A species
79B spelling Appendix 6 spend (spendmoney) 63D, 136E spite (in spite of)
113 start ("start + to... or -ing) 56C state verbs {like, know, belong etc.)
4A,

6E, 10D, 16E, 17A still 111

st/7/and yet 111C stop

stop +-ing 53, 56A stop someone (from) + -ing 53C, 62B, 66D

stupid (stupid of someone to do

something) 65B, 130A subjunctive 34B

American English Appendix 7 succeed (in + -ing) 62A, 66D, 136A such

such and so 102

such as 117A suffer (from) 135C suggest

suggest* should 34A-C, 55B

suggest * -ing 53, 54A, 56A superlative (longest/best etc.) 108 suppose (I
suppose so/not) 51D supposed (7-/e/s supposed to ...) 45B sure

sure + to... 65E, 84B

sure of/about 131B surprised

surprised + to... 65C

surprised and surprising 98

surprised at/by 130C suspect fo/j 62B, 135A suspicious fo/J 131A

tags (question tags) 52 take

ta/:e care of 133C take somebody in 138B takeoff 140 takedown 142 A
take up 143 talk

talk to somebody 132A talk about something 62A, 133A taste

with the present simple or can 4C taste + adjective 99C

378

teach

teach in passive sentences 44A teach somebody how to do something 54D

teach + to... 55B telephone see phone tell

tell in passive sentences 44A tell and say 48C

tell someone to do something 48D, 55B

tell someone what to do 54D

tell off 141C temporal clauses (when clauses) 25 tend (+to...) 54C than
105,107 thank (for) 62B, 132B, 135B that

said that 47B

in relative clauses 92-94 the 72-78

t/?e and a/an 72, 73B

the sea, the sky etc. 73B

the cinema, the theatre etc. 73C

sc/?oo/ / t/?e sc/?oo/ 74

children I the children 75

t/?e + adjective (theyoung etc.) 76B

t/?e+ nationality words (the French etc.) 76C

the with geographical names 77

the with streets, buildings etc. 78

the... the... (with comparatives) 106D

r/?e + superlative (the oldest etc.) 108B there (and /t) 84

there's no point in... 63A

there will/must/should etc. 84B

there & + -/ng or -ed 97D they/them/their (used for somebody/ anybody/ nobody/ everybody) 85E, 86C, 90C think

/ think and I'm thinking 4B

/ think so, I don't think so 51D

think of + -ing 54A, 62A, 66D

think about and think of 134B though 113E

as though 118

even though 112D, 113E threaten (+ to ...) 54A, 56A throw

throw to/at 132D

throw away 137C, 145B till see until time

its the first time I've... 8D it's time... 35C

countable or uncountable noun 70A

on time and in time 122A tired

tired and t/Wng 98

t/redo/ 130C to + infinitive (to be / to do etc.) see infinitive

to 126

to +-ing 60C

noun + to 129D

adjective + to 130A, 131C

verb + to 132, 136D too and enough 103 top (at the top) 124C translate (from/into) 136B travel (uncountable noun) 70B trouble (have trouble doing something) 63C

try

try + to... or -ing 57A

try out 139C

turn 140C

turnout 139

turn on/off 137C, 140A

turn 142 A, 143E

turn 142 two-word verbs see phrasal verbs typical (of) 131B

uncountable nouns 69-70 understand (how/what+ to...) 54D university (university / the university)

74 B unless 115A until (or till)

until + present simple / present perfect 25A-B

up 120B up (verb + up) 137, 142-144 upset (about) 130B use (it's no use + -ing) 63A used

used to do 18

be/get used to 61

I am used to doing and I used to do 18F, 61D

usually (position of usually) 110

verbs see also present, past, future,

passive etc. verbs not used in continuous tenses

4A, 6E, 10D, 16E, 17A list of irregular verbs

Appendix 1.4 present and past tenses

Appendix 2 verbs + -ing and verbs 4- to ...

(infinitive) 53-59 verbs + preposition 62, 132-136 phrasal verbs (break down / get on etc.)

137-145

wait (for) 133B

want (+ to...) 55A, 66D

warn

warn someone (not) to do something 55B

warn someone of/about something 134F

was/were 5D

was/were -ing (past continuous) 6

was/were going to 20D

was/were able to 26D

was and were in //sentences 39C waste (waste time + -ing) 63 D weather (uncountable noun) 70B well 101A

were (used with I/he/she/it) 39C, 118D what

what in questions 49

what... for? 64C

What...! (exclamations) 71A-B

what and that (relative clauses) 92D, 93D

what and which (relative clauses) 96C when

when + present simple / present perfect 25

when and // 25D

when + -ing 68B

even when 112D

when and as 116 where (in relative clauses) 94C, 95C whether 50 which

which in questions 49

which in relative clauses 92-93, 95-96

all/none/some of which 96B while

while + present simple / present perfect 25A

while +-ing 68B while and during 119B who

w/who in questions 49

who in relative clauses 92-96

who and whose in relative clauses 94A

who and w/who/r? in relative clauses 94B

whole 90D-E on the whole 127B

whom in questions 49C in relative clauses 94B, 96A-B all/none/some of whom 96B

whose (in relative clauses) 94A, 95C

why

why isn't/didn't (etc.) ... ? 49D why in relative clauses 94E will 21-22

will you? 21C-D, 37A will and shall 21D, 22D will and go/ing to 23 will be doing (future continuous) 24 will have done (future perfect) 24 will in //and when sentences 25, 115C will and would 36B, Appendix 4 w/who in the passive 43A Don't..., will you? 52D will and other future forms

Appendix 3 w/who and other modal verbs

Appendix 4

379

wish 41

/ wish I knew etc. 39, 41

I wish I'd known etc. 40C, 41

wish and hope 41A

wish... would 41D with

noun + with 129E

adjective + with 130B-C, 131C

verb + with 136C without (+ -ing) 60B won't (= will not) 21-22 word order

have something done 46

questions 49

negative questions 49D

embedded questions (Doyou knovj what... ?) 50A

reported questions 50B

order of adjectives 99

verb and object together 109A

place and time 109B

position of adverbs with the verb (also, alv/aysetc.) 110

word order with phrasal verbs {turn on the light, turn it on etc.) 137C work

uncountable noun 70B, 74C

workout 139B worried (about) 130B worse 105C worst 108 A

worth (it's worth + -ing) 63B would 36

would and will 36B would you... ? 37 A would you like? I'd like 37E
would in //sentences 38-40 wish... would 41D

would like/love/hate/prefer + to ... 55A, 58B-C

would prefer 58B, 59B

would rather 59C-D

would and other modal verbs Appendix 4 write

write to 132B

writedown 142D yet

yet and still 111C

yet + present perfect 7D

380

Grammar words

This a list of words used in the explanations in this book.

active and passive

Many verbs can be active or passive. For example, build:

My grandfather built this house, (active)

This house was built by my grandfather, (passive)

The active sentence begins with My grandfather (the subject). This sentence tells us something about my grandfather and what he did (he built this house).

The passive sentence begins with This house (the subject). This sentence tells us something about the house (it was built by my grandfather).

Passive forms are be + past participle. Compare:

active passive

/ can't repair it. It can't be repaired.

Somebody stole my wallet. My wallet was stolen.

Have they cleaned the room ? Has the room been cleaned?

See Units 42-44.

adjective

An adjective is a word that tells us about somebody or something. Mce, tall, hungry, foreign and interesting are all adjectives.

Adjectives go before a noun:

a nice day foreign languages or after some verbs (be, get, seem, look, taste etc.)

she's tall this looks interesting

See Units 98-101, 65, 76 and 130-131.

adverb

Adverbs often end in -ly, for example:

slowly really fortunately

These -ly adverbs often tell us how somebody does something: quietly carefully safely

Other adverbs do not end in -ly. Many of these adverbs tell us where, when or how often something happens. Here, yesterday and always are all adverbs.

Some adverbs (for example very, really and absolutely) are used with adjectives: very sorry really nice absolutely enormous

See Units 100,101 and 110.

apostrophe

We use an apostrophe (') instead of the missing letter(s) in a short form: I'm (=I am) you've (= you have) didn't (= did not)

We also use an apostrophe + s (-'s) to show possession:

Rachel's car my sister's friends the cat's tail

See Unit 81 and Appendix 5.

article

A/an and the are articles. Articles are a type of determiner. See Units 71-78.

auxiliary verb

We use auxiliary verbs together with other verbs:

we are going the plane has landed I can't help do you know In these examples, going, landed, help and know are the main verbs. Are, has, can and do are auxiliary verbs.

See Units 51-52.

clause

A clause is a whole sentence or a part of a sentence. There is always a verb in a clause. Examples of clauses: I'm tired , (one clause, one sentence) I'm tired and I want to go home , (two clauses, one sentence) / was tired when I got home , (two clauses, one sentence)

Although I was tired, I went out, which wasn't a good idea , (three clauses, one sentence)

Some clauses begin with a participle (talking I standing/injured I stolen etc.): Who were those people standing outside your office ?

See Units 68 and 92-97

comparative and superlative

Adjectives and adverbs have comparative and superlative forms.

The comparative form is -er or more ...

old older important -> more important

The superlative form is -est or most... :

old -* oldest important -* most important

See Units 105-108.

conjunction

A conjunction is a word that joins clauses. For example, in the following sentences but and //are conjunctions: We were hungry, but there was nothing to eat. If she gets the job, she'll be really happy.

Other conjunctions are and, so, or, when, because, although and that.

See Units 25, 38-40 and 113-120.

Contraction see short form

continuous

Continuous verb forms are be + -ing. I am working I was working I have been working I had been working I will be working I might be working I might have been working I pretended to be working

For example:

present continuous

past continuous

present perfect continuous

past perfect continuous

continuous infinitive (= future continuous)

continuous infinitive

perfect continuous infinitive

to + continuous infinitive

See Units 1, 3-4, 6, 9-12, 16, 19, 24 and 54.

countable and uncountable see noun determiner

These words are determiners: a, an, the (articles)

my, your, his, her, its, our, their (possessives)

We use a determiner with a noun:

the airport your new car my best friend

The following words are determiners too (used with a noun), but they can also be pronouns (used without a noun):

this, that, these, those

some, any, no, all

many, much, few, little

both, either, neither, each

For example:

/ like this jacket, (determiner) I like this, (pronoun)

See Units 71-78 and 85-91.

direct speech and reported speech

When we use direct speech, we use the words of the speaker. For example:
Paul went home early. He said 'I'm not feeling good.'

When we use reported (or indirect) speech, we change I'm not to he wasn't:
Paul went home early. He said he wasn't feeling good.

See Units 47-48.

future

To talk about the future, we use present tenses (/ leave, I'm leaving etc.), will or (be) going to. See Units 19-25 and Appendix 3.

infinitive

The infinitive form of a verb is the form without any extra ending (the form you will find when you look in a dictionary). Sometimes this is called 'the base form'. So understand, dance and stay are infinitive forms:

He doesn't understand.

Let's dance.

We can't stay here.

The infinitive is often used with to: It's hard to understand. I'm not going to dance. We don't want to stay here.

irregular verb see regular and irregular verbs

modal verb

The following are modal verbs:

can could will would shall should may might must ought

These verbs are followed by the infinitive (can see, should go, must work etc.).

See Units 21-41.

negative

The negative form is verb + not: I'm not, he did not (didn't), they cannot (can't) etc.

noun

A noun is a word for somebody or something. In the sentence

My friend plays tennis most weekends, friend, tennis and weekends are nouns.

A noun can be countable (friend/banana/weekend) or uncountable (tennis/water/electricity).

A countable noun can be singular (friend/banana/weekend) or plural (friends/bananas/weekends).

See Units 69-71.

object see subject and object

participle see present participle and past participle

passive see active and passive

past see tense

past participle

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed (cleaned, danced, played etc.). Irregular verbs have different endings, for example lost, broken, done.

We use the past participle for perfect forms (have cleaned, had done etc.) and passive forms [is cleaned, was broken etc.).

See also Units 7, 42, 97 and Appendix 1

Perfect forms can also be continuous: / have been waiting / I had been waiting I must have been waiting etc. See Units 7-16, 24, 27-29, 33, 36, 40, 43, 45, 53-54 and 58.

phrasal verb

A phrasal verb is a verb + in/out/on/off : /up/down/away/back etc. These words are sometimes called particles (a type of adverb). For example:

get on takeoff comeback breakdown keep up

Sometimes phrasal verbs are used for movement and direction: Go away and don't come back! I took my shoes off.

But often they have a special meaning. For example:

My brother and I don't get on very well. (= we don't have a good

relationship) There are a few problems I need to sort out. (= I need to solve)

Sometimes there is a preposition after a phrasal verb:

/ don't get on with my brother. Here, get on is a phrasal verb and with is a preposition.

See Units 137-145.

Some examples of prepositions:

at, in, on, to, of, for, with, by, from, during

Prepositions are usually followed by a noun or pronoun: / don't like going out at night. They live in a small village. What's the name of this street? This is for you.

Sometimes (for example, in questions), there is a preposition at the end of a sentence: What are you looking for?

See Units 121-136.

perfect

Perfect verb forms are have + past participle. For example: she has gone
present perfect

she had gone past perfect

she must have gone perfect infinitive

she will have gone perfect infinitive (= future perfect)

she would like to have gone to + perfect infinitive

[image]

see singular and plural

preposition

present see tense

present participle

The present participle ends in -ing (going, dancing, thinking etc.).

We use the present participle for continuous forms of the verb (I'm going, they were dancing etc.).

We also use participles in sentences like: Joe hurt his knee playing football.

See Units 68 and 97.

pronoun

These words are pronouns:

I/me, you, he/him, she/her, we/us, they/them, it (personal pronouns) mine/yours/his/hers/ours/theirs (possessive pronouns) myself/yourself/themselves etc. (reflexive pronouns)

Other pronouns include:

someone/nobody/everything etc. this/that/these/those

See Units 82-91. See also relative pronouns and determiners.

question tag

A question tag is a 'mini-question' that we sometimes put on the end of a sentence: You haven't seen Kate, have you? There was a lot of traffic, wasn't there?

See also Unit 52.

regular and irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs are the same and end in -ed. For example: / worked (past simple) / have worked (past participle used with have) Tom painted the room, (past simple)

The room will be painted, (past participle used in the passive)

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs are sometimes the same and sometimes different. But they do not end in -ed. For example:

Host (past simple)

/ have lost (past participle with have)

Somebody stole my phone, (past simple)

My phone was stolen, (past participle used in the passive)

See Appendix 1.

relative clause

A relative clause gives information about something or somebody. Relative clauses often begin with relative pronouns (who, whom, whose, which, that):

An architect is a person who designs buildings .

Grace works for a company that makes furniture .

See Units 92-96.

relative pronoun see relative clause

sentence

A sentence has one or more clauses. My phone rang, (one clause) My phone rang, so I answered it . (two clauses) If my phone rings, can you answer it for me, please ? (two clauses)

A sentence begins with a capital letter (A, B, C etc.) and ends with a full stop (.).

short form (or contraction)

In spoken English, we usually say I'm /you've / didn't etc. These are short forms or contractions. The full forms are / am /you have / did not.

When we write short forms, we use an apostrophe (') for the missing letters. See Appendix 5.

singular and plural

A singular form is used for one person or thing. For example: flower, school, child.

A plural form is used for more than one person or thing. For example: flowers, schools, children.

Verbs sometimes have different forms for singular and plural. For example: Where does she live? (singular) Where do they live ? (p l u r a l)

See Units 71 and 79.

subject and object

In the following sentences, Tom is the subject: Tom is eating an apple. Tom saw Helen. Tom plays football.

After the subject, there is a verb (is eating, saw, plays) and an object (an apple, Helen, football). The object is what he's eating, who he saw, what he plays.

The subject normally goes before the verb (Tom is eating), and the object goes after the verb (eating an apple). In questions, the verb usually goes before the subject - see Unit 49A.

Some verbs (for example give, show, buy) can have two objects. For example:

Helen bought her mother a present . Her mother is the indirect object (= the receiver) and a present is the direct object (what Helen bought).

See Units 42, 44A, 46B, 49, 55, 93, 94B, 95B and 137C.

subjunctive

The subjunctive has the same form as the infinitive: do, be, eat, play etc. You can use the subjunctive after insist, recommend, suggest etc. You can also use should:

I insisted that he apologise.

I insisted that he should apologise.

See Unit 34.

Superlative see comparative

syllable

A syllable is a part of a word. For example, the word remember has three syllables: remem ber .

tense

A tense is a verb form that shows time. English verbs have two main tenses, present and past. Present and past tenses can be simple or continuous. For example:

present

I walk (present simple)

/ am walking (present continuous)

All of these can also be perfect (with have):

I have walked (present perfect simple)

/ have been walking (present perfect continuous)

See Units 1-18 and Appendix 2.

past

/ walked (past simple)

/ was walking (past continuous)

I had walked (past perfect simple)

/ had been walking (past perfect continuous)

uncountable see noun

verb

A verb is a word for an action (go, eat, work), a happening (rain, find, die) or a state (be, know, want). In the sentence

Tom is hungry and wants something to eat. is, wants and eat are all verbs.

Verbs have four or five different forms. For example:

word order

Word order is the way words go together in a sentence. For example, we say: a modern building (not a building modern) I don't know where she is. (not / don't know where is she) She always walks to work, (not She walks always)

See Units 49-50, 99,109-110 and 137.